Copyrighted Material

Fourth edition

A Practical English Grammar

A. J. Thomson
A. V. Martinet

Copyrighted Material

Fourth edition

A Practical English Grammar

A. J. Thomson
A. V. Martinet

Oxford University Press

Oxford University Press Walton Street, Oxford 0X2 6DP
Oxford New York Toronto

Delhi	Bombay	Calcutta	Madras	Karachi
Petaling	Jaya	Singapore	Hong Kong	Tokyo
Nairobi	Dar es Salaam	Cape Town		
Melbourne	Auckland			

and associated companies in

Beirut	Berlin	Ibadan	Nicosia

Oxford is a trade mark of Oxford University Press.

ISBN 0 19 431342 5 (paperback)

ISBN 0 19 431347 6 (hardback)

© Oxford University Press 1960, 1969, 1980, 1986

First published 1960 (reprinted seven times)
Second edition 1969 (reprinted ten times)
Third edition 1980 (reprinted eight times)

Fourth edition 1986
Second impression 1986

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior permission of Oxford University Press.

This book is sold subject to the condition that it shall not, by way of trade or otherwise, be lent, re-sold, hired or otherwise circulated without the publisher's prior consent in any font of binding or cover other than that in which it is published and without a similar condition including this condition being imposed on the subsequent purchaser.

Printed in Hong Kong

Preface to the fourth edition

A Practical English Grammar is intended for intermediate and post-intermediate students. We hope that more advanced learners and teachers will also find it useful.

The book is a comprehensive survey of structures and forms, written in clear modem English and illustrated with numerous examples. Areas of particular difficulty have been given special attention. Differences between conversational usage and strict grammatical forms are shown but the emphasis is on conversational forms.

In the fourth edition the main changes are as follows:

1 Explanations and examples have been brought up to date.

2 There is now more information on countable and uncountable nouns, attributive and predicative adjectives, adverbs of place, sentence adverbs, cleft sentences, prepositions, conjunctions, modal verbs, perfect tenses, infinitive constructions, the passive purpose clauses and noun clauses.

3 Some material has been rearranged to make comparisons easier. For example, parts of chapters on *can, may, must* etc. are now grouped by function; verbs of liking and preference have a chapter to themselves; suggestions and invitations have joined the chapter on commands, requests and advice.

4 The contents list new summarises every section heading, and there is a new index containing many more entries and references.

In this edition the sign '~' is frequently used to denote a change of speaker in examples of dialogue. Note also that although the sign '=' sometimes connects two words or expressions with the same meaning, it is often used more freely, e.g. to indicate a transformation from active to passive or direct to indirect speech.

We wish to thank all at Oxford University Press who have assisted in the preparation of the fourth edition. We would also like to thank Professor Egawa of Nihon University, Japan, Professor René Dirven of Duisburg University, West Germany and other colleagues for their friendly and helpful suggestions.

London, November 1985 A.J.T., A.VM.

Contents
References are to sections, unless otherwise stated.

1 Articles and one, a little/ a few, this, that page 9
a/an (the indefinite article) 1
Use of a/an 2
Omission of a/an 3
a/an and one 4
a little/a few and little/few 5
the (the definite article) 6
Omission of the 7
Omission of the before home etc. 8

This/these, that/those 9

2 Nouns page 16
Kinds and function 10
Gender 10
Plurals 12
Uncountable nouns 13
Form of possessive case 14
Use of possessive case etc. 15
Compound nouns 16

3 Adjectives page 23
Kinds of adjectives 17
Position of adjectives 18

Order of adjectives of quality 19
Comparison 20
Constructions with comparisons 21
than/as + pronoun + auxiliary 22
the + adjective 23
Adjectives + one/ones etc. 24
many and much 25

Adjectives + infinitives 26
Adjectives + various constructions 27

4 Adverbs page 47
Kinds of adverbs 28

Form and use
Formation of adverbs with ly 29

Adverbs and adjectives with
the same form 30
Comparative and superlative 31
far, farther/farthest etc. 32
much, more, most 33
Constructions with comparisons 34

Position
Adverbs of manner 35
Adverbs of place 36
Adverbs of time 37
Adverbs of frequency 38
Order of adverbs 39
Sentence adverbs 40
Adverbs of degree 41

fairly, rather, quite, hardly etc.
fairly and rather 42
quite 43
hardly, scarcely, barely 44

Inversion of the verb
Inversion after certain adverbs 45

5 all, each, every, both, neither, either, some, any, no, none page 64
all, each, every, everyone etc. 46
both 47
all/both/each + of etc. 48
neither, either 49
some, any, no and none 50
someone, anyone, no one etc. 51
else after someone/anybody etc. 52
another, other etc. with one, some 53

6 Interrogatives: wh-? words and how? *page 71*
Interrogative adjectives and pronouns 54
Affirmative verb after who etc. 55
who, whom, whose, which, what 56
who, whom, which and what as objects of prepositions 57
Uses of what 58
which compared with who, what 59
Interrogative adverbs:
why, when, where, how 60
ever after who, what etc. 61

7 Possessive, personal and reflexive pronouns: my, mine, I, myself etc. *page 75*
Possessive adjectives and pronouns 62
Agreement and use of possessive adjectives 63
Possessive pronouns replacing possessive adjectives + nouns 64
Personal pronouns 65
Position of pronoun objects 66
Use of it 67
Indefinite pronouns 68
Use of they/them/their with, neither/either, someone etc. 69
Reflexive pronouns 70
Emphasizing pronouns 71

8 Relative pronouns and clauses *page 81*
Defining relative clauses 72
Relative pronouns used in defining clauses 73
Defining clauses: persons 74
Defining clauses: things 75
Cleft sentences 76
Relative clause replaced by infinitive or participle 77
Non-defining relative clauses 78
Non-defining clauses: persons 79
all, both, few, most, several etc. + of whom/which 80
Non-defining clauses: things 81
Connective relative clauses 82

Contents

what (relative pronoun) and which (connective relative) 83
Commas in relative clauses 84
whoever, whichever etc. 85

9 Prepositions page 91
Introduction 86
Alternative position 87
Omission of to and for before indirect objects 88
Use and omission of to with verbs of communication 89
Time and date: at, on, by etc. 90
Time: from, since, for etc. 91
Time: to, till/until, after, afterwards (adverb) 92
Travel and movement: from, to, at, in, by, on, into etc. 93
at in; in, into; on, onto 94
above, over, under etc. 95
Prepositions used with adjectives and participles 96

Verbs and prepositions 97
Gerunds after prepositions 98
Prepositions/adverbs 99

10 introduction to verbs page 105

Classes of verbs 100

Ordinary verbs
Principal parts 101
Active tenses 102
Negatives of tenses 103
Interrogative for questions and requests 104
Negative interrogative 105

Auxiliary verbs
Auxiliaries and modals 106
Forms and patterns 107

Use of auxiliaries in short answers, agreements etc.

In short answers 108
Agreements and disagreements 109
Question tags 110
Comment tags 111
Additions to remarks 112

11 be, have, do page 116

be as an auxiliary verb

Form and use 113
be + infinitive 114

be as an ordinary verb
be to denote existence, be + adjective 115
There is/are/was/were etc. 116

it is and there is compared 117

Have as an auxiliary verb

Form, and use 118
have + object + past participle 119
had better + bare infinitive 120
have. object + present participle 121

have as an ordinary verb
have meaning 'possess' 122
have meaning 'take', 'give' 123

do
Form 124
do used as an auxiliary 125

do used as an ordinary verb 126

12 may and can for permission and possibility *page 128*
Permission
may for permission: forms 127
can for permission: forms 128
may and can used for permission in the present or future 129
could or was/were allowed to for permission in the past 130
Requests for permission 131

Possibility
May/might for possibility 132
May/might + perfect infinitive 133
could or *may/might* 134
can for possibility 135

13 can and be able for ability *page 134*
can and be able: forms 136
Can/am able, could/was able 137
could + perfect infinitive 138

14 ought, should, must, have to, need for obligation *page 137*
ought: forms 139
should: forms 140
ought/should compared to must and have to 141
ought/should with the continuous infinitive 142
ought/should with the perfect infinitive 143
must and have to: forms 144
must and have to: difference 145
need not and must not in the present and future 146
need not, must not and must in the present and future 147
need: forms 148
Absence of obligation 149
need not and other forms 150
must, have to and need in the interrogative 151
needn't + perfect infinitive 152
Needn't have (done) and didn't have/need (to do) 153
needn't, could and should + perfect infinitive 154
to need meaning 'require' 155

Contents

15 must, have, will and should for deduction and assumption *page 147*
must for deduction 156
must compared to may/might 157

have/had for deduction 158
can't and couldn't used for negative deduction 159
will and should: assumption 160

16 The auxiliaries dare and used *page 150*
dare 161
used 162
to be/become/get used to 163

17 The present tenses *page 153*

The present continuous
Form 164
Present participle: spelling 165
Uses 166
Other possible uses 167
Verbs not normally used 168
feel, look, smell and taste 169

see and hear 170

think, assume and expect 171

The simple present tense
Form 172

Used for habitual action 173
Other uses 174

18 The past and perfect tenses *page 161*
The simple past tense Form 175
Irregular verbs: form 176
Use for past events 177
The past continuous tense
Form 178
Main uses 179
Other uses 180
Past continuous or simple past 181
The present perfect tense
Form and use 182
Use with just 183
Past actions: indefinite time 184

Actions in an incomplete period 185
Actions lasting throughout an incomplete period 186
Use with for and since 187
it is + period + since + past or perfect tense 188
Present perfect and simple past 189
The present perfect continuous tense
Form 190
Use 191
Comparison of the present perfect
simple and continuous 192
Some more examples 193
The past perfect tense
Form and use 194

In time clauses 195

In indirect speech 196
The past perfect continuous tense Form and use 197

19 The future *page 180*
Future forms 198
The simple present 199
Future with intention 200
will + infinitive 201
The present continuous 202
The be going to form 203
be going to used for intention 204
be going to and will + infinitive to express intention 205
be going to used for prediction 206
The future simple 207
First person will and shall 208
Uses of the future simple 209
will contrasted with want/wish/would tike 210
The future continuous tense 211
The future continuous used as an ordinary continuous tense 212
The future continuous used to express future without intention 213
The future continuous and will + infinitive compared 214
Various future forms 215
The future perfect and the future perfect continuous 216

20 The sequence of tenses *page 195*
Subordinate clauses 217
The sequence of tenses 218

21 The conditional *page 196*
The conditional tenses
The present conditional tense 219
The perfect conditional tense 220
Conditional sentences
Conditional sentences type 1 221
Conditional sentences type 2 222
Conditional sentences type 3 223
will/would and should 224
if + were and inversion 225
if, even if, whether, unless, but for, otherwise etc. 226
if and in case 227
if only 228
In indirect speech 229

22 Other uses of will/would, shall/should *page 206*
Habits expressed by will, would 230
should/would think + that-clause or so/not 231
would for past intention 232
shall I/we? 233
shall: second and third persons 234
that...should 235
it is/was + adjective + that... should 236
Other uses of should 237

Contents

23 The infinitive *page 212*

Form 238
Uses of the infinitive 239
The infinitive as subject 240
As object or complement 241
Verb + how/what etc. + infinitive 242
Infinitive after verb or verb + object 243
Infinitive after verb +• object 244
Infinitive after verbs of knowing and thinking etc. 245
The bare infinitive 246
Infinitive represented by to 247
Split infinitives 248
Infinitive as connective link 249
Infinitive used to replace a relative clause 250
Infinitive after certain nouns 251
After too, enough, so... as 252
Infinitive phrases 253
The continuous infinitive 254
The perfect infinitive 255
Perfect infinitive continuous 256

24 The gerund *page 228*
Form and use 257
The gerund as subject 258
Gerunds after prepositions 259
The word to 260
Verbs followed by the gerund 261
Verbs + possessive adjective/pronoun object + gerund 262
The verb mind 263
The perfect gerund 264
The passive gerund 265

25 Infinitive and gerund constructions *page 234*
Verbs + infinitive or gerund 266
Verbs + infinitive or gerund without change of meaning 267
regret, remember, forget 268
agree/agree to, mean. propose 269
go on, stop, try. used (to) 270
be afraid (of), **be sorry (for) be ashamed (of) 271**

26 The participles *page 239*

Present (or active) participle 272
After verbs of sensation 273
catch, find, leave + object + present participle 274
go, come, **spend, waste** etc. 275
A present participle phrase replacing a main clause 276
A present participle phrase replacing a subordinate clause 277
Perfect participle (active) 278
Part participle (passive) and perfect participle (passive) 279
Misrelated participles 280

27 Commands, requests, invitations, advice, suggestions *page 245*
The imperative for commands 281
Other ways of expressing commands 282
Requests with **can/could/may/might I/we** 283
Requests with could/will/would you etc. 284
Requests with might 285
Invitations 286
Advice forms 287
Advice with **may/might** as **well +** infinitive 288
Suggestions 289

28 The subjunctive *page 253*
Form 290
Use of the present subjunctive 291
as if etc. + past subjunctive 292
it is **time** + past subjunctive 293

29 care, like, love, hate, prefer, wish *page 255*
care and like 294
care, like, love, hate, prefer 295
would like and want 296
would rather/sooner and prefer/would prefer 297
More examples of preference 298
wish, want and **would like** 299
wish + subject + unreal past 300
wish **(that)** + subject + **would** 301

30 The passive voice *page 263*

Form 302
Active and passive equivalents 303
Uses of the passive 304
Prepositions with passive verbs 305
Infinitive constructions after passive verbs 306

31 Indirect speech *page 269*

Direct and indirect speech 307
Statements in indirect speech:
tense changes necessary 308
Past tenses 309
Unreal past tenses 310
might, ought to, should, would, used to in indirect statements 311
could in indirect statements 312
Pronoun and adjective 313
Expressions of time and place 314
Infinitive and gerund 315
say, tell, etc, 316

Questions in indirect speech 317

Questions beginning shall I/we? 318
Questions beginning **will you/would you/could you?** 319
Commands, requests, advice 320
Other ways of expressing indirect commands 321
let's, let us, let him/them 322
Exclamations and **yes** and **no** 323
Indirect speech: mixed types 324

Contents

must and needn't 325

32 Conjunctions *page 288*
Co-ordinating conjunctions 326
besides, so, still, yet etc. 327
Subordinating conjunctions 328
though/although, in spite of, **despite** 329
for and **because** 330
when, while, as to express time 331
as meaning **when/while** or **because/since** 332
as, when, **while** used to mean **although, but, seeing that 333**

33 Purpose *page 294*
Purpose expressed by infinitive 334
Infinitives after **go** and **come** 335
Clauses of purpose 336
in case and lest 337

34 Clauses of reason, result, concession, comparison, time *page 298*
Reason and result/cause 338
Result with such/so **... that** 339
Clauses of concession 340
Clauses of comparison 341
Time clauses 342

35 Noun clauses *page 303*
Noun clauses as subject 343
that-clauses after certain adjectives/participles 344
that-clauses after nouns 345
Noun clauses as objects 346
so and **not** representing athat-clause 347

36 Numerals, dates, and weights and measures *page 307*
Cardinal numbers 348
Points about cardinal numbers 349
Ordinal numbers 350
Points about ordinal numbers 351
Dates 352
Weights, length, liquids 353

37 Spelling rules *page 311*
Introduction 354
Doubling the consonant 355
Omission of a final e 356
Words ending in **ce** and ge 357
The suffix ful 358
Words ending in y 359
ie and **ei** 360
Hyphens 361

38 Phrasal verbs *page 315*
Introduction 362
Verb + preposition/adverb 363

39 List of irregular verbs *page **353***
Irregular verbs 364 Index *page 359*

1 Articles and **one, a little/a few, this, that**

1 **a/an** (the indefinite article)

The form **a** is used before a word beginning with a consonant, or a vowel with a consonant sound:

a man a had *a university* *a European*
a one-way street

The form **an** is used before words beginning with a vowel (**a, e, i, o, u**) or words beginning with a mute **h**:

an apple *an island* *an uncle*
an egg *an onion* *an hour*

or individual letters spoken with a vowel sound:

an L-plate *an MP* *an SOS* *an 'x'*

a/an is the same for all genders:

a man *a woman* *an actor* *an actress* *a table*

2 Use of **a/an**

a/an is used:

A Before a singular noun which is countable (i.e. of which there is more than one) when it is mentioned for the first time and represents no particular person or thing:
I need a visa. *They live in a flat.* *He bought an ice-cream.*

B Before a singular countable noun which is used as an example of a class of things:
A car must be insured
All cars/Any car must be insured.
A child needs love
All children need/Any child needs love.

C With a noun complement. This includes names of professions:
It was an earthquake. *She'll be a dancer.* *He is an actor.*

D In certain expressions of quantity:
a lot of *a couple*
a great many *a dozen* (but *one dozen* is also possible)
a great deal of

E With certain numbers:
a hundred *a thousand* (See 349.)
Before **half** when **half** follows a whole number;
1 ½ kilos = one and a half kilos or *a kilo and a half*
But *½ kg = half a kilo* (no **a** before *half),* though *a + half* + noun is sometimes possible:
a half-holiday *a half-portion* *a half-share*
With *1/3, ¼, 1/5 etc.* **a** is usual: *a third, a quarter* etc., but **one** is also possible. (See 350.)

F In expressions of price, speed, ratio, etc.:
5p a kilo *£1 a metre* *sixty kilometres an hour*
10 p a dozen *four times a day*
(Here **a/an = per)**

G In exclamations before singular, countable nouns:
Such a long queue! *What a pretty girl!* But
Such long queues! *What pretty girls!*
(Plural nouns, so no article. See 3.)

H **a** can be placed before Mr/Mrs/Miss + surname:
a Mr Smith *a Mrs Smith* *a Miss Smith* *a Mr Smith*

means 'a man called Smith' and implies that he is a stranger to the speaker. *Mr Smith,* without *a,* implies that the speaker knows Mr Smith or knows of his existence.
(For the difference between **a/an** and **one,** see 4. For **a few** and **a little,** see 5.)

3 Omission of **a/an**

a/an is omitted;

A Before plural nouns.
a/an has no plural form. So the plural of *a dog* is *dogs,* and of *an egg* is *eggs.*

B Before uncountable nouns (see 13).

C Before names of meals, except when these are preceded by an adjective:
We have breakfast at eight.
He gave us a good breakfast.
The article is also used when it is a special meal given to celebrate something or in someone's honour:
I was invited to dinner (at their house, in the ordinary way) but
I was invited to a dinner given to welcome the new ambassador.

4 **a/an** and **one**

A **a/an** and **one** (adjective)

1 When counting or measuring time, distance, weight etc. we can use either **a/an** or **one** for the singular:
£1 = a/one pound £1,000,000 = a/one million pounds (See chapter 36.)
But note that in *The rent is £100 a week* the **a** before *week* is not replaceable by **one** (see 2 F).
In other types of statement **a/an** and **one** are **not** normally interchangeable, because **one** + noun normally means 'one only/not more than one' and **a/an** does not mean this:
A shotgun is no good. (It is the wrong sort of thing.)
One shotgun is no good. (I need two or three.)

2 Special uses of **one**
(a) **one** (adjective/pronoun) used with **another/others:**
One (boy) wanted to read, another /others wanted to watch TV.
(See 53.)
One day he wanted his lunch early, another day he wanted it late.
(b) **one** can be used before *day/week/month/year/summer/winter* etc. or before the name of the day or month to denote a particular time when something happened:
One night there was a terrible storm.
One winter the snow fell early.
One day a telegram arrived.
(c) **one day** can also be used to mean 'at some future date':
One day you'll be sorry you treated him so badly.
(Some day would also be possible.)
(For **one** and **you,** see 68.)

B **a/an** and **one** (pronoun)
one is the .pronoun equivalent of **a/an:**
Did you get a ticket? ~ Yes, I managed to get one.
The plural of **one** used in this way is **some:**
Did you get tickets? ~ Yes, I managed to get some.

5 **a little/a few** and **little/few**

A **a little/little** (adjectives) are used before uncountable nouns:
a little salt/little salt
a few/few (adjectives) are used before plural nouns:
a few people/few people
All four forms can also be used as pronouns, either alone or with of:
Sugar? ~ A little, please.
Only a few of these are any good.

B **a little, a few** (adjectives and pronouns)

a little is a small amount, or what the speaker considers a small amount, **a few** is a small number, or what the speaker considers a small number.

only placed before **a little/a few** emphasises that the number or amount really is small in the speaker's opinion:

Only a few of our customers have accounts.

But **quite** placed before **a few** increases the number considerably:

I have quite a few books on art. (quite a lot of books)

C **little** and **few** (adjectives and pronouns)

little and **few** denote scarcity or lack and have almost the force of a negative:

There was little time for consultation.

Little is known about the side-effects of this drug.

Few towns have such splendid trees.

This use of **little** and **few** is mainly confined to written English (probably because in conversation **little** and **few** might easily be mistaken for **a little/a few).** In conversation, therefore, **little** and **few** are normally replaced by **hardly any.** A negative verb + **much/many** is also possible:

We saw little = We saw hardly anything/We didn't see much.

Tourists come here but few stay overnight =

Tourists come here but hardly any stay overnight.

But **little** and **few** can be used more freely when they are qualified by *so, very, too. extremely, comparatively, relatively etc.* **fewer** (comparative) can also be used more freely.

I'm unwilling to try a drug I know so little about.

They have too many technicians, we have too few.

There are fewer butterflies every year.

D **a little/little** (adverbs)

1 **a little** can be used:

(a) with verbs: *It rained a little during the night.*

They grumbled a little about having to wait.

(b) with 'unfavourable' adjectives and adverbs:

a little anxious *a little unwillingly*

a little annoyed *a little impatiently*

(c) with comparative adjectives or adverbs:

The paper should be a little thicker.

Can't you walk a little faster?

rather could replace **a little** in (b) and can also be used before comparatives (see 42), though **a little** is more usual. In colloquial English **a bit** could be used instead of **a little** in all the above examples.

2 **little** is used chiefly with **better** or **more** in fairly formal style:

His second suggestion was little (= not much) *better than his first.*

He was little (= not much) *more than a child when his father died.*

It can also, in formal English, be placed before certain verbs, for example *expect, know. suspect, think:*

He little expected to find himself in prison.

He little thought that one day . . .

Note also the adjectives *little-known* and *little-used*:

a little-known painter *a little-used footpath*

6 ***the*** *(the definite article)*

A Form

the *is the same for singular and plural and for all genders:*

the boy *the girl* *the day*

the boys *the girls* *the days*

B Use

The definite article is used:

1 When the object or group of objects is unique or considered to be unique:

the earth *the sea* *the sky* *the equator* *the stars*

2 Before a noun which has become definite as a result of being mentioned a second time:
His car struck a tree; you can still see the mark on the tree.

3 Before a noun made definite by the addition of a phrase or clause:
the girl in blue *the man with the banner*
the boy that I met *the place where I met him*

4 Before a noun which by reason of locality can represent only one particular thing:
Ann is in the garden, (the garden of this house)
Please pass the wine, (the wine on the table)
Similarly: *the postman* (the one who comes to us), *the car* (our car), *the newspaper* (the one we read).

5 Before superlatives and *first, second* etc. used as adjectives or pronouns, and only:
the first (week) *the best day* *the only way*

C **the** + singular noun can represent a class of animals or things:
The whale is in danger of becoming extinct.
The deep-freeze has made life easier for housewives.
But man, used to represent the human race, has no article:
If oil supplies run out, man may have to fall back on the horse.
the can be used before a member of a certain group of people:
The small shopkeeper is finding life increasingly difficult.
the + singular noun as used above takes a singular verb. The pronoun is **he, she** or **it:**
The first-class traveller pays more so he expects some comfort.

D **the** + adjective represents a class of persons:
the old = old people in general (see 23)

E **the** is used before certain proper names of seas, rivers, groups of islands, chains of mountains, plural names of countries, deserts, regions:
the Atlantic *the Netherlands*
the Thames *the Sahara*
the Azores *the Crimea*
the Alps *the Riviera*
and before certain other names:
the City *the Mall* *the Sudan*
the Hague *the Strand* *the Yemen*
the is also used before names consisting of noun **+ of +** noun:
the Bay of Biscay *the Gulf of Mexico*
the Cape of Good Hope *the United States of America*
the is used before names consisting of adjective + noun (provided the adjective is not *east, west* etc.):
the Arabian Gulf *the New Forest* *the High Street*
the is used before the adjectives *east/west* etc. + noun in certain names:
the East/West End the East/West Indies
the North/South Pole
but is normally omitted:
South Africa *North America* *West Germany*
the, however, is used before *east/west* etc. when these are nouns:
the north of Spain *the West* (geographical)
the Middle East *the West* (political)
Compare *Go north* (adverb: in a northerly direction) with *He lives in the north* (noun: an area in the north).

F **the** is used before other proper names consisting of adjective + noun or noun **+** of **+** noun:
the National Gallery *the Tower of London*
It is also used before names of choirs, orchestras, pop groups etc.:
the Bach Choir *the Philadelphia Orchestra* *the Beatles*
and before names of newspapers *(The Times)* and ships *(the Great Britain).*

G **the** with names of people has a very limited use. **the** + plural surname can be used to mean 'the . . . family':

the Smiths = Mr and Mrs Smith (and children)

the + singular name + clause/phrase can be used to distinguish one person from another of the same name:

We have two Mr Smiths. Which do you want? ~ I want the Mr Smith who signed this letter.

the is used before titles containing **of** *(the Duke of York)* but it is not used before other titles or ranks *(Lord Olivier, Captain Cook),* though if someone is referred to by title/rank alone **the** is used:

The earl expected . . . The captain ordered . . .

Letters written to two or more unmarried sisters jointly may be addressed *The Misses* + surname: *The Misses Smith.*

7 Omission of **the**

A The definite article is not used:

1 Before names of places except as shown above, or before names of people.

2 Before abstract nouns except when they are used in a particular sense;

Men fear death but *The death a/the Prime Minister left his party without a leader.*

3 After a noun in the possessive case, or a possessive adjective:

the boy's uncle = the uncle of the boy It is my (blue) book = The (blue) book is mine.

4 Before names of meals (but see 3 C):

The Scots have porridge/or breakfast but The wedding breakfast was held in her/other's house.

5 Before names of games: *He plays golf.*

6 Before parts of the body and articles of clothing, as these normally prefer a possessive adjective:

Raise your right hand. fie took off his coat.

But notice that sentences of the type:

She seized the child's collar.
I patted his shoulder.
The brick hit John's face.

could be expressed:

She seized the child by the collar.
I patted him on the shoulder.
The brick hit John in the face.

Similarly in the passive:

He was hit on the head. He was cut in the hand.

B Note that in some European languages the definite article is used before indefinite plural nouns but that in English **the** is never used in this way:

Women are expected to like babies, (i.e. women in general)
Big hotels all over the world are very much the same.

If we put **the** before *women* in the first example, it would mean that we were referring to a particular group of women.

C *nature,* where it means the spirit creating and motivating the world of plants and animals etc., is used without **the:**

If you interfere with nature you will suffer for it.

8 Omission of **the** before **home,** before **church, hospital, prison, school** etc. and before **work, sea and town**

A **home**

When *home* is used alone, i.e. is not preceded or followed by a descriptive word or phrase, **the** is omitted:

He is at home.

home used alone can be placed directly after a verb of motion, i.e. it can be treated as an adverb:

He went home. *I arrived home after dark.*

But when *home* is preceded or followed by a descriptive word or phrase it is treated like any other noun:

They went to their new home.
We arrived at the bride's home.

For some years this was the home of your queen.
A mud hut was the only home he had ever known.

B **bed, church, court, hospital, prison, school/college/university**

the is not used before the nouns listed above when these places are visited or used for their primary purpose. We go:

to bed to sleep or as invalids	*to hospital* as patients
to church to pray	*to prison* as prisoners
to court as litigants etc.	*to school/college/university* to study

Similarly we can be:

in *bed,* sleeping or resting	*in hospital* as patients
at church as worshippers	*at school* etc. as students
in court as witnesses etc.	

We can be/get back (or be/get home) *from school/college/university.*
We can leave school, leave hospital, *be released* from prison.
When these places are visited or used for other reasons **the** is necessary:

I went to the church to see the stained glass.
He goes to the prison sometimes to give lectures.

C ***sea***

We go to *sea* as sailors. To be *at sea* = to be on a voyage (as passengers or crew).
But to go *to* or be *at the sea* = to go to or be *at the seaside.* We can also live *by/near the sea.*

D **work and office**

work (= place of work) **is** used without **the:**

He's on his way to work. *He is at work.*
He isn't back from work yet.

Note that *at work* can also mean 'working'; *hard at work* = working hard:

He's hard at work on a new picture.

office (= place of work) needs **the:** *He is at/in the office.*
To be *in office* (without **the)** means to hold an official (usually political) position. To be *out of office* = to be no longer in power.

E **town**

the can be omitted when speaking of the subject's or speaker's own town:

We go to town sometimes to buy clothes.
We were in town last Monday.

9 this/these, that/those (demonstrative adjectives and pronouns)

A Used as adjectives, they agree with their nouns in number. They are the only adjectives to do this.

This beach was quite empty last year.
This exhibition will be open until the end of May.
These people come from that hotel over there.
What does that notice say?
That exhibition closed a month ago.
He was dismissed on the 13th. That night the factory went on fire.
Do you see those birds at the top of the tree?

this/these/that/those + noun + *of* + *yours/hers etc. or Ann's* etc. is sometimes, for emphasis, used instead *of your/her* etc. + noun:

This diet of mine/My diet isn't having much effect.
That car of Ann 's/Ann's car is always breaking down.

Remarks made with these phrases are usually, though not necessarily always, unfavourable,

B **this/these, that/those** used as pronouns:

This is my umbrella. That's yours.

These are the old classrooms. Those are the new ones.
Who's that (man over there)? ~ That's Tom Jones.

After a radio programme:

That was the concerto in C minor by Vivaldi.

this is is possible in introductions:

ANN (to TOM): *This is my brother Hugh.*
ANN (to HUGH): *Hugh, this is Tom Jones.*
TELEPHONE CALLER: *Good morning. This is/I am Tom Jones . . .*

I am is slightly more formal than *This is* and is more likely to be used when the caller is a stranger to the other person. The caller's name + *here (Tom here)* is more informal than *This is.* **those** can be followed by a defining relative clause:

Those who couldn't walk were carried on stretchers.

this/that can represent a previously mentioned noun, phrase or clause:

They're digging up my mad. They do this every summer.
He said I wasn 't a good wife. Wasn 't that a horrible thing to say?

C **this/these, that/those used with one/ones**

When there is some idea of comparison or selection, the pronoun **one/ones** is often placed after these demonstratives, but it is not essential except when **this** etc. is followed by an adjective:

This chair is too low. I'll sit in that (one).
I like this (one) best.
I like this blue one/these blue ones.

2 Nouns

10 Kinds and function

A There are four kinds of noun in English:
Common nouns: *dog. man, table*
Proper nouns*: France, Madrid, Mrs Smith, Tom*
Abstract nouns: *beauty, chanty, courage, fear. joy*
Collective nouns: *crowd, flock, group, swarm, team*

B A noun can function as:
The subject of a verb: *Tom arrived.*
The complement of the verbs **be, become, seem:** *Tom is an actor.*
The object of a verb: *I saw Tom.*
The object of a preposition: / *spoke to Tom.*
A noun can also be in the possessive case: *Tom's books.*

11 Gender

A Masculine: men, boys and male animals (pronoun he/they).
Feminine: women, girls and female animals (pronoun **she/they).**
Neuter: inanimate things, animals whose sex we don't know and sometimes babies whose sex we don't know (pronoun **it/they).**
Exceptions: ships and sometimes cars and other vehicles when regarded with affection or respect are considered feminine. Countries when referred to by name are also normally considered feminine.

The ship struck an iceberg, which tore a huge hole in her side.
Scotland lost many of her bravest men in two great rebellions.

B Masculine/feminine nouns denoting people
1 Different forms;

(a)	*boy, girl*	*gentleman, lady*	*son, daughter*
	bachelor, spinster	*husband, wife*	*uncle, aunt*
	bridegroom, bride	*man, woman*	*widower, widow*
	father, mother	*nephew, niece*	
	Main exceptions:		
	baby	*infant*	*relative*
	child	*parent*	*spouse*
	cousin	*relation*	*teenager*
(b)	*duke, duchess*	*king, queen*	*prince, princess*
	earl, countess	*lord, lady*	

2 The majority of nouns indicating occupation have the same form:

artist	*cook*	*driver*	*guide*
assistant	*dancer*	*doctor*	*etc.*

Main exceptions:

actor, actress	*host, hostess*
conductor, conductress	*manager, manageress*
heir, Heiress	*steward, stewardess*
hero, heroine	*waiter, waitress*

Also *salesman, saleswoman* etc., but sometimes *-person* is used instead of *-man, -woman: salesperson, spokesperson.*

C Domestic animals and many of the larger wild animals have different forms:

bull, cow	*duck, drake*	*ram, ewe*	*stallion, mare*
cock, hen	*gander, goose*	*stag, doe*	*tiger, tigress*
dog, bitch	*lion, lioness*		

Others have the same form.

12 Plurals

A The plural of a noun is usually made by adding s to the singular:

day, days dog, dogs house, houses

s is pronounced /s/ after **a p, k or f** sound. Otherwise it is pronounced /z/.
When s is placed after **ce, ge, se** or **ze** an extra syllable (/iz/) is added to the spoken word.
Other plural forms

B Nouns ending in o or **ch, sh.** ss or x form their plural by adding **es:**

tomato, tomatoes brush, brushes box, boxes
church, churches kiss, kisses

But words of foreign origin or abbreviated words ending in o add *s* only:

dynamo, dynamos kimono, kimonos piano, pianos
kilo, kilos photo, photos soprano, sopranos

When es is placed after **ch, sh,** ss or x an extra syllable (/iz/) is added to the spoken word.

C Nouns ending in y following a consonant form their plural by dropping the y and adding **ies:**

baby, babies country, countries fly, flies lady, ladies

Nouns ending in y following a vowel form their plural by adding s:

boy, boys day. days donkey, donkeys guy, guys

D Twelve nouns ending in f or **fe** drop the f or **fe** and add ves. These nouns are *calf. half, knife, leaf. life, loaf, self. sheaf, shelf, thief, wife, wolf:*

loaf, loaves wife, wives wolf. wolves etc.

The nouns *hoof, scar/and wharf take* either **s** or **ves** in the plural:

hoofs or hooves scarfs or scarves wharfs or wharves

Other words ending in **f** or **fe** add **s** in the ordinary way:

cliff, cliffs handkerchief, handkerchiefs safe, safes

E A few nouns form their plural by a vowel change:

foot. feet louse, lice mouse, mice woman, women
goose, geese man, men tooth, teeth

The plurals of *child* and *ox* are *children*, *oxen*.

F Names of certain creatures do not change in the plural.
fish is normally unchanged, *fishes* exists but is uncommon. Some types of fish do not normally change in the plural:

carp pike salmon trout
cod plaice squid turbot
mackerel

but if used in a plural sense they would take a plural verb. Others add s:

crabs herrings sardines
eels lobsters sharks

deer and *sheep* do not change: *one sheep, two sheep.*
Sportsmen who shoot *duck, partridge, pheasant* etc. use the same form for singular and plural. But other people normally add ***s*** for the plural: *ducks, partridges, pheasants.*
The word *game.* used by sportsmen to mean an animal/animals hunted, is always in the singular, and takes a singular verb.

G A few other words don't change:

aircraft, craft (boat/boats) *quid* (slang for £1}
counsel (barristers working in court)

Some measurements and numbers do not change (see chapter 36).
For uncountable nouns, see 13.

H Collective nouns, *crew, family, team etc..* can take a singular or plurai verb; singular if we consider the word to mean a single group or unit:

Our team is the best

or plural if we take it to mean a number of individuals:

Our team are wearing their new jerseys.

When a possessive adjective is necessary, a plural verb with **their** is more usual than a singular verb with **its,** though sometimes both are possible:

The Jury is considering its verdict.

The jury are considering their verdict.

I Certain words are always plural and take a plural verb:

Clothes *police*

garments consisting of two parts:

breeches *pants* *pyjama* *trousers* etc.

and tools and instruments consisting of two parts:

binoculars *pliers* *scissors* *spectacles*
glasses *scales* *shears* *etc.*

Also certain other words including:

arms (weapons) *particulars*
damages (compensation) *premises/quarters*
earnings *riches*
goods/wares *savings*
greens (vegetables) *spirits (alcohol)*
grounds *stairs*
outskirts *surroundings*
pains (trouble/effort) *valuables*

J A number words ending in **ics,** *acoustics, athletics, ethics, hysterics. mathematics, physics, politics* etc., which are plural in form, normally take a plural verb:

His mathematics are weak.

But names of sciences can sometimes be considered singular:

Mathematics is an exact science.

K Words plural in form but singular in meaning include *news:*

The news is good

certain diseases:

mumps *rickets* *shingles*

and certain games:

billiards *darts* *draughts bowls* *dominoes*

L Some words which retain their original Greek or Latin forms make their plurals according to the rules of Greek and Latin:

crisis, crises *phenomenon, phenomena*
erratum, errata *radius, radii*
memorandum, memoranda *terminus, termini*
oasis, oases

But some follow the English rules:

dogma, dogmas *gymnasium, gymnasiums*
formula, formulas (though *formulae* is used by scientists)

Sometimes there are two plural forms with different meanings:

appendix, appendixes or *appendices* (medical terms)
appendix, appendices (addition/s to a book)
index, indexes (in books), *indices* (in mathematics)

Musicians usually prefer Italian plural forms for Italian musical terms:

libretto, libretti *tempo, tempi*

But s is also possible: *librettos, tempos.*

M Compound nouns

1 Normally the last word is made plural:

boy-friends *break-ins* *travel agents*

But where *man* and *woman* is prefixed both parts are made plural:

men drivers *women drivers*

2 The first word is made plural with compounds formed of verb + **er** nouns + adverbs:

hangers-on *lookers-on* *runners-up*

and with compounds composed of noun + preposition + noun:

ladies-in-waiting *sisters-in-law* *wards of court*

3 Initials can be made plural:

MPs (Members of Parliament)
VIPs (very important persons)
OAPs (old age pensioners)
UFOs (unidentified flying objects)

13 Uncountable nouns (also known as non-count nouns or mass nouns)

A 1 Names of substances considered generally:

bread	*cream*	*gold*	*paper*	*tea*
beer	*dust*	*ice*	*sand*	*wafer*
cloth	*gin*	*jam*	*soap*	*wine*
coffee	*glass*	*oil*	*stone*	*wood*

2 Abstract nouns:

advice	*experience*		*horror*	*pity*
beauty	*fear*	*information*		*relief*
courage	*help*	*knowledge*		*suspicion*
death	*hope*	*mercy*	*work*	

3 Also considered uncountable in English:

baggage *damage* *luggage* *shopping*
camping *furniture* *parking* *weather*

These, with hair, information, knowledge, news, rubbish, are sometimes countable in other languages.

B Uncountable nouns are always singular and are not used with **a/an:**

I don't want (any) advice or help. I want (some) information.
He has had no experience in this sort of work.

These nouns are often preceded by **some, any, no, a little** etc. or by nouns such as bit. piece, slice etc. + **of:**

a bit of news	*a grain of sand*	*a pot of jam*
a cake of soap	*a pane of glass*	*a sheet of paper*
a drop of oil	*a piece of advice*	

C Many of the nouns in the above groups can be used in a particular sense and are then countable and can take a/an in the singular. Some examples are given below.
hair (all the hair on one's head) is considered uncountable, but if we consider each hair separately we say one hair, two hairs etc.:

Her hair is black. Whenever she finds a grey hair she pulls it out.

We drink beer, coffee, gin, but we can ask for a (cup of) coffee, a gin, two gins etc. We drink out of glasses. We can walk in woods.

experience meaning 'something which happened to someone' is countable:

He had an exciting experience/some exciting experiences
(= adventure/s) last week.

work meaning 'occupation/employment/a job/jobs' is singular:

He is looking/or work/for a job. *I do homework.*
She does housework.

But roadworks means 'repair of roads'.
works (plural only) can mean 'factory' or 'moving parts of a machine'.
works (usually plural) can be used of literary or musical compositions:

Shakespeare's complete works.

D Some abstract nouns can be used in a particular sense with **a/an,** but in the singular only:
a help:

My children are a great help to me. *A good map would be a help.*

a relief:

It was a relief to sit down.

a knowledge + of:

He had a good knowledge of mathematics.

a dislike/dread/hatred/horror/love + of is also possible:

a love of music *a hatred of violence*

a mercy/pity/shame/wonder can be used with that-clauses introduced by **it:**

It's a pity you weren't here. *It's a shame he wasn't paid.*

E **a fear/fears, a hope/hopes, a suspicion/suspicions**
These can be used with **that**-clauses introduced by **there:**

There is a fear/There are fears that he has been murdered.

We can also have a suspicion that. . .

Something can arouse *a fear/fears, a hope/hopes, a suspicion/suspicions.*

14 The form of the possessive/genitive case

A **'s** is used with singular nouns and plural nouns not ending in s:

a man's job	*the people's choice*
men's work	*the crew's quarters*
a woman's intuition	*the horse's mouth*
the butcher's (shop)	*the bull's horns*
a child's voice	*women's clothes*
the children's room	*Russia's exports*

B A simple apostrophe (') is used with plural nouns ending in **s:**

a girls' school	*the students' hostel*
the eagles' nest	*the Smiths' car*

C Classical names ending in s usually add only the apostrophe:

Pythagoras' Theorem *Archimedes' Law* *Sophocles' plays*

D Other names ending in s can take 's or the apostrophe alone;

Mr Jones's (w Mr Jones' house) *Yeats's (or Yeats') poems*

E With compounds, the last word takes the **'s:**

my brother-in-law's guitar

Names consisting of several words are treated similarly:

Henry the Eighth's wives *the Prince of Wales's helicopter*

's can also be used after initials:

the PM's secretary *the MP's briefcase* *the VIP's escort*

Note that when the possessive case is used, the article before the person or thing 'possessed' disappears:

the daughter of the politician = the politician's daughter
the intervention of America = America's intervention
the plays of Shakespeare = Shakespeare's plays

15 Use of the possessive/genitive case and **of** + noun

A The possessive case is chiefly used of people, countries or animals as shown above- It can also be used:

1 Of ships and boats: the ship's bell. the yacht's mast

2 Of planes, trains, cars and other vehicles, though here the **of** construction is safer: a glider's wings or the wings of a glider the train's heating system or the heating system of the train

3 In time expressions:

a week's holiday	*today's paper*	*tomorrow's weather*
in two years' time	*ten minutes' break*	*two hours' delay*

a ten-minute break, a two-hour delay are also possible:

We have ten minutes' break/a ten-minute break.

4 In expressions of money + **worth:**

£1 's worth of stamps *ten dollars' worth of ice-cream*

5 With **for** + noun + **sake**: *for heaven's sake, for goodness' sake*

6 In a few expressions such as:

a stone's throw *Journey's end* *the water's edge*

7 We can say either a winter's day or a winter day and a summer's day or a summer day, but we cannot make spring or autumn possessive, except when they are personified: Autumn's return.

8 Sometimes certain nouns can be used in the possessive case without the second noun. a/the baker's/butcher's/chemist's/florist's etc. can mean 'a/the baker's/butcher's etc. shop'. Similarly, a/the house agent's/travel agent's etc. (office) and the dentist 's/doctor 's/vet 's (surgery):

You can buy it at the chemist's. *He's going to the dentist's.*

Names of the owners of some businesses can be used similarly:

Sotheby's, Claridge's

Some very well-known shops etc. call themselves by the possessive form and some drop the apostrophe: *Foyles, Harrods.*

Names of people can sometimes be used similarly to mean '.. . 's house':

We had lunch at Bill's. *We met at Ann's.*

B **of** + noun is used for possession:

1 When the possessor noun is followed by a phrase or clause:

The boys ran about, obeying the directions of a man with a whistle.
I took the advice of a couple I met (in the train and hired a car.

2 With inanimate 'possessors', except those listed in A above:

the walls of the town *the roof of the church* *the keys of the car*

However, it is often possible to replace noun **X + of +** noun Y by **noun Y** + **noun X** in that order:

the town walls *the church roof* *the car keys*

The first noun becomes a sort of adjective and is not made plural:

the roofs of the churches = the church roofs (see 16)

Unfortunately noun + **of** + noun combinations cannot always be replaced in this way and the student is advised to use of when in doubt.

16 Compound nouns

A Examples of these:

1 Noun + noun:

London Transport	*Fleet Street*	*Tower bridge*
hall door	*traffic warden*	*petrol tank*
hitch-hiker	*sky-jacker*	*river bank*
kitchen table	*winter clothes*	

2 Noun + gerund:

fruit picking	*lorry driving*	*coal-mining*
weight-lifting	*bird-watching*	*surf-riding*

3 Gerund + noun:

waiting list	*diving-board*	*driving licence*
landing card	*dining-room*	*swimming pool*

B Some ways in which these combinations can be used:

1 When the second noun belongs to or is part of the first:

shop window	*picture frame*	*college library*
church bell	*garden gate*	*gear lever*

But words denoting quantity: *lump, part, piece, slice* etc. cannot be used in this way:

a piece of cake *a slice of bread*

2 The first noun can indicate the place of the second:

city street *comer shop* *country lane* *street market*

3 The first noun can indicate the time of the second:

summer holiday	*Sunday paper*	*November fogs*
spring flowers	*dawn chorus*	

4 The first noun can state the material of which the second is made:

steel door	*rope ladder*	*gold medal*
stone wall	*silk shirt*	

wool and wood are not used here as they have adjective forms: woollen and wooden, gold has an adjective form golden, but this is used only figuratively;

a golden handshake *a golden opportunity* *golden hair*

The first noun can also state the power/fuel used to operate the second:

Gas fire *petrol engine* *oil stow*

5 The first word can indicate the purpose of the second:

coffee cup	*escape hatch*	*chess board*
reading lamp	*skating rink*	*tin opener*
golf club	*notice board*	*football ground*

6 Work areas, such as factory, farm, mine etc., can be preceded by the name of the article produced:

fish-farm *gold-mine* *oil-rig*

or the type of work done:

inspection pit *assembly plant* *decompression chamber*

7 These combinations are often used of occupations, sports, hobbies and the people who practise them:

sheep farming	*sheep farmer*	*pop singer*
wind surfing	*water skier*	*disc jockey*

and for competitions:

football match *tennis tournament* *beauty contest* *car rally*

8 The first noun can show what the second is about or concerned with.
A work of fiction may be a *'detective/murder/mystery/ghost/terror/spy story.* We buy *bus/train/plane tickets*. We pay *fuel/laundry/ milk/telephone bills, entry fees, income tax, car insurance, water rates, parking fines.*
Similarly with committees, departments, talks, conferences etc.:
housing committee, *education department,* *peace talks*

9 These categories all overlap to some extent. They are not meant to be mutually exclusive, but aim to give the student some general idea of the uses of these combinations and help with the stress.

C As will be seen from the stress-marks above:

1 The first word is stressed in noun + gerund and gerund + noun combinations, when there is an idea of purpose as in B5 above, and in combinations of type B7 and B8 above.

2 Both words are usually stressed in combinations of types Al. Bl-3 above, but inevitably there are exceptions.

3 In place-name combinations both words usually have equal stress:
King's Road *Waterloo Bridge* *Leicester Square*
But there is one important exception. In combinations where the last word is *Street*, the word *Street* is unstressed:
Bond Street *Oxford Street*

3 Adjectives

17 Kinds of adjectives

A The main kinds are:
(a) Demonstrative: *this, that, these, those* (see 9)
(b) Distributive: *each, every* (46); *either, neither* (49)
(c) Quantitative*: some, any, no* (50); *little/few* (5); *many, much* (25); *one, twenty* (349)
(d) Interrogative: *which, what, whose* (54)
(e) Possessive: *my, your, his, her, its, our, your, their* (62)
(f) Of quality: *clever, dry, fat, golden, good, heavy, square* (19)

B Participles used as adjectives
Both present participles (**ing**) and past participles (**ed**) can be used as adjectives. Care must be taken not to confuse them. Present participle adjectives, *amusing, boring, tiring* etc., are active and mean 'having this effect'. Past participle adjectives, *amused, horrified, tired* etc., are passive and mean 'affected in this way'.
The play was boring. (The audience was bored.)
The work was tiring. (The workers were soon tired.)
The scene was horrifying. (The spectators were horrified.)
an infuriating woman (She made us furious.)
an infuriated woman (Something had made her furious.)

C Agreement
Adjectives in English have the same form for singular and plural, masculine and feminine nouns:
a good boy, good boys *a good girl, good girls*
The only exceptions are the demonstrative adjectives **this** and **that**, which change to **these** and **those** before plural nouns:
this cat, these cats *that man, those men*

D Many adjectives/participles can be followed by prepositions: *good at, tired of* (see 96).

18 Position of adjectives: attributive and predicative use

A Adjectives in groups (a) - (e) above come before their nouns:
this book *which boy* *my dog*
Adjectives in this position are called attributive adjectives.

B Adjectives of quality, however, can come either before their nouns:
a rich man *a happy girl*
or after a verb such as (a) *be, become, seem*:
Tom became rich. *Ann seems happy.*
or (b) *appear, feel, get/grow* (= become), *keep, look* (= appear), *make, smelt, sound, taste, turn:*

Tom felt cold. *He got/grew impatient.*
He made her happy. *The idea sounds interesting.*

Adjectives in this position are called predicative adjectives. Verbs used in this way are called link verbs or copulas.

C Note on link verbs (see also 169)

A problem with verbs in B(b) above is that when they are not used as link verbs they can be modified by adverbs in the usual way. This confuses the student, who often tries to use adverbs instead of adjectives after link verbs. Some examples with adjectives and adverbs may help to show the different uses:

He looked calm (adjective) = *He had a calm expression*.
He looked calmly (adverb) *at the angry crowd*, (looked here is a deliberate action.)
She turned pale (adjective) = *She became pale*.
He turned angrily (adverb) *to the man behind him*. (*turned* here is a deliberate action.)
The soup tasted horrible (adjective). (It had a horrible taste.)
He tasted the soup suspiciously (adverb), (*tested* here is a deliberate action.)

D Some adjectives can be used only attributively or only predicatively, and some change their meaning when moved from one position to the other.

bad/good, big/small, heavy/light and **old**, used in such expressions *as bad sailor, good swimmer, big eater, small farmer, heavy drinker, light sleeper, old boy/friend/soldier* etc., cannot be used predicatively without changing the meaning: *a small farmer* is a man who has a small farm, but *The farmer is small* means that he is a small man physically. Used otherwise, the above adjectives can be in either position.

(For **little, old, young,** see also 19 B.) **chief, main, principal, sheer, utter** come before their nouns.

frightened may be in either position, but afraid and upset must follow the verb and so must **adrift, afloat, alike** (see 21 G), **alive**, **alone, ashamed, asleep.**

The meaning of early and late may depend on their position:

an early/a late train means a train scheduled to run early or late in the day. *The train is early/late* means that it is before/after its proper time-poor meaning 'without enough money' can precede the noun or follow the verb.

poor meaning 'unfortunate' must precede the noun.

poor meaning 'weak/inadequate' precedes nouns such as *student, worker* etc. but when used with inanimate nouns can be in either position:

He has poor sight. *His sight is poor.*

E Use of **and**

With attributive adjectives and is used chiefly when there are two or more adjectives of colour. It is then placed before the last of these:

a green and brown carpet *a red, white and blue/lag*

With predicative adjectives and is placed between the last two:

The day was cold, wet and windy.

19 Order of adjectives of quality

A Several variations are possible but a fairly usual order is: adjectives of

(a) size (except **little**; but see C below)
(b) general description (excluding adjectives of personality, emotion etc.)
(c) age, and the adjective little (see B)
(d) shape
(e) colour
(f) material
(g) origin
(h) purpose (these are really gerunds used to form compound nouns: walking stick, riding boots).

a long sharp knife	*a small round bath*
new hexagonal coins	*blue velvet curtains*
an old plastic bucket	*an elegant French dock*

Adjectives of personality/emotion come after adjectives of physical description, including **dark, fair, pale**, but before colours:

a small suspicious official	*a long patient queue*
a pale anxious girl	*a kindly black doctor*
an inquisitive brown dog	

B **little, old** and **young** are often used, not to give information, but as part of an adjective-noun combination. They are then placed next to their nouns:
Your nephew is a nice little boy. *That young man drives too fast.*
little + **old** + noun is possible: a little old lady. But little + young is not.
When used to give information, old and young occupy position (c) above:
a young coloured man *an old Welsh harp*
Adjectives of personality/emotion can precede or follow young/old:
a young ambitious man *an ambitious young man*
young in the first example carries a stronger stress than young in the second, so the first order is better if we wish to emphasise the age.
little can be used similarly in position (c):
a handy little calculator an expensive little hotel
a little sandy beach *a little grey foal*
But **small** is usually better than little if we want to emphasise the size. (For **little** meaning 'a small amount', see 5.)

C **fine, lovely, nice**, and sometimes **beautiful**, adjectives of size (except **little**), shape and temperature usually express approval of the size etc. If we say *a beautiful big room, a lowly warm house, nice/fine thick steaks* we imply that we like big rooms, warm houses and thick steaks.
fine, lovely and **nice** can be used similarly with a number of other adjectives:
fine strong coffee *a lovely quiet beach* *a nice dry day*
When used predicatively, such pairs are separated by and:
The coffee was fine and strong.
The day was nice and dry.
beautiful is not much used in this sense as a predicative adjective.

D **pretty** followed by another adjective with no comma between them is an adverb of degree meaning very/quite: *She's a pretty tall girl* means *She is quite/very tall*. But *a pretty, tall girl* or, more usually, *a tall, pretty girl* means a girl who is both tall and pretty.

20 Comparison A There are three degrees of comparison:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Dark	*darker*	*darkest*
Tall	*taller*	*tallest*
Useful	*more useful*	*most useful*

B One-syllable adjectives form their comparative and superlative by adding **er** and **est** to the positive form:
bright *brighter* *brightest*
Adjectives ending in **e** add **r** and **st**:
brave *braver* *bravest*

C Adjectives of three or more syllables form their comparative and superlative by putting more and most before the positive:
interested *more interested* *most interested*
frightening *more frightening* *most frightening*

D Adjectives of two syllables follow one or other of the above rules. Those ending in ful or re usually take more and most:
doubtful *more doubtful* *most doubtful*
obscure *more obscure* *most obscure*
Those ending in **er, y** or **ly** usually add **er**, **eat**:
clever *cleverer* *cleverest*
pretty *prettier* *prettiest* (note that the **y** becomes **i**)
silly *sillier* *silliest*

E Irregular comparisons:

bad	*worse*	*worst*
far	*farther*	*farthest* (of distance only)
	further	furthest (used more widely; see F, G)
good	better	best
little	less	least
many/much	more	most
old	eider	eldest (of people only)
older	oldest (of people and things)	

F **farther/farthest** and **further/furthest**

Both forms can be used of distances:

York is farther/further than Lincoln or Selby.
York is the farthest/furthest town or
York is the farthest/furthest of' the three.

(In the last sentence farthest./furthest are pronouns. See 24 B.)

further can also be used, mainly with abstract nouns, to mean 'additional/extra':

Further supplies will soon be available.
Further discussion/debate would be pointless.

Similarly: further enquiries/delays/demands/information/instructions etc. furthest can be used similarly, with abstract nouns;

This was the furthest point they reached in their discussion.
This was the furthest concession he would make. (For adverb use, see 32.)

G **far** (used for distance) and **near**

In the comparative and superlative both can be used quite freely:

the farthest/furthest mountain the nearest river

But in the positive form they have a limited use, **far** and **near** are used chiefly with *bank, end, side, wall* etc.:

the far bank (the bank on the other side)
the near bank (the bank on this side of the river)

near can also be used with east, and **far** with north, south, east and west.

With other nouns **far** is usually replaced by distant/remote and **near** by nearby/neighbouring: a remote island, the neighbouring village. For **far** (adverb), see 32; for **near** (adverb or preposition), see 30 C.

H **elder, eldest; older, oldest**

elder, eldest imply seniority rather than age. They are chiefly used for comparisons within a family: *my elder brother, her eldest boy/girl*;

but **elder** is not used with than, so older is necessary here:

He is older than I am. (elder would not be possible.)

In colloquial English **eldest, oldest and youngest** are often used of only two boys/girls/children etc.:

His eldest boy's at school; the other is still at home.

This is particularly common when **eldest, oldest** are used as pronouns:

Tom is the eldest (of the two) (See 24 B.)

21 Constructions with comparisons (see also 341)

A With the positive form of the adjective, we use **as ... as** in the affirmative and **not as/not so ... as** in the negative:

A boy of sixteen is often as tall as his/other.
He was as white as a sheet.
Manslaughter is not as/so bad as murder.
Your coffee is not as/so good as the coffee my mother makes.

B With the comparative we use **than**:

The new tower blocks are much higher than the old buildings.
He makes/ewer mistakes than you (do).
He is stronger than I expected = I didn't expect him to be so strong.
If was more expensive than I thought = I didn't think it would be so expensive.

When **than** ... is omitted, it is very common in colloquial English to use a superlative instead of a comparative: *This is the best way* could be said when there are only two ways. (See comparatives, superlatives used as pronouns, 24 B.)

C Comparison of three or more people/things is expressed by the superlative with **the . . . in/of**:

This is the oldest theatre in London.
The youngest of the family was the most successful.

A relative clause is useful especially with a perfect tense:

It/This is the best beer (that) I have ever drunk.
It/This was the worst film (that) he had ever seen.
He is the kindest man (that) I have ever met.
It was the most worrying day (that) he had ever spent.

Note that **ever** is used here, not **never**. We can, however, express the same idea with never and a comparative:

I have never drunk better beer. *I have never met a kinder man.*
He had never spent a more worrying day.

Note that **most** + adjective, without the, means **very**:
You are most kind means *You are very kind*.
most meaning **very** is used mainly with adjectives of two or more syllables: *annoying, apologetic, disobedient, encouraging, exciting, helpful, important, misleading* etc.

D Parallel increase is expressed by **the** + comparative … **the** + comparative:
HOUSE AGENT: *Do you want a big house?*
ANN: *Yes, the bigger the better.*
TOM: *But the smaller it is, the less it will cost us to heat.*

E Gradual increase or decrease is expressed by two comparatives joined by and:
The weather is getting colder and colder.
He became less and less interested.

F Comparison of actions with gerunds or infinitives:
Riding a horse is not as easy as riding a motor cycle. It is nicer/more fun to go with someone than to go alone. (See 341.)

G Comparisons with **like** (preposition) and **alike**:
Tom is very like Bill. *Bill and Tom are very alike.*
He keeps the central heating full on. It's like living in the tropics.

H Comparisons with like and as (both adverb and adjective expressions are shown here)
In theory **like** (preposition) is used only with noun, pronoun or gerund:
He swims like a fish. *You look like a ghost.*
Be like Peter/him: go jogging.
The windows were all barred. It was like being in prison.

J and **as** (conjunction) is used when there is a finite verb:
Do as Peter does: go jogging.
Why don't you cycle to work as we do?
But in colloquial English **like** is often used here instead of **as**:
Cycle to work like we do.

I **like** + noun and **as** + noun:
He worked like a slave, (very hard indeed)
He worked as a slave. (He was a slave.)
She used her umbrella as a weapon. (She struck him with it.)

22 than/as + pronoun + auxiliary

A When the same verb is required before and after **than/as** we can use an auxiliary for the second verb:
I earn less than he does. (less than he earns)
The same tense need not be used in both clauses:
He knows more than I did at his age.

B When the second clause consists only of **than/as** + **I/we/you** + verb, , and there is no change of tense, it is usually possible to omit the verb:
I'm not as old as you (are). *He has more lime than I/we (have).*
In formal English we keep **I/we**, as the pronoun is still considered to be the subject of the verb even though the verb has been omitted. In informal English, however, **me/us** is more usual:
He has more time than me. *They are richer than us.*

C When **than/as** is followed by **he/she/it** + verb, we normally keep the verb:
You are stronger than he is.
But we can drop the verb and use **he/she/they** in very formal English or **him/her/them** in very colloquial English.
These rules apply also to comparisons made with adverbs:
I swim better than he does/better than him.
They work harder than we do/harder than us.
You can't type as fast as I can/as fast as me.

23 the + adjective with a plural meaning

A **blind, deaf, disabled, healthy/sick, living/dead, rich/poor, unemployed** and certain other adjectives describing the human character or condition can be preceded by the and used to represent a class of persons. These expressions have a plural meaning; they take a plural verb and the pronoun is **they**:

The poor get poorer: the rich get richer.

the can be used in the same way with national adjectives ending in ch or sh:

the Dutch the Spanish the Welsh

and can be used similarly with national adjectives ending in se or ss:

the Burmese the Chinese the Japanese the Swiss

though it is just possible for these to have a singular meaning.

B Note that the + adjective here refers to a group of people considered in a general sense only. If we wish to refer to a particular group, we must add a noun:

These seats are for the disabled.
The disabled members of our party were let in free.
The French like to eat well.
The French tourists complained about the food.

Some colours can be used in the plural to represent people but these take s like nouns: the blacks, the whites.

C **the** + adjective can occasionally have a singular meaning:

the accused (person) the unexpected (thing)

24 Adjectives + one/ones and adjectives used as pronouns

A Most adjectives can be used with the pronouns one/ones, when one/ones represents a previously mentioned noun:

Don't buy the expensive apples; get the cheaper ones.
Hard beds are healthier than soft ones.
I lost my old camera; this is a new one.

Similarly with a number + adjective:

If you haven't got a big plate, two small ones will do.

B Adjectives used as pronouns

first/second etc. can be used with or without one/ones; i.e. they can be used as adjectives or pronouns:

Which train did you catch? ~ I caught the first (one).

the + superlative can be used similarly:

Tom is the best (runner). The eldest was only ten.

and sometimes the + comparative:

Which (of these two) is the stronger?

But this use of the comparative is considered rather literary, and in informal English a superlative is often used here instead:

Which (of these two) is the strongest?

Adjectives of colour can sometimes be used as pronouns:

I like the blue (one) best.

Colours of horses, especially **bay, chestnut, grey** are often used as pronouns and take s in the plural:

Everyone expected the chestnut to win.
The coach was drawn by four greys.

25 **many** and **much** (adjectives and pronouns)

A **many and much**

many (adjective) is used before countable nouns.

much (adjective) is used before uncountable nouns:

He didn't make many mistakes. We haven't much coffee.

They have the same comparative and superlative forms **more** and **most**:

more mistakes/coffee most men/damage

many, much, more, most can be used as pronouns:

He gets a lot of letters but she doesn't get many.
You have a lot of free time but I haven't much.

more and **most** can be used quite freely, and so can **many** and **much,** with negative verbs (see above examples). But **many** and **much** with affirmative or interrogative verbs have a restricted use.

B **many** and **much** with affirmative verbs

many is possible when preceded (i.e. modified) by **a good/a great**. Both are possible when modified by **so/as/too**.

I made a good many friends there.
He has had so many jobs that. . .
She read as much as she could.
They drink too much (gin).

When not modified, **many**, as object or part of the object, is usually replaced by **a lot/lots of** (+ noun) or by a lot or lots (pronouns).
much, as object or part of the object, is usually replaced by **a great/good deal of** (+ noun) or **a great/good deal** (pronouns):

I saw a lot/lots of seabirds. I expect you saw a lot too.
He spends a lot/lots of/a great deal of money on his house.

As subject or part of the subject, either **many** or **a lot (of)** etc. can be used, but **much** here is normally replaced by one of the other forms.
much, however, is possible in formal English:

Much will depend on what the minister says.

Compare negative and affirmative sentences:

He hasn't won many races.
You've icon a lot/lots of races or
You've won a lot or
You've won a great many (races).
He didn't eat much fruit.
She ate a lot/lots of fruit/a great deal of fruit or
She ate a lot/a great deal.

C **many** and **much** with interrogative verbs
Both can be used with **how**: *How many times? How much?*
In questions where **how** is not used, **many** is possible, but **a lot (of)** etc- is better when an affirmative answer is expected:

Did you take a lot of photos? I expect you did.

much without how is possible but the other forms are a little more usual:

Did you have a lot of snow/much snow last year? (For much as an adverb, see 33.)

26 Adjectives + infinitives

A Some of the most useful of these adjectives are given below, grouped roughly according to meaning or type. Some adjectives with several meanings may appear in more than one group, (For adjectives + prepositions, see 96.)
Starred adjectives can also be used with **that**-clauses. Sometimes **that … should** is more usual, (See 236.).
In sections B-E, with the exception of B2, the constructions are introduced by **it**. (For introductory it, see 67.) If **it + be** … is preceded by **find/think/believe** etc. that it is sometimes possible to omit that and the verb be:

He found that it was impossible to study at home =
He found if impossible to study at home.

B 1 **it + be** + adjective (+ of + object) + infinitive is used chiefly with adjectives concerning:
(a) character: **brave, careless, cowardly, cruel, generous, good/ nice (= kind), mean, rude, selfish, wicked, wrong (morally)** etc., and **fair*/just*/right*** with negative or interrogative verbs, or
(b) sense: **clever, foolish, idiotic*, intelligent, sensible, silly, stupid, absurd*, ludicrous*, ridiculous* and unreasonable*** are sometimes also possible.

It was kind of you to help him. (You helped him. This was kind.)

It was stupid (of them) to lease their bicycles outside.

of + object can be omitted after group (b) adjectives, and sometimes after group (a) adjectives, except **good** and **nice**. (Omission of **of** + object would change the meaning of **good** and **nice**. See E.)

2 Pronoun + be + adjective + noun + infinitive is also possible with the above adjectives and with a number of others, including:
astonishing*, curious*, extraordinary*, funny* (=. strange*), odd*, queer*, surprising* etc. and pointless, useful, useless

It was a sensible precaution to take.

That was a wicked thing to say.

Comments of this type can sometimes be expressed as exclamations:

What a funny way to park a car! What an odd time to choose!

The adjective is sometimes omitted in expressions of disapproval:

What a (silly) way to bring up a child!
What a time to choose!

Example with a that-clause:

It is strange/odd/surprising that he hasn't answered.

C **it + be** + adjective + infinitive is possible with **advisable*, inadvisable*, better*, best, desirable*, essential*, good (= advisable), important*, necessary*, unnecessary*, vital*** and with only + **fair*/just*/right***;

Wouldn't it be better to waif? ~ No, it's essential to book in advance.

for + object can be added except after good (where it would change the meaning; see E below) and after just:

It won't be necessary for him to report to the police.

It is only fair for him to have a chance. inessential and unimportant are not normally used, but not essential is possible.

D it + be + adjective (+ for + object) + infinitive is possible with **convenient*, dangerous, difficult, easy, hard*, possible*, impossible, safe, unsafe**. (For **possible that**, see 27 E.)

Would it be convenient (for you) to see Mr X now?

It was dangerous (for women) to go out alone after dark.
We found it almost impossible to buy petrol. (See A above.)

The above adjectives, with the exception of possible, can also be used in the noun + be + adjective + infinitive construction:

This cake is easy to make.
The instructions were hard to follow.
This car isn't safe to drive.

E **it + be** + adjective/participle + infinitive is also possible with adjectives and participles which show the feelings or reactions of the person '^: concerned:

Agreeable	*dreadful**	*lovely**	*terrible**
*Awful**	*good "/nice**	*marvellous**	*wonderful **
*delightful**	*(= pleasant)*	*splendid**	*etc.*
disagreeable	*horrible**	*strange**	

and with the present participles of:

*alarm**	*bewilder*	*discourage**	*excite**	*surprise**
*amaze**	*bore*	*disgust**	*frighten*	*terrify*
*amuse**	*depress**	*embarrass*	*horrify**	*upset*
*annoy**	*disappoint**	*encourage**	*interest**	*etc.*
*astonish**				

fun (.= an exciting experience) and a relief can be used similarly.

It's awful to be alone in such a place.
It's boring to do the same thing every day.
It was depressing to find the house empty.
It would be fun/exciting/interesting to canoe down the river.
It was a relief to take off our wet boots.

for + object is quite common after **lovely, interesting, marvellous, nice, wonderful** and possible after the other adjectives:

It's interesting (for children) to see a house being built.
It was marvellous (for the boys) to have a garden to play in.

Note that for + object placed after good restricts the meaning of good to healthy/beneficial: It's good for you to take regular exercise.

(**good** + infinitive can have this meaning but can also mean **pleasant/kind/advisable**. See B, C above.)

it + be + adjective + noun + infinitive is also possible with the above adjectives/participles:

It was an exciting ceremony to watch.
It was a horrible place to lice (in).

F Somewhat similar meanings can be expressed by subject + adjective + infinitive with **angry*, delighted*, dismayed*, glad*, happy*, pleased*, relieved*, sad*, sorry*** and the past participles of the verbs in E above: *I'm delighted to see you*.

The most useful infinitives here are to find/learn/hear/see, but **glad/happy/sad/sorry** are also often followed by to *say/tell/inform* and sometimes by other infinitives:

He was glad to leave school.
She was dismayed to find the door locked.

G Subject + be + adjective/participle + infinitive with: **able/unable; apt, inclined, liable, prone; prepared, not prepared (= ready/willing/unwilling), reluctant; prompt, quick, slow**:

We are all apt to make mistakes when we try to hurry.
I am inclined to believe him. I am prepared/ready to help him.
He was most reluctant to lend us the money.
He was slow to realise that times had changed =
He realised only slowly that times had changed.

27 Adjectives + infinitive/**that**-clause/preposition constructions

A **due, due to, owing to, certain, sure, bound, confident**

due, used of time, can take an infinitive:

The race is due to start in ten minutes.

But it can also be used alone:

The plane was due (in) at six. It is an hour overdue.

due to (preposition) means 'a result of:

The accident was due to carelessness.

owing to means 'because of':

Owing to his carelessness we had an accident.

due to should be preceded by subject + verb, but English people are careless about this and often begin a sentence with **due to** instead of with **owing to**.

certain and **sure** take infinitives to express the speaker's opinion.

bound is also possible here;

Tom is certain/sure/bound to win. (The speaker is confident of this.)

But subject + **certain/sure** + **that**-clause expresses the subject's opinion:

Tom is sure that he will win. (Tom is confident of victory.)

confident that could replace **certain/sure that** above, but **confident** cannot be followed by an infinitive.

sure, certain, confident can be followed by of + noun/pronoun or gerund:

Unless you're early you can't be sure of getting a seat.

bound can take an infinitive, as shown above, but not a that-clause.

bound + infinitive can also mean 'under an obligation":

According to the contract we are bound to supply the materials.

B **afraid (of), ashamed (of), sorry (for** or **about)**

afraid of, ashamed of, sorry for/about + noun/pronoun or gerund:

She is afraid of heights/of falling.
He was ashamed of himself (for behaving so badly)/ashamed of behaving so badly.
I'm sorry for breaking your window, (apology)
I'm sorry about your window, (apology/regret)
I'm sorry for Peter, (pity)

afraid, ashamed, sorry can be followed by an infinitive:

She was afraid to speak. (She didn't speak.)
!'d be ashamed to take his money. (I don't/won't take it.)
I'm sorry to say that we have no news.

or by a that-clause:

I'm ashamed that I've nothing better to offer you.
She's afraid (that) he won't believe her. (fear)
I'm afraid (that) we have no news. (regret)
I'm sorry (that) you can't come.

(For the difference in meaning between these three constructions, see 271. For **I'm afraid not/so**, see 347.)

C **anxious (about), anxious** + infinitive, **anxious that**

anxious (+ about + noun/pronoun) means worried:

I'm anxious (about Tom). His plane is overdue.

be anxious (+ **for** + noun/pronoun) + infinitive = 'to desire/to wish':

I'm very anxious (for him) to see the Carnival.

anxious + that - . . + should is possible in very formal English:

The committee is anxious that this matter should be kept secret.

D **fortunate** and **lucky** can take either a that-clause or an infinitive, but there is usually a difference of meaning. **It is fortunate/lucky that** usually means 'It's a good thing that':

It's lucky that Tom has a car.

It's lucky that he passed his test. (Now he can drive himself to the station/take the children to the seaside etc.)
It's lucky for us that he has a car. (He can give us a lift etc.)

Subject + **be + fortunate/lucky** + infinitive, however, emphasizes the subject's good fortune:
He's lucky to have a car. (Many people haven't got one.)
He was lucky to pass his test. (He wasn't really up to the standard.)
is/are + fortunate/lucky + present infinitive is used mainly with static verbs. With **was/were** or the continuous or perfect infinitive there is a wider choice:
You were fortunate to escape unharmed.
You are lucky to be going by air.
He is lucky to have sold his house before they decided to build the new airport.
It is **lucky/unlucky** can, however, be followed by the infinitive of any verb:
It is unlucky to break a mirror. (It brings misfortune.)
fortunate and **unfortunate** are not used here but can be used in the other constructions. They are chiefly found in more formal English.
These adjectives can also be used alone or with a noun:

I wasn't lucky,	*He's fortunate.*
Thirteen's my lucky number.	*He's a fortunate man.*

E **possible, probable** and **likely** can take a that-clause introduced by it, **likely** can also be used with subject + infinitive
(a) It's possible that he'll come today =
(b) Perhaps he 'll come/He may come today.
(a) It's probable that he'll come today =
(b) He'll probably come today.
In each case the (b) form is more usual than the (a) but the **that**-clause is convenient when we want to modify the adjectives:
It's just/quite possible that. . .
It's not very probable that. . .
With **likely** both forms are equally useful:
It's quite likely that he'll come today =
He's quite likely to come today.
is/are + subject + **likely** + infinitive is very useful as it supplies an interrogative form for may (= be possible):
Is he likely to ring today?
possible, probable, likely can be used without a **that**-clause when it is quite clear what this would be:
Do you think he 'll sell his house? ~ It's quite possible/probable/likely (that he'll sell it).

F aware and conscious take a **that**-clause or of + noun/pronoun or gerund;
It'll be dangerous. ~ I'm aware that it'll be dangerous/I'm aware of that.
I was conscious of being watched =
I felt that someone was watching me.
conscious used by itself has a physical meaning:
I had only a local anaesthetic. I was conscious the whole time.

4 Adverbs

28 Kinds of adverbs

Manner: *bravely, fast, happily, hard, quickly, well* (see 35)
Place: *by, down, here, near, there, up* (36)
Time: *now, soon. still, then, today, yet* (37)
Frequency: *always, never, occasionally, often, twice* (38)
Sentence: *certainly, definitely, luckily, surely* (40)
Degree: *fairly, hardly, rather, quite, too, very* (41)
Interrogative: *when? where? why?* (60)
Relative: *when, where, why* (75 E)

Form and use

29 The formation of adverbs with **ly**

A Many adverbs of manner and some adverbs of degree are formed by adding **ly** to the corresponding adjectives:

grave, gravely *immediate, immediately* *slow, slowly*

Spelling notes
(a) A final **y** changes to **i**: *happy, happily*.
(b) A final **e** is retained: *extreme, extremely*.
Exceptions: *true, due, whole become truly, duly, wholly*.
(c) Adjectives ending in **able/ible** drop the final e and add **y**:

capable, capably *sensible, sensibly*

(d) Adjectives ending in a vowel + l follow the usual rule:

beautiful, beautifully *final, finally*

B Exceptions
The adverb of **good** is **well**.
kindly can be adjective or adverb, but other adjectives ending in **ly**, e.g. **friendly, likely, lonely** etc., cannot be used as adverbs and have no adverb form. To supply this deficiency we use a similar adverb or adverb phrase:
likely (adjective) *friendly* (adjective) *probably* (adverb) *in a friendly way* (adverb phrase)

C Some adverbs have a narrower meaning than their corresponding adjectives or differ from them. **coldly, coolly, hotly, warmly** are used mainly of feelings:

We received them coldly, (in an unfriendly way)
They denied the accusation hotly, (indignantly)
She welcomed us warmly, (in a friendly way)

But **warmly dressed** = wearing warm clothes.
coolly = calmly/courageously or calmly/impudently;

He behaved very coolly in this dangerous situation.

presently = soon: He'll be here presently. (See also 30 B. For **barely, scarcely**, see 44. For **surely**, see 40 A.)

30 Adverbs and adjectives with the same form

A

back	hard*	little	right*
deep*	high*	long	short*
direct*	ill	low	still
early	just*	much/more/most*	straight
enough	kindly	near*	well
far	late*	pretty*	wrong*
fast	left		

*See B below.

Used as adverbs:	Used as adjectives:
Come back soon.	*the back door*
You can dial Rome direct.	*the most direct route.*
The train went fast.	*a fast train*
They worked hard. (energetically)	*The work is hard*
an ill-made road	*You look ill/well*
Turn right here.	*the right answer*
She went straight home.	*a straight line*
He led us wrung.	*This is the wrong way.*

B Starred words above also have **ly** forms. Note the meanings.

deeply is used chiefly of feelings:

He was deeply offended.

directly can be used of time or connection:

He'll be here directly, (very soon)

The new regulations will affect us directly/indirectly. (For hardly, see 44.)

highly is used only in an abstract sense:

He was a highly paid official. *They spoke very highly of him.*

justly corresponds to the adjective just (fair, right, lawful), but just can also be an adverb of degree. (See 41.)

lately = recently: *Have you seen him lately?*

mostly = chiefly

nearly = almost: *I'm nearly ready.*

prettily corresponds to the adjective **pretty** (attractive):

Her little girls are always prettily dressed.

But **pretty** can also be an adverb of degree meaning very:

The exam was pretty difficult.

rightly can be used with a past participle to mean **justly** or **correctly**:

He was rightly/justly punished.

I was rightly/correctly informed.

But in each case the second adverb would be more usual.

shortly = soon, briefly or **curtly**.

wrongly can be used with a past participle:

You were wrongly (incorrectly) *informed.*

But *He acted wrongly* could mean that his action was either incorrect or morally wrong.

C **long** and **near** (adverbs) have a restricted use.

1 **long**

longer, longest can be used without restriction:

It took longer than I expected.

But long is used mainly in the negative or interrogative:

How long will it take to get there? ~ It won't take long.

In the affirmative **too/so** + **long** or **long** + **enough** is possible. Alternatively a long time can be used:

I would take too long.

It would take a long time.

In conversation (**for**) **a long time** is often replaced by (**for**) **ages**:

I waited for ages.

It took us ages to get there.

2 **near**

nearer, nearest can be used without restriction:

Don't come any nearer.

But **near** in the positive form is usually qualified by **very/quite/so/too** or **enough**:

They live quite near. *Don't come too near.*

You're near enough.

The preposition **near** with noun, pronoun or adverb is more generally useful:

Don't go near the edge.

The ship sank near here.

D **far** and **much** also have a restricted use. See 32 and 33.

31 Comparative and superlative adverb forms

A With adverbs of two or more syllables we form the comparative and superlative by putting more and most before the positive form:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
quickly	more quickly	most quickly
fortunately	more fortunately	must fortunately

Single-syllable adverbs, however, and **early**, add **er**, **est**:

hard	harder	hardest
early	earlier	earliest (note the **y** becomes **i**)

B Irregular comparisons:

well	better	best
badly	worse	worst
little	less	least
much	more	most
far	farther	farthest (of distance only)
	further	furthest (used more widely; see 32 A)

32 far, farther/farthest and further/furthest

A **further, furthest**

These, like **farther/farthest**, can be used as adverbs of place/distance:

It isn't safe to go any further/farther in this fog.

But they can also be used in an abstract sense:

Mr A said that these toy pistols should not be on sale.

Mr B went further and said that no toy pistols should be sold.

Mr C went furthest of all and said that no guns of any kind should be sold.

B **far**: restrictions on use

far in the comparative and superlative can be used quite freely:

He travelled further than we expected.

far in the positive form is used chiefly in the negative and interrogative:

How far can you see? ~ I can't see far.

In the affirmative **a long way** is more usual than **far**, and **a long way away** is more usual than **far away**:

They sailed a long way. *He lives a long way away.*

But **very far away** is possible, and so is **so/quite/too** + **far** and **far** + **enough**:

They walked so far that… *They walked too far.*

We've gone far enough.

far can be used with an abstract meaning;

The new law doesn't go far enough.

You've gone too far! (You've been too insulting/overbearing/insolent etc.)

far, adverb of degree, is used with comparatives or with too/so + positive forms:

She swims far better than I do. *He drinks far too much.*

33 much, more, most

A **more** and **most** can be used fairly freely:

You should ride more. *I use this room most.*

But **much**, in the positive form, has a restricted use.

B **much** meaning **a lot** can modify negative verbs:

He doesn't ride much nowadays.

In the interrogative **much** is chiefly used with **how**. In questions without **how**, **much** is possible but **a lot** is more usual:

How much has he ridden? *Has he ridden a lot/much?*

In the affirmative **as/so/too** + **much** is possible. Otherwise **a lot/ a good deal/a great deal** is

preferable:

He shouts so much that... I talk too much.

But *He rides a lot/a great deal*.

C **very much** meaning **greatly** can be used more widely in the affirmative. We can use it with *blame, praise, thank* and with a number of verbs concerned with feelings: *admire, amuse, approve, dislike, distress, enjoy, impress, like, object, shock, surprise* etc.:

Thank you very much. They admired him very much.

She objects very much to the noise they make.

much (= **greatly**), with or without very, can be used with the participles *admired, amused, disliked, distressed, impressed, liked, shocked, struck, upset*:

He was (very) *much admired.*

She was (very) *much impressed by their good manners.*

D **much** meaning a lot can modify comparative or superlative adjectives and adverbs:

much better *much the best* *much more quickly*

much too can be used with positive forms:

He spoke much too fast.

E **most** placed before an adjective or adverb can mean very. It is mainly used here with adjectives/adverbs of two or more syllables:

He was most apologetic. She behaved most generously. (See 21 C.)

34 Constructions with comparisons (see also 341)

When the same verb is required in both clauses we normally use an auxiliary for the second verb (see 22).

A With the positive form we use **as ... as** with an affirmative verb, and **as/so ... as** with a negative verb:

He worked as slowly as he dared.

He doesn't snore as/so loudly as you do.

It didn't take as/so long as I expected.

B With the comparative form we use than:

He eats more quickly than I do/than me.

He played better than he had ever played.

They arrived earlier than I expected.

the + comparative . . . **the** + comparative is also possible:

The earlier you start the sooner you'll be back.

C With the superlative it is possible to use of + noun:

He went (the) furthest of the explorers.

But this construction is not very common and such a sentence would normally be expressed by a comparative, as shown above. A superlative (without **the**) + **of all** is quite common, but **all** here often refers to other actions by the same subject:

He likes swimming best of all. (better than he likes anything else) of all can then be omitted.

D For comparisons with **like** and **as**, see 21 H, I.

Position

35 Adverbs of manner

A Adverbs of manner come after the verb:

She danced beautifully

or after the object when there is one:

He gave her the money reluctantly. They speak English well.

Do not put an adverb between verb and object.

B When we have verb + preposition + object, the adverb can be either before the preposition or after the object:

He looked at me suspiciously or *He looked suspiciously at me.*

But if the object contains a number of words we put the adverb before the preposition:

He looked suspiciously at everyone who got off the plane.

C Similarly with verb + object sentences the length of the object affects the position of the adverb. If the object is short, we have verb + object + adverb, as shown in B above. But if the object is long we usually put the adverb before the verb:

She carefully picked up all the bits of broken glass.
He angrily denied that he had stolen the documents.
They secretly decided to leave the town.

D Note that if an adverb is placed after a clause or a phrase, it is normally considered to modify the verb in that clause/phrase. If, therefore, we move secretly to the end of the last example above, we change the meaning:

They secretly decided . . . (The decision was secret.)
They decided to leave the town secretly. (The departure was to be secret.)

E Adverbs concerned with character and intelligence, **foolishly, generously, kindly, stupidly** etc., when placed before a verb, indicate that the action was foolish/kind/generous etc.:

I foolishly forgot my passport. *He generously paid for us all.*
He kindly waited for me. *Would you kindly wait?*

Note that we could also express such ideas by:

It was foolish of me to forget.
It was kind of him to wait.
Would you be kind enough to wait? (See 252.)

The adverb can come after the verb or after verb + object, but the meaning then changes:

He spoke kindly = His voice and words were kind
Is not the same as It was kind of him to speak to us.
He paid us generously = He Raid more than the usual rate

is not the same as It was generous of him to pay us. Note the difference between:

He answered the questions foolishly (His answers were foolish) *and*
He foolishly answered the questions. (Answering was foolish./It was foolish of him to answer at all.)

F **badly** and **well** can be used as adverbs of manner or degree. As adverbs of manner they come after an active verb, after the object or before the past participle in a passive verb:

He behaved badly. *He read well.*
He paid her badly. *She speaks French well.*
She was badly paid. *The trip was well organised.*

badly as an adverb of degree usually comes after the object or before, the verb or past participle:

The door needs a coat of paint badly/The door badly needs a coat of paint.
He was badly injured in the last match.

well (degree) and **well** (manner) have the same position rules;

I'd like the steak well done.
He knows the town well.
Shake the bottle well.
The children were well wrapped up.

The meaning of **well** may depend on its position.
Note the difference between:

You know well that I can't drive (There can be no doubt in your ... mind about this) and
You know that I can't drive well. (I'm not a good driver.)

well can be placed after **may/might** and **could** to emphasise the probability of an action:

He may well refuse = It is quite likely that he will refuse. (For may/might as well, see 288.)

G **somehow, anyhow**

somehow {= in some way or other) can be placed in the front position or after a verb without object or after the object:

Somehow they managed. *They managed somehow.*
They raised the money somehow.

anyhow as an adverb of manner is not common. But it is often used to mean ‘in any case/anyway'. (See 327.)

36 Adverbs of place

away, everywhere, here, nowhere, somewhere, there etc.

A If there is no object, these adverbs are usually placed after the verb:

She went away. *He lives abroad.* *Bill is upstairs.*

But they come after verb + object or verb + preposition + object:

She sent him away. *I looked for it everywhere.*

(But see chapter 38 for verb + adverb combinations such as pick up, put down etc.)

Adverb phrases, formed of preposition + noun/pronoun/adverb, follow the above position rules:

The parrot sat on a perch. *He stood in the doorway.*

He lives near me.

But see also E below.

B **somewhere, anywhere** follow the same basic rules as **some** and **any**:

I've seen that man somewhere.

Can you see my key anywhere? ~ No. I can't see it anywhere.

Are you going anywhere? (ordinary question) but

Are you going somewhere? (I assume that you are.)

nowhere, however, is not normally used in this position except in the expression **to get nowhere** (= to achieve nothing/to make no progress):

Threatening people will get you nowhere. (You'll gain no advantage by threatening people.)

But it can be used in short answers:

Where are you going? ~ Nowhere. (I'm not going anywhere.)

It can also, in formal English, be placed at the beginning of a sentence and is then followed by an inverted verb:

Nowhere will you find better roses than these. (See 45.)

C **here, there** can be followed by be/come/go + noun subject:

Here's Tom. There's Ann. Here comes the train.

There goes our bus.

here and **there** used as above carry more stress than **here/there** placed after the verb. There is also usually a difference in meaning. *Tom is here* means he is in this room/building/town etc. But *Here's Tom* implies that he has just appeared or that we have just found him. *Tom comes here* means that it is his habit to come to this place, but *Here comes Tom* implies that he is just arriving/has just arrived.

If the subject is a personal pronoun, it precedes the verb in the usual way:

There he is. Here I am. Here it comes.

But **someone** and **something** follow the verb:

There's someone who can help you.

Note that the same sentence, spoken without stress on There, would mean that a potential helper exists. (See 117.)

D Someone phoning a friend may introduce himself/herself by name + **here**:

ANN (on phone): *Is that you, Tom? Ann here* or *This is Ann*.

She must not say *Ann is here* or *Here is Ann*.

E The adverbs **away** (= off), **down, in, off, out, over, round, up** etc. can be followed by a verb of motion + a noun subject:

Away went the runners.

Down fell a dozen apples.

Out sprang the cuckoo.

Round and round flew the plane.

But if the subject is a pronoun it is placed before the verb:

Away they went. Round and round it flew.

There is more drama in this order than in subject + verb + adverb but no difference in meaning.

F In written English adverb phrases introduced by prepositions (*down, from. in, on, over, out of, round, up* etc.) can be followed by verbs indicating position (*crouch, hang. He, sit, stand* etc.), by verbs of motion, by be born, die, live and sometimes other verbs:

From the rafters hung strings of onions.

In the doorway stood a man with a gun.

On a perch beside him sat a blue parrot.

Over the wall came a shower of stones.

The first three of these examples could also be expressed by a participle and the verb be:

Hanging from the rafters were strings of onions.

Standing in the doorway was a man with a gun.

Sitting on a perch beside him was a blue parrot.

But a participle could not be used with the last example unless the shower of stones lasted for some time.

37 Adverbs of time

A **afterwards, eventually, lately, now, recently, soon, then, today, tomorrow** etc. and adverb phrases of time: **at once, since then, till** (6.00 etc.)
These are usually placed at the very beginning or at the very end of the clause, i.e. in front position or end position. End position is usual with imperatives and phrases with **till**:
Eventually he came/He came eventually.
Then we went home/We went home then.
Write today. I'll wait till tomorrow.
(For **lately, recently**, see also 185.)
With compound tenses, **afterwards, eventually, lately, now, recently, soon** can come after the auxiliary:
We 'll soon be there.

B **before, early, immediately** and **late** come at the end of the clause:
He came late. I'll go immediately.
But **before** and **immediately**, used as conjunctions, are placed at the beginning of the clause:
Immediately the rain stops we'll set out.

C **since** and **ever since** are used with perfect tenses (see 187 D).
since can come after the auxiliary or in end position after a negative or interrogative verb; ever since (adverb) in end position. Phrases and clauses with since and ever since are usually in end position, though front position is possible:
He's been in bed since his accident/since he broke his leg.

D **yet** and **still** (adverbs of time)
yet is normally placed after verb or after verb + object:
He hasn't finished (his breakfast) yet.
But if the object consists of a large number of words, **yet** can be placed before the verb:
He hasn't yet applied for the job we told him about.
still is placed after the verb be but before other verbs:
She is still in bed.
yet means 'up to the time of speaking'. It is chiefly used with the negative or interrogative, **still** emphasizes that the action continues. It is chiefly used with the affirmative or interrogative, but can be used with the negative to emphasize the continuance of a negative action:
He still doesn't understand. (The negative action of 'not understanding' continues.)
He doesn't understand yet. (The positive action of 'understanding' hasn't yet started.)
When stressed, **still** and **yet** express surprise, irritation or impatience. Both words can also be conjunctions (see 327).

E **just**, as an adverb of time, is used with compound tenses:
I'm just coming. (See also 183.)
(For Just as an adverb of degree, see 41,)

38 Adverbs of frequency

(a) **always, continually, frequently, occasionally, often, once, twice, periodically, repeatedly, sometimes, usually** etc.
(b) **ever, hardly ever, never, rarely, scarcely ever, seldom**

A Adverbs in both the above groups are normally placed:
1 After the simple tenses of to be:
He is always in time for meals.
2 Before the simple tenses of all other verbs:
They sometimes stay up all night.
3 With compound tenses, they are placed after the first auxiliary, or, with interrogative verbs, after auxiliary + subject:
He can never understand.
You have often been told not to do that. Have you ever ridden a camel? Exceptions

(a) used to and have to prefer the adverb in front of them:

You hardly ever have to remind him; he always remembers.

(b) Frequency adverbs are often placed before auxiliaries when these c are used alone, in additions to remarks or in answers to questions:

Can you park your car near the shops? - Yes, I usually can.

I know I should take exercise, but I never do.

and when, in a compound verb, the auxiliary is stressed:

I never 'can remember. She hardly ever 'has met him.

Similarly when do is added for emphasis:

I always do arrive in time!

But emphasis can also be given by stressing the frequency adverb and leaving it in its usual position after the auxiliary:

You should 'always check your oil before starling.

B Adverbs in group (a) above can also be put at the beginning or end of a sentence or clause, Exceptions

always is rarely found at the beginning of a sentence/clause except with imperatives.

often, if put at the end, normally requires very or quite:

Often he walked. He walked quite often.

C Adverbs in group (b) above, **hardly ever, never, rarely** etc. (but not ever alone), can also be put at the beginning of a sentence, but inversion of the following main verb then becomes necessary:

Hardly/Scarcely ever did they manage to meet unobserved. (For hardly, barely, scarcely, see 44,) **hardly/scarcely ever, never, rarely** and **seldom** are not used with negative verbs.

D **never, ever**

never is chiefly used with an affirmative verb, never with a negative. It normally means 'at no time':

He never saw her again. I've never eaten snails. They never eat meat. (habit) I've never had a better/light. (For never + comparative, see 21 C.) never + affirmative can sometimes replace an ordinary negative:

I waited but he never fumed up. (He didn't turn up.)

never + interrogative can be used to express the speaker's surprise at the non-performance of an action:

Has he never been to Japan? I'm surprised, because his wife is Japanese.

ever means 'at any time' and is chiefly used in the interrogative:

Has he ever marched in a demonstration? ~ No, he never has.

ever can be used with a negative verb and, especially with compound tenses, can often replace never + affirmative:

I haven't ever eaten snails.

This use of ever is less common with simple tenses.

ever + affirmative is possible in comparisons (see 21 C) and with suppositions and expressions of doubt:

/ don't suppose he ever writes to his mother. (For hardly/scarcely + ever, see A-C above. For ever after how etc., seed, 85.)

39 Order of adverbs and adverb phrases of manner, place and time when they occur in the same sentence

Expressions of manner usually precede expressions of place:

He climbed awkwardly out of the window.

He'd study happily anywhere.

But away, back, down, forward, home, in, off, on, out, round and up usually precede adverbs of manner:

He walked away sadly. She looked back anxiously.

They went home quietly. They rode on confidently. (See also 36 E.)

here and there do the same except with the adverbs hard, well, badly: He stood there silently but They work harder here. Time expressions can follow expressions of manner and place:

They worked hard in the garden today.

He lived there happily for a year. But they can also be in front position:

Every day he queued patiently at the bus stop.

40 Sentence adverbs

These modify the whole sentence/clause and normally express the speaker's/narrator's opinion.
A Adverbs expressing degrees of certainty
(a) actually (= in fact/really), apparently, certainly, clearly, evidently, obviously, presumably, probably, undoubtedly
(b) definitely
(c) perhaps, possibly, surely Adverbs in group (a) above can be placed after be:
He is obviously intelligent. before simple tenses of other verbs:
They certainly work hard. He actually lives next door. after the first auxiliary in a compound verb:
They have presumably sold their house.
at the beginning or at the end of a sentence or clause:
Apparently he knew the town well.
He knew the town well apparently.
definitely can be used in the above positions but is less usual at the beginning of a sentence. perhaps and possibly are chiefly used in front position, though the end position is possible. surely is normally placed at the beginning or end, though it can also be , next to the verb. It is used chiefly in questions:
Surely you could pay £1 ? You could pay £1, surely? Note that though the adjectives sure and certain mean more or less the same, the adverbs differ in meaning. certainly - definitely: He was certainly there; there is no doubt about it. But surely indicates that the speaker is not quite sure that the statement which follows is true. He thinks it is, but wants reassurance. Surely he was there? (I fee! almost sure that he was.)
B Other sentence adverbs
admittedly, (unfortunately, frankly, honestly*, (un)luckily, naturally*, officially* etc- are usually in the front position though the end position is possible. They are normally separated from the rest of the sentence by a comma. Starred adverbs can also be adverbs of manner.
Honestly, Tom didn't geS the money. (Sentence adverb, honestly
here means 'truthfully'. The speaker is assuring us that Tom didn't get the money.)
Tom didn't get the money honestly (adverb of manner) = Tom got
the money dishonestly.
41 Adverbs of degree
absolutely, almost, barely, completely, enough, entirely, ->« extremely, fairly, far, hardly, just, much, nearly, only, quite,
rather, really, scarcely, so, too, very etc.
For (a) little, see 5 D; for fairly and rather, see 42; for hardly, scarcely, barely, see 44; for quite, see 43.)
An adverb of degree modifies an adjective or another adverb, it is placed before the adjective or adverb:
You are absolutely right. I'm almost ready. :y But enough follows its adjective or adverb:
The box isn't big enough. He didn't work quickly enough. (See also 252 B.)
far requires a comparative, or too + positive:
If is far better to say nothing. He drives far too fast.
could replace far here. It can also be used with a superlative:
solution is much the best.

C The following adverbs of degree can also modify verbs:
almost, barely, enough, hardly, just, (a) little, much, nearly, quite, rather, really and scarcely-
All except much are then placed before the main verb, like adverbs of frequency (see 38).
He almost/nearly fell. I am Just going.
Tom didn't like it much but I realty enjoyed it. (For much, see 33. For (a) little, see 5 D.)
D only can also modify verbs. In theory it is placed next to the word to which it applies, preceding verbs, adjectives and adverbs and preceding or following nouns and pronouns:
(a) He had only six apples, (not more than six)
(b) He only lent the car. (He didn't give it.)
(c) He lent the car to me only. (not to anyone else)
(d) I believe only half of what he said. But in spoken English people usually put it before the verb, obtaining the required meaning by stressing the word to which the only applies:
He only had 'six apples is the same as (a) above. He only lent the car to '•me is the same as (c) above. / only believe 'hat/etc, is the same as (d) above-
E just, like only, should precede the word it qualifies:
I'll buy just one. I had just enough money. It can also be placed immediately before the

verb:
I'll just buy one. I just had enough money. But sometimes this change of order would change the meaning:
Just sign here means This is all you have to do. Sign just here means Sign in this particular spot.
fairly, rather, quite, hardly etc.

42 fairly and rather

A Both can mean 'moderately', but fairly is chiefly used with 'favourable adjectives and adverbs (.bravely, good, nice, well etc.}, while rather is chiefly used in this sense before 'unfavourable' adjectives and adverbs (bad, stupidly, ugly etc.):
Tom is fairly clever, but Peter is rather stupid.
I walk fairly fast but Ann walks rather slowly. Both can be used similarly with participles:
He was fairly relaxed; she was rather tense.
a fairly interesting film a rather boring book The indefinite article, if required, precedes fairly but can come before or after rather:
a fairly light box a rather heavy box/rather a heavy box With adjectives/adverbs such as fast, slow, thin, thick, hot, cold etc., which are not in themselves either 'favourable' or 'unfavourable', the speaker can express approval by using fairly and disapproval by using rather: This soup is fairly hot implies that the speaker likes hot soup, while This soup is rather hot implies that it is a little too hot for him.
it rather can be used before alike, like, similar, different etc. and before comparatives. It then means 'a little' or 'slightly':
Siamese cats are rather like dogs in some ways.
The weather was raiher worse than I had expected. rather a is possible with certain nouns: disappointment, disadvantage, nuisance, pity, shame and sometimes joke:
It's rather a nuisance (= a little inconvenient) that we can't
park here.
It's rather a shame (= a little unfair) that he has to work on
Sundays. fairly cannot be used in these ways.
C rather can be used before certain 'favourable' adjectives/adverbs such as amusing, clever, good, pretty, well but its meaning then changes; it becomes nearly equivalent to very, and the idea of disapproval vanishes: She is rather clever is nearly the same as She is very clever. rather used in this way is obviously much more complimentary than fairly. For example the expression If is a fairly good play would, if anything, discourage others from going to see it. But It is rather a good play is definitely a recommendation. Occasionally rather used in this way conveys the idea of surprise:
/ suppose the house was filthy. - No, as a matter a/fact it was
rather dean.
D rather can also be used before enjoy, like and sometimes before dislike, object and some similar verbs:
/ rather like the smell of petrol. He rather enjoys queueing. rather can be used in short answers to questions with the above verbs:
Do you like him? - Yes I do, rather.
rather + like/enjoy is often used to express a liking which is a surprise to others or to the speaker himself- But it can also be used to strengthen the verb: / rather like Tom implies more interest than .'. I like Tom.
(For would rather, see 297, 298.)
<t3 quite '„'•; This is a confusing word because it has two meanings.
;„» It means 'completely' when it is used with a word or phrase which can ,',,' express the idea of completeness (all right, certain, determined, empty.
/gin finished, full, ready, right, sure, wrong etc.) and when it is used 1'1'H ..i,^1" a very strong adjective/adverb such as amazing, extraordinary, •'.^' horrible, perfect:
The pottle was quite empty. You're quite wrong. It's quite extraordinary; I can't understand it at all.
B When used with other adjectives/adverbs, quite has a slightly weakening effect, so that quite good is normally less complimentary than good. quite used in this way has approximately the same meaning as fairly but its strength can vary very much according to the way it is stressed:

quite 'good (weak quite, strong good) is very little less than 'good'. 'quite ^good (equal stress) means 'moderately good'. 'quite good (strong quite, weak good) is much less than 'good'. The less quite is stressed the stronger the following adjective/adverb becomes. The more quite is stressed the weaker its adjective/ adverb becomes. Note the position of a/an:
quite a long walk quite an old castle

44 hardly, scarcely, barely

hardly, scarcely and barely are almost negative in meaning. hardly is chiefly used with any, ever, at all or the verb can:
He has hardly any money, (very little money)
I hardly ever go out. (I very seldom go out.)
It hardly rained at ail last summer.
Her case is so heavy that she can hardly lift if. But it can also be used with other verbs:
/ hardly know him. (I know him only very slightly.) Be careful not to confuse the adverbs hard and hardly:
He looked hard at it. (He stared at it.)
He hardly looked at it. (He gave it only a brief glance.) scarcely can mean 'almost not' and could replace hardly as used above: scarcely any/scarcely ever etc. But scarcely is chiefly used to mean 'not quite':
There were scarcely twenty people there, (probably fewer) (For hardly/scarcely with inversion, see 45 and 342 E.) barely means 'not more than/only just':
There were barely twenty people there, (only just twenty)
I can barely see if. (I can only just see it.)
Inversion of the verb

45 Inversion of the verb after certain adverbs

Certain adverbs and adverb phrases, mostly with a restrictive or negative sense, can for emphasis be placed first in a sentence or clause and are then followed by the inverted (i.e. interrogative) form of the verb. The most important of these are shown below. The numbers indicate paragraphs where an example will be found.

hardly ever (see 38 A, C)	on no account
hardly . . . when (342 E)	only by
in no circumstances	only in this way
neither/nor (112 D)	only then/when
never	scarcely ever
no sooner . . . than (342 E)	scarcely … when
not only	seldom
not till	so (112 A)
nowhere (36 B)	

I haven't got a ticket. ~ Neither/Nor have I.
I had never before been asked to accept a bribe.
Never before had I been asked to accept a bribe.
They not only rob you, they smash everything too.
Not only do they rob you, they smash everything too.
'He didn't realize that he had lost it till he got home.
Not till he got home did he realize that he had lost it.
This switch must not be touched on any account.
On no account must this switch be touched.
He was able to make himself heard only by shouting.
Only by shouting was he able to make himself heard.
He became so suspicious that …
So suspicious did he become that …

Note also that a second negative verb in a sentence can sometimes be expressed by nor with inversion:
He had no money and didn't know anyone he could borrow from.
He had no money, nor did he know anyone he could borrow from.
(neither would be less usual here.)
(For adverbs and adverb phrases followed by inversion of verb and noun subject, e.g. Up

went the rocket; By the door stood an armed guard, see36C, E, F.)

5 *all, each, every, both, neither, either, some, any, no, none*

46 **all, each, every, everyone, everybody, everything** (for **all** and **each**, see also 48)

A all compared to every

Technically, all means a number of people or things considered as a group while every means a number of people or things considered individually. But in practice every and its compounds are often used when we are thinking of a group.

B **each** (adjective and pronoun) and **every** (adjective)

each means a number of persons or things considered individually. **every** can have this meaning but with every there is less emphasis on the individual.

Every man had a weapon means 'All the men had weapons', and implies that the speaker counted the men and the weapons and found that he had the same number of each. Each man had a weapon implies that the speaker went to each man in turn and checked that he had a weapon.

each is a pronoun and adjective: Each (man) knows what to do.

every is an adjective only: Every man knows . . .

each can be used of two or more persons or things, and is normally used of small numbers, every is not normally used of very small numbers.

Both take a singular verb. The possessive adjective is his/her/its.

(For the reciprocal pronoun each other, see 53 C, 70 B.)

C **everyone/everybody** and **everything** (pronouns)

everyone/everybody + singular verb is normally preferred to all (the) people + plural verb, i.e. we say Everyone is ready instead of All the people are ready. There is no difference between everyone and everybody.

everything is similarly preferred to all (the) things, i.e. we say Everything has been wasted instead of All the things have been wasted. The expressions all (the) people, all (the) things are possible when followed by a phrase or clause:

All the people in the room clapped.

I got all the things you asked/or. Otherwise they are rarely used.

(For pronouns and possessive adjectives with everyone/everybody, see 51 C, 69.)

47 **both**

both means 'one and the other'. It takes a plural verb.

both can be used alone or followed by a noun:

Both (doors) were open

or by (of) + **the/these/those** or possessives:

both (of) the wheels *both (of) your wheels*

or by of + us/you/them:

Both of us knew him.

A personal pronoun + both is also possible:

We both knew him. (See 48.)

both . . . and . . . can be used to emphasize a combination of two adjectives, nouns, verbs etc.:

It was both cold and wet.

He is both an actor and a director.

He both acts and directs.

48 all/both/each + of and alternative constructions

A **all** (pronoun) can be followed by **of** + **the/this/these/that/those**/ possessives and proper nouns.

both (pronoun) + of can be used similarly but with plural forms only. The of here is often omitted especially with **all** + a singular noun/pronoun -

all the town *all (oft Tom's boys*

all his life *both (of) the towns*

all (of) these *both (of) his parents*

B With **all/both** + of + personal pronoun the of cannot be omitted:

all of it *both of them*

But there is an alternative construction, personal pronoun + **all/both**:

all of it is replaceable by it all.

all of us = we all (subject), us all (object).

all of you is replaceable by you all.

all of them = they all (subject), them all (object).

Similarly:

both of us = we both or us both

both of you = you both

both of them = they both or them both

All of them were broken = They were all broken.

All/Both of us went = We all/both went.

We ate all/both the cakes.

We ate all/both of them.

We ate them all/both.

C When one of these pronoun + all/both combinations is the subject of a compound tense the auxiliary verb usually precedes all/both:

We are all waiting. *You must both help me.*

be is also placed before all/both except when it is used in short answers etc.:

We are all/both ready but

Who is ready? ~ We at! are/We both are. Other auxiliaries used alone and simple tenses of ordinary verbs follow

all/both:

You all have maps. They both knew where to go.

D each, like both, can be followed by of + these/those etc. (plural forms only). The of here cannot be omitted:

each of the boys each of these each of us/you/them can, however, be replaced by pronoun + each;

each of you = you each

each of us = we each (subject), us each (indirect object)

each of them •= they each (subject), them each (indirect object)

We each sent in a report.

They gave us each a form to fill in. Note that each of us/you/them is singular:

Each of us has a map. But we/you/they each is plural:

We each have a map.

Verbs used with we/you/they each follow the patterns given in C above for all and both:

They have each been questioned.

49 neither, either

A 1 neither means 'not one and not the other'. It takes an affirmative singular verb. It can be used by itself or followed by a noun or by of -+• the/these/those/possessives or personal pronouns:

(a) I fried both keys but neither (of them) worked.

(b) Neither of them knew the way/Neither boy knew . . .

(c) I've read neither of these (books).

2 either means 'any one of two'. It takes a singular verb and, like neither, can be used by itself or followed by a noun/pronoun or by of + the/these/those etc.

3 either + negative verb can replace neither + affirmative except when neither is the subject of a verb. So either could not be used in (a) or (b) above but could in (c):

I haven't read either of these (books). Though either cannot be the subject of a negative verb, it can be subject or object of an affirmative or interrogative verb:

Either (of these) would do.

Would you like either of these?

4 Pronouns and possessive adjectives with neither/either used of people should technically be he/him, she/her and his/her, but in colloquial English the plural forms are generally used:

Neither of them knows the way, do they? Neither of them had brought their passports.

B neither . . . nor, either ... or

neither . . . nor + affirmative verb is an emphatic way of combining two negatives:

(a) Neither threats nor arguments had any affect on him.
(b) They said the room was large and bright but it was neither large nor bright.
(c) He neither wrote nor phoned.
either ... or + negative verb can replace neither . . . nor except when neither . . nor is the subject of a verb, as in (a) above. So:
(b) . . . but it wasn 't either large or bright and
(c) He didn 't either write or phone.
either ... or cannot be the subject of a negative verb but can be the subject or object of affirmative or interrogative verbs and is used in this way to express alternatives emphatically:
You can have either soup or fruit juice, (not both)
You fnusi either go at once or wait fill tomorrow.
It's urgent, so could, you either phone or telex?
(For either used in additions to remarks, see 112. For neither/nor followed by inversion, see 45,112.)

50 **some, any, no** and **none** (adjectives and pronouns)

A1 **some** and **any** mean ‘a certain number or amount'. They are used with :;^' or instead of plural or uncountable nouns. (For **some/any** with singular nouns, see C below.)
some is a possible plural form of **a/an** and **one**:
Have a biscuit/some biscuits. *I ate a date/some dates.*
some, any and none can be used with of + **the/this/these/those**/ possessives/personal pronouns:
Some of the staff can speak Japanese.
Did any of your photos come out well?
2 **some** is used:
With affirmative verbs:
They bought some honey.
In questions where the answer 'yes' is expected:
Did some of you sleep on the floor? (I expect so.)
In offers and requests:
Would you like some wine?
Could you do some typing for me?
(See also C.)
any is used:
With negative verbs:
haven't any matches.
With hardly, barely, scarcely (which are almost negatives):
/ have hardly any spare time. With without when without any . . . = with no . . . :
He crossed the/rentier without any difficulty/with no difficulty. With questions except the types noted above:
Have you got any money?
Did he catch any fish? After if/whether and in expressions of doubt:
I/you need any more money, please let me know.
! don't think there is any petrol in the tank. (See also C.)
B no (adjective) and none (pronoun)
no and none can be used with affirmative verbs to express a negative:
/ have no apples. I had some last year but I have none this year. no + noun can be the subject of a sentence:
No work was done.
No letterfs) arrived. none as the subject is possible but not very usual:
We expected letters, but none came. none + of, however, is quite usual as subject:
None of the tourists wanted to climb the mountain.
C some or any used with singular, countable nouns
some here usually means 'an unspecified or unknown':
Some idiol parked his car outside my garage. or other can be added to emphasize that the speaker isn't very
interested:
He doesn't believe in conventional medicine; he has some remedy or
other of his own. any can mean 'practically every', 'no particular (one)':

Any book about riding will tell you how to saadle a horse. Any dictionary will give you the meaning of these words.

51 someone, somebody, something, anyone, anybody, anything, no one, nobody, nothing

A Compounds with some, any and no follow the above rules:
Someone wants to speak So you on the phone. Someone/Somebody gave me a ticket/or the pop concert. ~ No one/Nobody has ever given me a free ticket for anything. Do you want anything from the chemist? Would anyone/anybody like a drink? Note also:
/ drink anything = / don't mind what I drink. Anyone will tell you where the house is. (See 50 C.)
someone, somebody, anyone, anybody, no one, nobody can be possessive:
Someone's passport has been stolen. Is this somebody's/anybody's seat? I don't want to waste anyone's time.
C Pronouns and possessive adjectives with someone, somebody, ",. anyonei anybody, no one, nobody, everyone, everybody
These expressions have a singular meaning and take a singular verb so personal pronouns and possessive adjectives should logically be he/she, him/her, his/her. However in colloquial English plural forms are more common:
Has anyone left their luggage on the train?
No one saw Tom go out, did they? ,^i But with something, anything, nothing we still use it:
Something went wrong, didn't it?
else placed after someone/anybody/nothing etc.

. someone/somebody/something, anyone/anybody/anything, \",:, no one/nobody/nothing, everyone/everybody/everything and ;„, the adverbs somewhere, anywhere, nowhere, everywhere can
Al' be followed by else:
some one else/somebody else = some other person
anyone else/anybody else = any other person
no one else/nobody else = no other person
everyone else/everybody else = every other person
something else = some other thing
I'm afraid I can't help you. You'll have to ask someone else. ~
There isn 't anyone else/There's no one else to ask.
else used with adverbs:
somewhere else = in/at/to some other place
anywhere else = in/at/to any other place
nowhere else = in/at/to no other place

Are you going anywhere else?
someone/somebody, anyone/anybody, no one/nobody + else can be possessive:
took someone else's coat.
Was anyone else's luggage opened?
No one else's luggage was opened.

53 **another, other, others** with **one** and **some**

A **another, other, others**

	Adjective	Pronoun
Singular	another	another
Plural	other	others

Have you met Bill's sisters? ~ I've met one. I didn't know he had another (sister). ~ Oh, he has two others/two other sisters.

B **one . . . another/other(s), some . . . other(s)**

One student suggested a play, another (student/other students/others wanted a concert.

Some tourists/Some of the tourists went on the beach; others explored the town.

C **one another** and **each other**

Tom and Ann looked at each other = Tom looked at Ann and Ann looked at Tom.

Both one another and each other can be used of two or more. but each other is frequently preferred when there are more than two.

6 Interrogatives: **wh-?** words and **how?**

54 Interrogative adjectives and pronouns

For persons:	subject	*who* (pronoun)
	Object	*whom, who* (pronoun)
Possessive		*whose* (pronoun and adjective)
For things:	subject/object	*what* (pronoun and adjective)
For persons or things when the choice is restricted:		
subject/object		*which* (pronoun and adjective)

The same form is used for singular and plural.

what can also be used for persons (see 58 D).

55 Affirmative verb after **who, whose** etc. used as subjects

who, whose, which, what when used as subjects are normally followed by an affirmative, not an interrogative, verb:

Who pays the bills? (affirmative verb)

Whose/Which horse won? (affirmative verb)

What happened?/What went wrong? (affirmative verb; possible answers: *We missed the train/had an accident*.)

But with **who, whose** etc. + be + noun or personal/distributive pronoun, an interrogative verb is used:

Who are you? Whose is this? What is that noise?

With **who, whose** etc. used as objects of a verb or preposition an interrogative verb is, of course, necessary.

56 Examples of the use of **who, whom, whose, which** and **what**

A **who, whom, whose**

who as subject:

Who keeps the keys? (affirmative verb)

Who took my gun? (affirmative verb)

Who are these boys? (interrogative verb)

who, whom as objects of a verb:

Normal English: *Who did you see?*

Very formal English: *Whom did the committee appoint?*

whose as subject:

Whose car broke down? (affirmative verb)

Whose (books) are these? (interrogative verb)

whose as object of a verb:

Whose umbrella did you borrow?

B **which**

which as subject:

Which pigeon arrived first? (affirmative verb)

Which of them is the eldest? (affirmative verb) which as object of a verb:

Which hand do you use? Which of these dates would you prefer?

C **what**

what as subject:

What caused the explosion? (affirmative verb)

What kind of tree is that? (interrogative verb)

what as object of a verb:

What paper do you read? What did they eat?

57 **who, whom, which** and **what** as objects of prepositions

A **who, whom**

In formal English we use preposition + **whom**:

With whom did you go? To whom were you speaking?

But in ordinary English we usually move the preposition to the end of the sentence. The **whom** then normally changes to **who**:

Who did you go with? Who were you speaking to?

B **which, what**

In formal English we use preposition + which/what:

To which address did you send it?

On what do you base your theory?

In informal English we move the preposition to the end of the sentence:

Which address did you send it to?

What do you base your theory on?

58 Uses of **what**

A **what** is a general interrogative used for things:

What bird is that? What makes that noise?

What country do you come from? What did he say?

B **what. . . for? means 'why?'**:

What did you da that for? = Why did you do that?

C **what + be ... like?** is a request for a description and can be used for things or people:

What was the exam like? ~ It was very difficult.

What was the weather like? - If was very windy.

What's the food like in your hostel? - It's quite good.

Used of people it may concern either appearance or character:

He's short and fat and wears glasses.

He's a very talkative, friendly man.

what does he/she/it look like? concerns appearance only, and can also mean 'What does he/she/it resemble?':

What does she look like? - She is tall and glamorous. She looks like a film star.

What does if look like? ~ It's black and shiny. It looks like coal.

D **what is he?** means 'What is his profession?':

What is his/other? ~ He is a tailor.

what (adjective) used for persons is not common: *What students are you talking about?* is possible, but *Which students … ?* would be much more usual.

E **what** and **how** in questions about measurements

We can use **what + age/depth/height/length/width** but in conversation it would be more usual to say **how old/deep/high/tall/long/wide?**

what size/weight? is usual when an exact answer is required, though **how big/heavy?** is also possible.

What age are you?/What is your age/How old are you?

What height is he?/What is his height?/How tall is he?

What is the weight of the parcel?/How heavy is it?

What size do you take in shoes?

59 **which** compared with **who** and **what**

A Examples of **which** and **what** used for things:

What will you have to drink?
There's gin, whisky and sherry: which will you have?
What does it cost to get to Scotland? — It depends on how you go. ~ Which (way) is the cheapest or Which is the cheapest (way)?
I've seen the play and the film. ~ What did you think of them?
Which (of them) did you like best?

Examples of **which** and **who** used for people;

Who do you want to speak to? ~ I want to speak to Mr Smith. ~
We have two Smiths here. Which (a/them) do you want?

Which (pronoun) of people is not used alone as subject of a verb:

Which of you knows the formula? ('of you' is essential.)
Who knows the formula? would also be possible.

which (adjective) can be used of people when there is only a very slight idea of restriction:

Which poet (of all the poets) *do you like best?*

what would be possible here and **would** be more logical, but **what** (adjective) for people is normally avoided.

60 Interrogative adverbs: **why, when, where, how**

A **why?** means 'for what reason?':

Why was he late? ~ He missed the bus.

B **when?** means 'at what time?':

When do you get up? ~ 7 a.m.

C **where?** means 'in what place?':

Where do you live? ~ In London.

D **how?** means 'in what way?':

How did you come? ~ I came by plane.
How do you start the engine? ~ You press this button.

how can also be used:

1 With adjectives (see 25 C):

How strong are you? *How important is this letter?* (For **how + old/high** etc., see 58 E.)

2 With **much** and **many**:

How much (money) do you want? How many (pictures) did you buy?

3 With adverbs;

How fast does he drive? How often do you go abroad?
How badly was he hurt? How soon can you come?

Note that *How is she?* is an enquiry about her health, but *What is she like?* is a request for a description. (See 58 C.)

Do not confuse *How are you?* with *How do you do?* When two people are introduced each says *How do you do?* This is a greeting rather than a question. (See 126.)

61 **ever** placed after **who, what, where, why, when, how**

Where ever have you been? I've been looking for you everywhere!
Who ever told you I'd lend you the money? I've no money at all!

ever here is not necessary in the sentence but is added to emphasise the speaker's surprise/astonishment/anger/irritation/dismay. It has the same meaning as *on earth/in the world*.

Such sentences are always spoken emphatically and the intonation will convey the speaker's emotion:

Why ever did you wash it in boiling water? (dismay)
Who ever are you? (The other person is presumably an intruder.)
Who ever left the door open? (What stupid person left it open?)
Where ever have you put my briefcase? (I can't find it anywhere.)
What ever are you doing in my car? (astonishment/annoyance)
When ever did you leave home? (You must have left very early.)

How ever did he escape unhurt? (The car was a complete wreck.)

Note also **why ever not?** and **what ever for?**:

You mustn't wear anything green. — Why ever not? (I can't understand the reason for this prohibition.)

Bring a knife to class tomorrow. ~ What ever for? (I can't understand what I need a knife for.)

(For **whoever, whatever** etc. written as one word, see 85.)

7 Possessives, personal and reflexive pronouns: my, mine, I, myself etc.

62 Possessive adjectives and pronouns

Possessive adjectives	Possessive pronouns
my	mine
your	yours
his/her/its	his/hers
our	ours
your	yours
their	theirs

Note that no apostrophes are used here. Students should guard against the common mistake of writing the possessive **its** with an apostrophe.
it's (with an apostrophe) means *it is*.
The old form of the second person singular can be found in some bibles and pre-twentieth century poetry:
Thy *thine*
one's is the possessive adjective of the pronoun one.

63 Agreement and use of possessive adjectives

A Possessive adjectives in English refer to the possessor and not to the thing possessed.
Everything that a man or boy possesses is **his** thing;
everything that a woman or girl possesses is **her** thing:
Tom's father is his father but
Mary's father is her father.
Everything that an animal or thing possesses is its thing:
A tree drops its leaves in autumn.
A happy dog wags its tail.
But if the sex of the animal is known, **his/her** would often be used.
If there is more than one possessor, **their** is used:
The girls are with their brother.
Trees drop their leaves in autumn.
Note that the possessive adjective remains the same whether the thing possessed is singular or plural:
my glove, my gloves *his foot, his feet*

B Possessive adjectives are used with clothes and parts of the body:
She changed her shoes. *He injured his back.* (But see also 7 A6.)

C To add emphasis, **own** can be placed after **my, your, his** etc. and after **one's**;
my own room *her own idea*
own can be an adjective, as above, or a pronoun:
a room of one's own
Note the expression:
I'm on my own = I'm alone.

64 Possessive pronouns replacing possessive adjectives + nouns

A *This is our room* or *This (room) is ours.*
This is their car. That car is theirs too.
You've got my pen.
You're using mine. Where's your's?

B The expression **of mine** etc. means 'one of my' etc.:
a friend of mine = one of my friends
a sister of hers = one of her sisters

65 Personal pronouns

A Form

		Subject	Object
Singular:	first person	I	me
	second person	you	you
	third person	he/she/it	him/her/it
Plural:	first person	we	us
	second person	you	you
	third person	they	them

The old form of the second person singular is:
thou (subject) *thee* (object)

B Use of subject and object forms

1 **you** and **it** present no difficulty as they have the same form for subject and object:
Did you see the snake? - Yes, I saw it and it saw me. ~ Did if frighten you?

2 First and third person forms (other than it)
(a) **I, he, she. we, they** can be subjects of a verb:
I see it. He knows you. They live here.
or complements of the verb **to be**: *It is I.*
Normally, however, we use the object forms here:
Who is it? ~ It's me.
Where's Tom? ~ That's him over there.
But if the pronoun is followed by a clause, we use the subject forms:
Blame Bill! It was he who chose this colour.
b) **me. him, her, us, them** can be direct objects of a verb:
I saw her. *Tom likes them.*
or indirect objects:
Bill found me a job. *Ann gave him a book.* (See 66.)
or objects of a preposition:
with him *for her* *without them* *to us*

66 The position of pronoun objects

A An indirect object comes before a direct object:
I made Ann/her a cake. *I sent Bill the photos.*
However, if the direct object is a personal pronoun it is more usual to place it directly after the verb and use to or for:
I made it for her. *I sent them to him.* (See 88.)
The position rule does not apply to **one, some, any, none** etc.:
He bought one for Ann or He bought Ann one.
He gave something to Jack or He gave Jack something.

B Pronoun objects of phrasal verbs
With many phrasal verbs a noun object can be either in the middle or at the end:
Hand your papers in/Hand in your papers.
Hang your coat up/Hang up your coat.
Take your shoes off/Take off your shoes.
A pronoun object, however, roust be placed in the middle:
hand them in hang it up take them off
(See chapter 38.)

67 Uses of it

*A **it** is normally used of a thing or an animal whose sex we don't know, and sometimes of a baby or small child:*
Where's my map? I left it on the table.
Look at that bird. It always comes to my window.

Her new baby is tiny. It only weighs 2 kilos.

B **it** can be used of people in sentences such as:
ANN (on phone): *Who is that/Who is it?*
BILL: *It's me.*

Is that Tom over there? ~ No, it's Peter.

C **it** is used in expressions of time, distance, weather, temperature, tide:

What time is it? ~ It is six.
What's the date? ~ It's the third of March.
How far is it to York? ~ It is 400 kilometres.
How long does it take to get there? ~ It depends on how you go.
It is raining/snowing/freezing. It's frosty. It's a fine night.
It's full moon tonight. In winter it's/it is dark at six o'clock.
It is hot/cold/quiet/noisy in this room.
It's high tide/low tide.

Note also:

It's/It is three years since I saw him = I haven't seen him for three years. (See 188.)

(For **it is time** + subject + past tense, see also 293.)

D Introductory **it**

1 **it** can introduce sentences of the following type ('cleft sentences'):

It was Peter who lent us the money, (not Paul)
It's 'today that he's going, (not tomorrow)

it is used even with a plural noun:

It's 'pilots that we need, wit ground staff. (See also 76.)

2 When an infinitive is subject of a sentence, we usually begin the sentence with it and put the infinitive later; i.e. we say:

It is easy to criticise instead of
To criticise is easy.

It is better to be early instead of

To be early is better.
It seems a pity to give up now instead of
To give up now seems a pity.

If **it + be** is preceded by find/think (that), the be and the that can often by omitted:

He thought (that) it (would be) better to say nothing.
We found it impossible to get visas.

3 **it** can be used similarly when the subject of a sentence is a clause. It would be possible to say:

That he hasn't phoned is odd.
That prices will go up is certain.

But **it** would be much more usual to say:

It's odd that he hasn't phoned.
It's certain that prices will go up.

Other examples:

It never occurred to me that perhaps he was lying.
It struck me that everyone was unusually silent.

E **it/this** can represent a previously mentioned phrase, clause or verb:

He smokes in bed, though I don't like it. (it = his smoking in bed)
He suggested flying, but I thought it would cost too much. (it = flying)

F **it** also acts as a subject for impersonal verbs:

it seems it appears it looks it happens

68 **you, one** and **they** as indefinite pronouns

A **you** and **one**

As subjects, either can be used:

Can you/one camp in the forest?

As objects, **you** is the normal pronoun;

They/ins you for parking offences.

you is more common in ordinary conversation. It is a more 'friendly' pronoun and implies that the speaker can imagine himself in such a position.

one is more impersonal and less often used, though the possessive **one's** is quite common:

It's easy to lose one's/your way in Venice.

The correct possessive form must be used:

One has to show one's pass at the door.
You have to show your pass at the door.

If instead of **one** or **you** we use a singular noun, the possessive adjective will obviously be **his** or **her**:

One must do one's best.
A traveller has to guard his possessions.

B **they**

they is used as subject only. **they** can mean 'people':

they say = people say, it is said

They say if is going to be a cold winter.

they can also mean 'the authority concerned', i.e. the government/ the local council/one's employers/the police etc.;

They want to make this a one-way street.

69 *Use of **they/them/their** with **neither/either, someone/everyone/no one** etc.*

These expressions are singular and take a singular verb. Their personal pronouns therefore should be **he/she** and the possessive adjectives should be **his/her** (**he/his** for males and mixed sexes; **she/her** for females). But many native speakers find this troublesome and often use **they/their**, even when only one sex is involved:

Neither of them remembered their instructions.
Would someone lend me their binoculars?
Everyone has read the notice, haven't they?
No one objected, did they? (See also 51 C.)

70 Reflexive pronouns

A *These are: **myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves**. Note the difference between the second person singular **yourself**, and the second person plural **yourselves**. The indefinite reflexive/emphasising pronoun is **oneself**.*

B **myself, yourself** etc. are used as objects of a verb when the action of the verb returns to the doer, i.e. when subject and object are the same person:

I cut myself. *He can't shave himself.*
It is not always easy to amuse oneself on holiday.
Tom and Ann blamed themselves for the accident.
This refrigerator defrosts itself.

Note the change of meaning if we replace the reflexive pronoun by the reciprocal pronoun each other:

Tom and Ann blamed each other. (Tom blamed Ann and Ann blamed Tom, See 53 C.)

C **myself, yourself** etc. are used similarly after a verb + preposition:

He spoke to himself. *Did she pay for herself?*
Look after yourself. *Take care of yourselves.*
I'm annoyed with myself. *He sat by himself, (alone)*
She addressed the envelope to herself.

But if the preposition indicates locality, we use the ordinary, not the reflexive, pronouns:

Did you take your dog with you?
They put the child between them.
Had he/Did he have any money on him?

71 **myself, himself, herself** etc. used as emphasising pronouns

myself etc. can also be used to emphasise a noun or pronoun:

The King himself gave her the medal.

self is then stressed in speech.

When used in this way the pronoun is never essential and can be omitted without changing the sense. It usually emphasises the subject of the sentence and is placed after it:

Ann herself opened the door. *Tom himself went.*

Alternatively it can be placed after the object if there is one:

Ann opened the door herself

or after an intransitive verb:

Tom went himself.

If the intransitive verb is followed by a preposition + noun, the emphasising pronoun can be placed after this noun:

Tom went to London himself or *Tom himself went to London.*

When it emphasises another noun it is placed immediately after it:

I saw Tom himself. *I spoke to the President himself.*

She liked the diamond itself but not the setting.

Note the difference between:

I did it myself (It was done by me and not by someone else) and

I did it by myself (I did it without help).

8 Relative pronouns and clauses

There are three kinds of relative clauses: defining (see 72-7), non-defining (78-81) and connective (82).

71 Defining relative clauses

These describe the preceding noun in such a way as to distinguish it from other nouns of the same class. A clause of this kind is essential to .the dear understanding of the noun. In the sentence:

The man who told me this refused to give me his name

'who told me this' is the relative clause. If we omit this, it is not clear what man we are talking about. Notice that there is no comma between a noun and a defining relative clause.

Defining relative clauses usually follow **the** + noun, but they can also be used with **a/an** + noun, plural nouns without the and the pronouns **all, none, anybody, somebody** etc. and **those**. Clauses following **a/an** + noun, plural nouns without the and somebody /someone/something sometimes define their noun/pronoun only indirectly. The noun/pronoun in these cases is usually the object of a verb or preposition:

I met someone who said he knew you.

The book is about a girl who falls in love with …

Sometimes these clauses are separated from their noun/pronoun by a "word or phrase:

'", There's a man here who wants . . .

I saw something in the paper which would interest you. But normally relative clauses should be placed directly after their noun or pronoun:

The noise that he made woke everybody up.

She was annoyed by something that I had said.

72 Relative pronouns used in defining relative clauses

The forms are as follows:

	Subject	Object	Possessive
For persons	who	whom/who	whose
That	that		
for things	which	which	whose/of which
that	that		

74 Defining relative clauses: persons

A Subject: **who** or **that**

who is normally used:

The man who robbed you has been arrested.
The girls who serve in the shop are the owner's daughters.
Only those who had booked in advance were allowed in.
Would anyone who saw the accident please get in touch with the police?

But that is a possible alternative after **all, everyone, everybody, no one, nobody** and **those**:

Everyone who/that knew him liked him.
Nobody who/that watched the match will ever forget it.

B Object of a verb: **whom** or **who** or **that**

The object form is **whom**, but this is considered very formal. In spoken English we normally use **who** or that that being more usual than who), and it is still more common to omit the object pronoun altogether:

The man whom I saw told me to come back today or
The man who I saw ... or The man that I saw …, or
The man I saw … (relative pronoun omitted)
The girls whom he employs are always complaining about their pay or
The girls who he employs ... or The girls that he employs ... or
The girls he employs. . .

C With a preposition: **whom** or **that**

In formal English the preposition is placed before the relative pronoun, which must then be

put into the form **whom**:

the man to whom I spoke

In informal speech, however, it is more usual to move the preposition to the end of the clause, **whom** then is often replaced by **that**, but it is still more common to omit the relative altogether:

the man who/whom I spoke to or

the man that I spoke to or the man I spoke to

Similarly:

The man from whom I bought it told me to oil it or

The man who/that I bought it from … or

The man I bought it from…

The friend with whom I was travelling spoke French or

The friend who/that I was travelling with ... or

The friend I was travelling with…

D Possessive

whose is the only possible form:

People whose rents have been raised can appeal.

The film is about a spy whose wife betrays him.

75 Defining relative clauses: things

A Subject

Either **which** or **that**. **which** is the more formal:

This is the picture which/that caused such a sensation.

The stairs which/that lead to the cellar are rather slippery.

(See also B below.)

B Object of a verb **which** or **that**. or no relative at all:

The car which/that I hired broke down or The car I hired …

which is hardly ever used after **all, everything, little, much, none, no** and compounds of **no**, or after superlatives. Instead we use **that**, or omit the relative altogether, if it is the object of a verb:

All the apples that fall are eaten by the pigs.

This is the best hotel (that) I know.

C Object of a preposition

The formal construction is preposition + **which**, but it is more usual to move the preposition to the end of the clause, using **which** or **that** or omitting the relative altogether:

The ladder on which I was standing began to slip or

The ladder which/that I was standing on began to slip or

The ladder I was standing on began to slip.

D Possessive

whose + a clause is possible but **with** + a phrase is more usual:

a house whose walls were made of glass a house with glass walls

E Relative adverbs: **when, where, why**

Note that **when** can replace **in/on which** (used of time):

the year when (= in which) *he was born*

the day when (= on which) *they arrived*

where can replace **in/at which** (used of place):

the hotel where (= in/at which) *they were staying* .

why can replace **for which**: *The reason why he refused is …*

when, where and **why** used in this way are called relative adverbs.

76 Cleft sentences: **it + be** + noun/pronoun + defining relative clause

It was Tom who helped us. (not Bill or Jack)

It was Ann that I saw. (not Mary)

When the object is a proper noun, as above, **that** is more usual than **who**. With all other objects, **that** is the correct form:

It's the manager that we want to see.
It was wine that we ordered, (not beer)

that is usual for non-personal subjects:

It's speed that causes accidents, not bad roads.

77 A relative clause replaced by an infinitive or a participle

A Infinitives can be used:

*1 After **the first/second** etc. and after **the last/only** and sometimes after superlatives:*
the last man to leave the ship = the last man who left/leaves the ship
the only one to understand = the only one who understood/understands

Notice that the infinitive here replaces a subject pronoun + verb. It could not be used to replace an object pronoun + verb. For example the clause in *the first man that we saw* could not be replaced by an infinitive, for *the first man to see* would have a completely different meaning. If, however, that is the subject of a passive verb, e.g. *the first man that was seen*, we can replace the clause by a passive infinitive: *the first man to be seen*.

2 When there is an idea of purpose or permission:

He has a lot of books to read. (books that he can/must read)
She had something to do. (something that she could do/had to do)
They need a garden to play in. (a garden they can play in)

Note that here the infinitive replaces a verb + relative pronoun as object.
It might be thought that these two uses of the infinitive would lead to confusion but in practice this is very rare as the meaning of the infinitive is made clear by the rest of the sentence. By itself the phrase *the first man to see* could mean either *the first man that we must see* (*man* is the object) or *the first man who saw* (*man* is the subject), but when it is part of a sentence we can see at once which meaning is intended:

The first man to see is Tom = The first man that we must see is Tow, while
The first man to see me was Tom = The first man who saw me was Tom.

B Present participles can be used:

1 When the verb in the clause is in the continuous tense:
People who are/were waiting/or the bus often shelter/sheltered in my doorway = People waiting/or the bus often shelter/sheltered . . .

2 When the verb in the clause expresses a habitual or continuous action:
Passengers who travel/travelled on this bus buy/bought their tickets in books = Passengers travelling …
Boys who attend/attended this school have/had to wear uniform = Boys attending …
a law which forbids/forbade the import = a law forbidding the import
a notice which warns/warned people = a notice warning people
an advertisement which urges/urged = an advertisement urging

Similarly:

a petition asking a letter ordering/demanding/telling
a placard protesting placards protesting

3 When a verb in the clause expresses a wish, i.e. when the verb in the clause is wish, desire, want, hope (but not like):
people who wish/wished to go on the tour = people wishing to go on the Sour
fans who hope/hoped for a glimpse of the star = fans hoping for a glimpse of the star

4 A non-defining clause (see 78 below) containing one of the above verbs, or any verb of knowing or thinking, e.g. *know, think, believe, expect*, can be similarly replaced by a present participle:

Peter, who thought the journey would take two days, said … = Peter, thinking the journey would take two days, said…
Tom, who expected to be paid the following week, offered … = Tom, expecting to be paid the following week, offered…
Bill, who wanted to make an impression on Ann. took her to … = Bill, wanting to make an impression on Ann, took her to …

78 Non-defining relative clauses

A Non-defining relative clauses are placed after nouns, which are definite already. They do not therefore define the noun, but merely add something to it by giving some more information about it. Unlike defining relative clauses, they are not essential in the sentence and can be omitted without causing confusion. Also unlike defining relatives, they are separated from their noun by commas. The pronoun can never 'be omitted in a non-defining relative clause. The construction is fairly formal and more common in written than in spoken English.

B Relative pronouns used in non-defining relative clauses:

	Subject	Object	Possessive
For persons	who	whom/who	whose
For things	which	which	whose/of which

79 Non-defining relative clauses: persons

A Subject: **who**

No other pronoun is possible. Note the commas:

My neighbour, who is very pessimistic, says there will be no apples this year.

Peter, who had been driving all day, suggested stopping at the next town.

Clauses such as these, which come immediately after the subject of the main verb, are found mainly in written English. In spoken English we would be more likely to say:

My neighbour is very pessimistic and says . . .

Peter had been driving all day, so/and he suggested . . .

But clauses placed later in the sentence, i.e. clauses coming after the object of the main verb, are quite common in conversation:

I've invited Ann, who lives in the next flat.

Clauses following a preposition + noun are also common:

I passed the letter to Peter, who was sitting beside me.

B Object: **whom, who**

The pronoun cannot be omitted, whom is the correct form, though **who** is sometimes used in conversation:

Peter, whom everyone suspected, turned out to be innocent.

As noted above, a non-defining clause in this position is unusual in spoken English. We would be more likely to say:

Everyone suspected Peter, but he turned out to be innocent.

But non-defining clauses coming later in the sentence, i.e. after the object of the main verb or after a preposition + noun, are common in conversation:

She wanted Tom, whom she liked, as a partner; but she got Jack.

whom she didn't like. She introduced me to her husband, whom I hadn 't met before.

C Object of a preposition: **whom**

The pronoun cannot be omitted. The preposition is normally placed before whom:

Mr. Jones, for whom I was working, was very generous about overtime payments.

It is however possible to move the preposition to the end of the clause. This is commonly done in conversation, and who then usually takes the place of whom:

Mr. Jones, who I was working/or, . . .

If the clause contains an expression of time or place, this will remain at the end:

Peter, with whom I played tennis on Sundays, was fitter than me.

could become

Peter, who/whom I played tennis with on Sundays, was fitter than me.

D Possessive: whose

Ann, whose children are at school all day, is trying to get a job.

This is George, whose class you will be taking.

In conversation we would probably say:

Ann's children are at school all day, so she . . .

This is George. You will be taking his class.

80 **all, both, few, most, several, some** etc. + **of** + **whom/which**

This form can be used for both people and things. See examples below. For each a more

informal equivalent is given in brackets:

Her sons, both of whom work abroad, ring her up every week.(Both her sons work abroad, but they ring her up every week.)

He went with a group a/people, few of whom were correctly equipped for such a climb. (He went with a group of people; few of them . . .)

The buses, most of which were already full, were surrounded by an angry crowd. (Most of the buses were full, and/but they were surrounded by an angry crowd.)

I met the fruit-pickers, several of whom were university students. (I met the fruit-pickers; several of them were . . .)

I picked up the apples, some of which were badly bruised. (I picked up the apples; some of them . . .)

The house was full of boys, ten of whom were his own grandchildren. (The house was full of boys; ten of them . . .)

81 Non-defining relative clauses: things

A Subject: **which**

that is not used here:

That block, which cost £5 million to build, has been empty for years. The 8.15 train, which is usually very punctual, was late today.

In speech we would be more likely to say:

That block cost £5 million to build and has been empty for years. The 8.15 train is usually punctual; but it was late today.

B Object: **which**

that is not used here, and the which can never be omitted:

She gave me this jumper, which she had knitted herself or

She gave me this jumper; she had knitted if herself.

These books, which you can get at any bookshop, will give you alt the information you need or

These books will give you all the information you need. You can get them at any bookshop.

C Object of a preposition

The preposition comes before **which**, or (more informally) at the end of the clause:

Ashdown Forest, through which we 'll be driving, isn 't a forest any longer or

Ashdown Forest, which we 'll be driving through, isn 'l a forest any longer.

His house, for which he paid £10,000, is now worth £50,000 or

His house, which he paid £10.000 for, is now . . .

D **which** with phrasal verbs

Combinations such as *look after, took forward to, put up with* (see chapter 38) should be treated as a unit, i.e. the preposition/adverb should not be separated from the verb:

This machine, which I have locked after/or twenty years, is still working perfectly.

Your inefficiency, which we have Rut up with far too long, is beginning to annoy our customers.

E Possessive: **whose** or of **which**

whose is generally used both for animals and things. **of which** is possible for things, but is unusual except in very formal English.

His house, whose windows were all broken, was a depressing sight.

The car, whose handbrake wasn't very reliable, began to slide backwards.

82 Connective relative clauses

The pronouns are **who, whom, whose, which**. Commas are used as with non-defining clauses. Connective clauses do not describe their nouns but continue the story. They are usually placed after the object of the main verb:

I told Peter, who said it wasn't his business

or after the preposition + noun:

I threw the ball to Tom, who threw it to Ann.

They can be replaced by and/but + he/she etc.:

I threw the ball to Tom and he threw it . . .

I fold Peter, but he said . . .

Sometimes it may be difficult to say whether a clause in this position is non-defining or connective, but there is no need for students to make this distinction, as the two forms are the same. More examples of connective clauses:

He drank beer, which made him fat = He drank beer and it made him fat.

We went with Peter, whose car broke down before we were halfway there =

We went with Peter but his car broke down before we were halfway there.

We can use **one/two** etc., **few/several/some** etc. + **of + whom/which** as shown in 80:

I bought a dozen eggs, six of which broke when I dropped the box.

He introduced me to his boys, one of whom offered to go with me.

The lorry crashed into a queue of people, several of whom had to hare hospital treatment.

which can also stand for a whole clause:

The clock struck thirteen, which made everyone laugh.

He refused to do his share of the chores, which annoyed the others.

(His refusal annoyed them.)

The rain rattled on the roof alt night, which kept us awake.

She was much kinder to her youngest child than she was to the others, which made the others jealous.

83 **what** (relative pronoun) and **which** (connective relative)

what = the thing that/the things that:

What we saw astonished us = The things that we saw astonished us.

When she sees what you have done she will be furious = When she sees the damage that you have done she will be furious.

Be careful not to confuse the relative what with the connective relative which. Remember that **which** must refer to a word or group of words in the preceding sentence, while **what** does not refer back to anything. The relative what is also usually the object of a verb, while the connective **which** is usually the subject:

He said he had no money, which was not true.

Some of the roads were flooded, which made our journey more difficult. (See also 82.)

84 The importance of commas in relative clauses

Remember that a defining relative clause is written without commas. Note how the meaning changes when commas are inserted:

(a) The travellers who knew about the floods took another road.

(b) The travellers, who knew about the floods, took another road.

In (a) we have a defining relative clause, which defines or limits the noun travellers. This sentence therefore tells us that only the travellers; who knew about the floods took the other road, and implies that there where other travellers who did not know and who took the flooded road.

In (b) we have a non-defining clause, which does not define or limit the noun it follows. This sentence therefore implies that all the travellers ^ blew about the floods and took the other road.

(c) The boys who wanted to play football were disappointed when it rained.

(d) The boys, who wanted to play football, were disappointed . . .

Sentence (c) implies that only some of the boys wanted to play football. There were presumably others who didn't mind whether it rained or not. Sentence (d) implies that all the boys wanted to play and all were disappointed,

(e) The wine which was in the cellar was ruined.

(f) The wine, which was in the cellar, was ruined.

Sentence (e) implies that only some of the wine was ruined. Presumably some was kept elsewhere and escaped damage. Sentence (f) states that all the wine was in the cellar and ruined.

85 **whoever, whichever, whatever, whenever, wherever, however**

These have a variety of meanings and can introduce relative and other clauses. The other clauses do not technically belong to this chapter but it seems best to group these **-ever** forms together.

A **whoever** (pronoun) and **whichever** (pronoun and adjective) can mean 'the one who', 'he who', 'she who':

Whoever gains the most points wins the competition.
Whichever of them gains the most/mints wins.
Whichever team gains the most points wins.
Whoever gets home first starts cooking the supper.
Whichever of us gets home first starts cooking.
Whoever cleans your windows doesn 't make a good Job of it.

B **whatever** (pronoun and adjective), **whenever, wherever**:

You can eat what/whatever you like. (anything you like)
When you are older you can watch whatever programme you like.
My roof leaks when/whenever it rains, (every time it rains)
You will see this product advertised everywhere/wherever you go.
Go anywhere/wherever you like.

C **whoever, whichever, whatever, whenever, wherever, however** can mean 'no matter who' etc.:

If I say 'heads, I win; tails you lose', I will win whatever happens or whichever way the coin falls.
Whatever happens don't forget to write.
I'll find him, wherever he has gone. (no matter where he has gone)

whatever you do is often placed before or after a request/command to emphasize its importance:

Whatever you do, don't mention my name.

however is an adverb of degree and is used with an adjective or another adverb:

I'd rather have a room of my own, however small (it is), than share a room.
However hard I worked, she was never satisfied.

D **whatever, wherever** can indicate the speaker's ignorance or indifference:

He lives in Wick, wherever that is. (I don't know where it is, and I'm not very interested.)
He says he's a phrenologist, whatever that is. (I don't know what it is and I'm not very interested.)

who ever? when ever? what ever? etc. may be written as separate words, but the meaning then changes (see 61):

I lost seven kilos in a month. ~ How ever did you lose so much in such a short time?
BILL *(suspiciously): / know all about you.*
TOM *(indignantly): What ever do you mean?*
Where ever did you buy your wonderful carpets?

9 Prepositions

86 Introduction

Prepositions are words normally placed before nouns or pronouns (but see 87 about possible alternative positions). Prepositions can also be followed by verbs but, except after **but** and **except**, the verb must be in the gerund form:

He is talking of emigrating.
They succeeded in escaping.

The student has two main problems with prepositions. He has to know (a) whether in any construction a preposition is required or not, and (b) which preposition to use when one is required.

The first problem can be especially troublesome to a European student, who may find that a certain construction in his own language requires a preposition, whereas a similar one in English does not, and vice versa: e.g. in most European languages purpose is expressed by a preposition + infinitive; in English it is expressed by the infinitive only:

I came here to study.

The student should note also that many words used mainly as prepositions can also be used as conjunctions and adverbs. Where this is the case it will be pointed out in the following paragraphs.

87 Alternative position of prepositions

A Prepositions normally precede nouns or pronouns. In two constructions, however, it is possible in informal English to move the preposition to the end of the sentence:

In questions beginning with a preposition **+ whom/which/what/whose/where**:

To whom were you talking? (formal)
Who were you talking to? (informal)
In which drawer does he keep it? (formal)
Which drawer does he keep it in? (informal)

It used to be thought ungrammatical to end a sentence with a preposition, but it is now accepted as a colloquial form. Similarly in relative clauses, a preposition placed before whom/which (can be moved to the end of the clause. The relative pronoun is then often omitted:

the people with whom I was travelling (formal)
the people I was travelling with (informal)
the company from which I hire my TV set (formal)
the company I hire my TV set from (informal)

B But in phrasal verbs the preposition/adverb remains after its verb, so the formal type of construction is not possible, *the children I was looking after* could not be rewritten with **after + whom** and *Which bridge did they blow up?* could not be rewritten with **up + which**.

88 Omission of to and for before indirect objects

A1 A sentence such as I gave the book to Tom could also be expressed *I gave Tom the book*, i.e. the indirect object can be placed first and the preposition to omitted. We can use this construction with the following verbs: *bring, give, hand, lease* (in a will), *lend, offer, pass* (= hand), *pay, play* (an instrument/piece of music), *promise, sell, send, show, sing, take, tell* (= narrate, inform):

I showed the map to Bill = I showed Bill the map.
They sent £5 to Mr Smith = They sent Mr Smith £5.
2 Similarly I'll find a job for Ann *could be expressed* I'll find Ann a job *(putting the indirect object first and omitting* ***for****). This construction is possible after* book, build, buy, cook, *(*bake, boil, fry *etc.).* fetch, find, get, keep, knit, leave, make, order, reserve*:*
I'll get a drink for you = I'll get you a drink.
I bought a book for James = I bought James a book.

B Normally either construction can be used. But:

1 The construction without preposition is preferred when the direct object is a phrase or a clause:
Tell her the whole story.

Show me what you've got in your hand.
2 The construction with preposition is preferred:
(a) When the indirect object is a phrase or a clause:
We kept seats for everyone on our list/for everyone who had paid.
I had to show my pass to the man at the door.
(b) When the direct object is **it** or **them**. Sentences such as *They kept it for Mary, She made them for Bill, We sent it to George* cannot be
expressed by a verb + noun + pronoun construction.
If the indirect object is also a pronoun (*I sent it to him*) it is sometimes possible to reverse the pronouns and omit to (*I sent him if*), but this cannot be done with for constructions and is better avoided.
This restriction does not apply to other pronoun objects:
He gave Bill some. *He didn't give me any.*
He bought Mary one. *I'll show you something.*

C *promise, show, tell* can be used with indirect objects only, without to:
promise us *show him* *tell him*
read, write can be used similarly, but require to:
read to me *write to them*
play, sing can be used with to or for:
play to us *play for us* *sing to us* *sing for us*

89 Use and omission of to with verbs of communication

Verbs of command, request, invitation and advice, e.g. *advise, ask, beg, command, encourage, implore, invite, order, recommend, remind, request, tell, urge, warn*, can be followed directly by the person addressed (without to) + infinitive:
They advised him to wait.
I urged her to try again. (See 244.)
The person addressed (without to) can be used after *advise, remind, tell, warn* with other constructions also:
He reminded them that there were no trains after midnight.
They warned him that the ice was thin/warned him about the ice
But note that *recommend* (= advise) when used with other constructions needs to before the person addressed:
He recommended me to buy it but *He recommended it to me.*
He recommended me (for the post) would mean *'He said I was suitable'.*
When **ask** is used with other constructions the person addressed is often optional. The preposition to is never used here:
He asked (me) a question.
He asked (me) if I wanted to apply.
She asked (her employer) for a day off.
call (= shout), *complain, describe, explain, grumble, murmur, mutter, say, shout, speak, suggest, talk, whisper* need **to** before the person addressed, though it is not essential to mention this person:
Peter complained (to her) about the food.
She said nothing (to her parents).
He spoke English (to them).
shout at can be used when the subject is angry with the other person:
He shouted at me to get out of his way.
compare with He shouted to me which means he raised his voice because I was at a distance.

90 Time and date: at, on, by, before, in

A **at, on**
at a time:
at dawn *at six* *at midnight* *at 4.30 .*
at an age:
at sixteen/at the age of sixteen
She got married at seventeen.
on a day/date:

on Monday *on 4 June* *on Christmas Day*

Exceptions

at night

at Christmas, *at Easter* (the period, not the day only)

on the morning/afternoon/evening/night of a certain date:

We arrived on the morning of the sixth.

It is also, of course, possible to say:

this/next Monday etc., any Monday, one Monday

B **by, before**

by a time/date/period = at that time or before/not later than that date. It often implies 'before that time/date':

The train starts at 6.10, so you had better be at the station by 6.00.

by + a time expression is often used with a perfect tense, particularly the future perfect (see 216):

By the end a/July I'll have read all those books.

before can be preposition, conjunction or adverb:

Before signing this . . . (preposition)

Before you sign this . . . (conjunction)

I've seen him somewhere before. (adverb) (See 195 B, 342.)

C **on time, in time, in good time**

on time = at the time arranged, not before, not after:

The 8.15 train started on time. (It started at 8.15.)

in time/in time for + noun = not late; in good time (for) = with a comfortable margin:

Passengers should be in time for their train.

I arrived at the concert hall in good time (for the concert). (Perhaps the concert began at 7:30 and I arrived at 7:15.)

D **on arrival, on arriving, on reaching, on getting to**

on arrival/on arriving, he . . . = when he arrives/arrived, he ...

on can also be used similarly with the gerund of certain other verbs (chiefly verbs of information):

On checking, she found that some of the party didn't know the way.

On hearing/Hearing that the plane had been diverted, they left the airport.

The **on** in the last sentence could be omitted. (See 277.)

E **at the beginning/end, in the beginning/end, at first/at last**

at the beginning (of)/at the end (of) = literally at the beginning/end:

At the beginning of a book there is often a table of contents.

At the end there may be an index.

in the beginning/at first = in the early stages. It implies that later on there was a change:

In the beginning/At first we used hand tools. Later we had machines.

in the end/at last = eventually/after some time:

At first he opposed the marriage, but in the end he gave his consent.

91 Time: from, since, for, during

from, since and for

from is normally used with **to** or **till/until**:

Most people work from nine to five

from can also be used of place:

Where do you come from?

since is used for time, never for place, and means 'from that time to the time referred to'. It is often used with a present perfect or past perfect tense (see 185-8,194).

He has been here since Monday, (from Monday till now)

He wondered where Ann was. He had wit seen her since their quarrel.

since can also be an adverb (see 37, 185-8):

He left school in 1983. I haven't seen him since.

since can also be a conjunction of time:

He has worked for us ever since he left school.

It is two years since I last saw Tom = last saw Tom two years ago/I haven't seen Tom for two years.

(For since with other types of clause, see 338.)

for is used of a period of time: **for six years, for two months**, **for ever**:

Bake it/or two hours.

He traveled in the desert for six months.

For + a period of time can be used with a present perfect tense or past perfect tense for an action which extends up to the time of speaking:

He has worked here for a year. (He began working here a year ago and still works here.)

for used in this way is replaceable by **since** with the point in time when the action began:

He has worked here since this time last year.

during and **for**

during is used with known periods of time, i.e. periods known by name, such as Christmas, Easter or periods which have been already refilled:

during the Middle Ages *during 1941*

during the summer (of that year)

during his childhood

during my holidays

The action can either last the whole period or occur at some time within period:

It rained all Monday but stopped raining during the night. (at some point of time)

He was ill for a week, and during that week he ate nothing.

for (indicating purpose) may be used before known periods:

I went there/I hired a car/I rented a house for my holidays/for the summer.

for has various other uses:

He asked for £5. *I Raid £1 for it.*

I bought one for Tom. (See 88.)

for can also be a conjunction and introduce a clause (see 330).

92 Time: **to, till/until, after, afterwards** (adverb)

A **to** and **till/until**

to can be used of time and place; **till/until** of time only.

We can use **from** ... **to** or **from** . . . **till/until**:

They worked from five to ten/from five till ten. (at five to ten would mean 'at 9:55'.)

But if we have no from we use till/until, not to:

Let's start now and work till dark. (to would not be possible here.)

till/until is often used with a negative verb to emphasize lateness:

We didn't get home till 2 a.m.

He usually pays me cm Friday but last week he didn't pay me till the following Monday.

till/until is very often used as a conjunction of time:

We 'll stay here fill it stops raining.

Go on till you come to the level crossing.

But note that if 'you come to' is omitted, the till must be replaced by to:

Go on to the level crossing.

*B **after** and **afterwards** (adverb)*

after (preposition) must be followed by a noun, pronoun or gerund:

Don't bathe immediately after a meal/after eating.

Don't have a meal and bathe immediately after it.

If we do not wish to use a noun/pronoun or gerund, we cannot use **after**, but must use **afterwards** (= **after that**) or **then**:

Don't have a meal and bathe immediately afterwards.

They bathed and afterwards played games/played games afterwards or

They bathed and then played games.

afterwards can be used at either end of the clause and can be modified by **soon, immediately, not long** etc.:

Soon afterwards we got a letter.

We got a letter not long afterwards.

after can also be used as a conjunction:

After he had tuned the piano it sounded quite different.

93 Travel and movement: **from, to, at, in, by, on, into, onto, off, out, out of**

A We travel **from** our starting place to our destination:

They flew/drove/cycled/walked from Paris to Rome.
When are you coming back to England?

We also send/post letters etc. to people and places. (But see note on home below.)

B **arrive at/in, get to, reach** (without preposition)

We **arrive** in a town or country, **at** or **in** a village, at any other destination:

They arrived in Spain/in Madrid.
I arrived at the hotel/at the airport/at the bridge/at the crossroads.

get to can be used with any destination, and so can reach:

He got to the station just in time for his train.
I want to get to Berlin be fore dark.
They reached the top of the mountain before sunrise.

get in (**in** = adverb) can mean 'arrive at a destination'. It is chiefly used of trains:

What time does the train gel in? (reach the terminus/our station)

Note also get there/back (there, back are adverbs).

home

We can use a verb of motion etc. + home without a preposition:

I took us an hour to get home.
They went home by bus.

But if **home** is immediately preceded by a word or phrase a preposition is necessary:

She returned to her parents' home.

We can **be/live/stay/work** etc. **at home, at + . . . + home** or **in + . . . + home**. But in cannot be followed directly by home:

You can do this sort of work at home or at/in your own home.

Transport: **by, on, get in/into/on/onto/off/out of**

We can travel by car (but **in** the/my/Tom's car), **by** bus/train/plane/helicopter/hovercraft etc. and **by** sea/air. We can also travel **by** a certain route, or **by** a certain place (though via is more usual):

We went by the M4. *We went via Reading.*

We can walk or go **on** foot. We can cycle or go **on** a bicycle or **by** bicycle. We can ride or go **on** horseback.
We get **into** a public or private vehicle, or get **in** (adverb).
We get **on/onto** a public vehicle, or get **on** (adverb).
But we go **on board** a boat (= embark).
We get **on/onto** a horse/camel/bicycle.
We get **out of** a public or private vehicle, or get **out** (adverb).
We get **off** a public vehicle, a horse, bicycle, etc., or get **off** (adverb).
get in/into/out/out of can also be used of buildings, institutions and countries instead of **go/come/return** etc. when there is some difficulty in entering or leaving, in and out here are used as adverbs.

I've lost my keys! How are we going to get into the flat/to get in? (adverb)
The house is on fire! We had better get out! (adverb)
It's difficult to get into a university nowadays.

F Giving directions: ***at, into, to*** *etc. (prepositions),* ***along, on*** *(prepositions and adverbs) and* ***till*** *(conjunction):*

Go along the Strand till you see the Savoy on your right.
The bus stop is just round the comer.
Turn right/left at the Post Office/at the second traffic lights.
Go on (adverb) past the post office.
Turn right/left into Fleet Street.
Take the first/second etc. turning on/to the right or on/to your right.
Go on (adverb) to the end of the road. (till could not be used here.)
You will find the bank on your left halfway down the street.
When you come out of the station you will find the bank opposite you/in front of you.
Get out (of the bus) at the tube station and walk on (adverb) till you come to a pub.
Get off (the bus! and walk back (adverb) till you come to some traffic lights.

Be careful not to confuse to and till (see 92 A).

94 at, in; in, into; on, onto

A **at** and **in**

(For **arrive at/in**, see 93 B.)

at

We can be **at** home, **at** work, **at** the office, **at** school, **at** university, **at** an address, **at** a certain point e.g. **at** the bridge, **at** the crossroads, **at** the bus-stop.

in

We can be **in** a country, a town, a village, a square, a street, a room, a forest, a wood, a field, a desert or any place which has boundaries or is enclosed.

But a small area such as a square, a street, a room, a field might be used with at when we mean 'at this point' rather than 'inside'.

We can be in or at a building, in means inside only; at could mean inside or in the grounds or just outside. If someone is 'at the station' he could be in the street outside, or in the ticket office/waiting room/restaurant or on the platform.

We can be **in** or **at** the sea, a river, lake, swimming pool etc.

in here means actually in the water:

The children are swimming in the river.

at the sea/river/lake etc. means 'near/beside the sea'. But **at** sea means 'on a ship'.

B **in** and **into**

in as shown above normally indicates position.

into indicates movement, entrance:

They climbed into the lorry. *I poured the beer info a tankard.*

Thieves broke info my house/My house was broken into.

With the verb **put**, however, either **in** or **into** can be used:

He put his hands in/into his pockets.

in can also be an adverb:

Come in = Enter. *Get in* (into the car).

C **on** and **onto**

on can be used for both position and movement:

He was sitting on his case. *Snow fell on the hills.*

His name is on the door. *He went on board ship.*

onto can be used (chiefly of people and animals) when there is movement involving a change of level:

People climbed onto their roofs. *We lifted him onto the table.*

The cat jumped onto the mantelpiece.

on can also be an adverb:

Go on. *Come on.*

95 above, over, under, below, beneath etc.

A **above** and **over**

above (preposition and adverb) and over (preposition) can both mean 'higher than' and sometimes either can be used:

The helicopter hovered above/over us.

Flags waved above/over our heads.

But over can also mean 'covering', 'on the other side of', 'across' and 'from one side to the other':

We put a rug over him.

He lives over the mountains.

There is a bridge over the river.

all over + noun/pronoun can mean 'in every part of:

He has friends all over the world.

above can have none of these meanings.

over can mean 'more than' or 'higher than'.

above can mean 'higher than' only.

Both can mean 'higher in rank'. But He is over me would normally mean 'He is my immediate superior', 'He supervises my work', above would

Bot necessarily have this meaning.

we have a bridge over a river, *above the bridge* means 'upstream'.
over can be used with meals/food/drink:
They had a chat over a cup of tea. (while drinking tea)
in the combination **take** + a time expression + **over** + noun/pronoun,
over can mean 'to do/finish' etc.:
He doesn't fake long over lunch/to eat his lunch.
He took ages over the job. (He took ages to finish it.)
above can also be an adjective or adverb meaning 'earlier' (in a book, article etc.):
the above address (the previously mentioned address)
see B above (the previously mentioned section B)

B **below** and **under**
below (preposition and adverb) and under (preposition) can both mean 'lower than' and sometimes either can be used. But **under** can indicate contact:
She put the letter under her pillow.
The ice crackled under his feet.
With **below** there is usually a space between the two surfaces:
They live below us. (We live on the fourth floor and they live on the third.)
Similarly: *We live above them.* (See A above.)
below and **under** can mean 'junior in rank'. But *He is under me* implies that I am his immediate superior, **below** does not necessarily have this meaning.
(Both **over** and **under** can be used as adverbs, but with a change of meaning,)

C **beneath** can sometimes be used instead of **under**, but it is safer to keep it for abstract meanings:
He would think it beneath him to tell a lie. (unworthy of him)
She married beneath her. (into a lower social class)

D **beside, between, behind, in front of, opposite**
Imagine a theatre with rows of seats: A, B, C etc.. Row A being nearest the stage.

		Stage	
Row A	Tom	Ann	Bill
Row B	Mary	Bob	Jane

This means that:
Tom is beside Ann; Mary is beside Bob etc.
Ann is between Tom and Bill; Bob is between Mary and Jane.
Mary is behind Tom; Tom is in front of Mary.
But if Tom and Mary are having a meal and Tom is sitting at one side of the table and Mary at the other, we do not use **in front of**, but say:
Tom is sitting opposite Mary or Tom is facing Mary.
But *He stood in front of me* could mean either *'He stood with his back to me*' or *'He faced me'*.
People living on one side of a street will talk of the houses on the other side as *the houses opposite* (us) rather than *the houses in front of us*. With other things, however, these restrictions do not apply:
She put the plate on the table in front of him.
She sat with a book in front of her.
Where's the bank? - There it is, just in front of you!
There's a car-park in front of/at the back of the hotel.
*E Don't confuse **beside** with **besides**.*
beside = at the side of:
We camped beside a lake.
besides (preposition) = in addition to/as well as:
I do all the cooking and besides that I help Tom.
Besides doing the cooking I help Tom.
besides (adverb) means (a) 'in addition to that/as well as that':

I do the cooking and help Tom besides

and (b) 'in any case/anyway':
We can't afford oysters. Besides, Tom doesn't like them. (See 327.)

F **between** and **among**
between normally relates a person/thing to two other people/things,

but it can be used of more when we have a definite number in mind;

Luxembourg lies between Belgium, Germany and France.

among relates a person/thing to more than two others; normally we have no definite number in mind:

He was happy to be among friends again.
a village among She hills

with could also be used instead of **among** in the last sentence above.

Also, of course, with a singular object:

He was with a friend.

Examples of other uses:

He cut it with a knife.
Don't touch it with bare hands.
The mountains were covered with snow.
I have no money with me/on me.
He fought/quarreled with everyone.

In descriptions:

the girl with red hair
the boy with his hands in his pockets
the man with his back to the camera/with his feet on his desk

but and **except** (prepositions)

These have the same meaning and are interchangeable.

but is more usual when the preposition + object is placed immediately rafter nobody/none/nothing/nowhere etc;

Nobody but Tom knew the way.
Nothing but the best is sold in our shops.

except is more usual when the preposition phrase comes later in the sentence:

Nobody knew the way except Tom

and after *all/everybody/everyone/everything/everywhere* etc.

but is more emphatic than **except** after *anybody/anything/anywhere* etc.:

You can park anywhere but/except here. (You can't park here.)

but and **except** take the bare infinitive (see 98).

For **but for** in conditional sentences, see 226. For **but** as a conjunction, see 326.)

96 Prepositions used with adjectives and participles

Certain adjectives and past participles used as adjectives can be followed by a preposition + noun/gerund. (For verbs + prepositions, see 97.)

Usually particular adjectives and participles require particular prepositions. Some of these are given below; others can be found by consulting a good dictionary, which after any adjective will give the prepositions that can be used with it.

about, at, for, in, of, on, to, with used with certain adjectives and participles:

absorbed in	*involved in*
according to	*keen on*
accustomed to (see 163)	*liable for/to*
afraid of (27 B, 271)	*nervous of*
anxious for/about (27 C)	*owing to (27 A)*
ashamed of	*pleased with*
aware of (27 P)	*prepared for*
bad at/for	*proud of*
capable of	*ready for*
confident of	*responsible for/to*
due to/for (27 A)	*scared of*
exposed to	*sorry for/about (27 B)*
fit for	*successful in*
fond of	*suspicions of*
frightened of/at	*terrified of*
good at/for	*tired of*
interested in	*used to (163)*

He was absorbed in his book.
She is afraid/frightened/scared of the dark.
According to Tom it's 2.30. (Tom says it's 2:30.)
He is bad/good at chess, (a bad/good player)
Running is bad/good for you. (unhealthy/healthy)
They are very keen on golf.
Drivers exceeding the speed limit are liable to a fine.
The management is not responsible for articles left in customers' cars.
I'm sorry for your husband. (I pity him.)
I'm sorry for forgetting the tickets.
I'm sorry about the tickets.

(For good/kind etc. + of, It was kind of you to wait, see 26 B.)

97 Verbs and prepositions

A large number of verb + preposition combinations are dealt with in chapter 38. But there are a great many other verbs which can be followed by prepositions and some of these are listed below. More can be found in any good dictionary.

accuse sb of	*insist on*
apologize (to sb) for	*live on (food/money)*
apply to sb/for sth	*long for*
ask for/about	*object to*
attend to	*occur to*
beg for	*persist in*
believe in	*prefer sb/sth to sb/sth*
beware of	*prepare for*
blame sb for	*punish sb for*
charge sb with (an offence)	*quarrel with sb about*
compare sth with	*refer to*
comply with	*rely on*
conform to	*remind sb of*
consist of	*resort to*
deal in	*succeed in*
depend on	*suspect sb of*
dream of	*think of/about*
fight with sb for	*wait for*
fine sb for	*warn sb of/about*
hope/or	*wish for*

Do you believe in ghosts?
They were charged with receiving stolen goods.
You haven't complied with the regulations.
For a week she lived on bananas and milk.
It never occurred to me to insure the house.
They persisted in defying the Saw.
When arguments failed he resorted to threats.

Notice also **feel like** + noun/pronoun = feel inclined to have something:
Do you feel like a drink/a meal/a rest?
feel like + gerund = feet inclined to do something:
I don't feel like walking there.
(For like used in comparisons, see 21 G-I,)
Passive verbs can of course be followed by **by** + agent; but they can also be followed by other prepositions:
The referee was booed by the crowd.
The referee was booed for his decision/for awarding a penalty.

98 Gerunds after prepositions

A It has already been stated in 86 that verbs placed immediately after prepositions must be in the gerund form:

He left without paying his bill.
I apologize/or not writing before.
She insisted on paying/or herself.
Before signing the contract, read the small print.

(See also 259.)

A few noun + preposition + gerund combinations may also be noted:

There's no point in taking your car if you can't park.
What's the point of taking your car if you can't park?
Is there any chance/likelihood of his changing his mind?
Have you any objection to changing your working hours?
I am in favour of giving everyone a day off.

B The only exceptions to the gerund rule are except and but (preposition), which take the bare infinitive:

I could do nothing except agree.
He did nothing but complain.

However, if but is used as a conjunction, it can be followed directly by either full infinitive or gerund:

Being idle sometimes is agreeable, but being idle all the time might become monotonous.
To be idle sometimes is agreeable, but to be idle all the time etc.

99 Prepositions/adverbs

Many words can be used as either prepositions or adverbs:

He got off the bus at the comer. (preposition)
He got off at the comer. (adverb)

The most important of these are **above, about, across, along, before, behind, below, besides, by, down, in, near, off, on, over, past, round, since, through, under, up**:

They were here before six. (preposition)
He has done this sort of work before. (adverb)
Peter is behind us. (preposition)
He's a long way behind. (adverb)
She climbed over the wall. (preposition)
You 'll have to climb over too. (adverb)
When the meeting was over the delegates went home. (adverb; here over = finished)
The shop is just round the comer. (preposition)
Come round (to my house) any evening. (adverb)
He ran up the stairs. (preposition)
He went up in the lift. (adverb)

Many of these words are used to form phrasal verbs (see chapter 38):

The plane took off. (left the ground)
He came round. (recovered consciousness)

10 Introduction to verbs

100 Classes of verbs

A There are two classes of verbs in English:
The auxiliary verbs (auxiliaries): *to be, to have, to do; can, could, may, might, must, ought, shall, should, will, would; to need, to dare* and *used*.
All other verbs, which we may call ordinary verbs:

to work to sing to pray

B *be, have, do, need* and *dare* have infinitives and participles like ordinary verbs, but *can, could, may, might, must, ought, shall, should, will* and *would* have neither infinitives nor participles and therefore have only a restricted number of forms. (For *used*, see 162 A.)

Before studying auxiliaries it may be helpful to consider ordinary verbs, most of whose tenses are formed with auxiliaries.

Ordinary verbs

101 Principal parts of the active verb

	Affirmative	Negative
Present infinitive	to work	not to work
Present continuous infinitive	to be working	not to be working
Perfect infinitive	to have worked	not to have worked
Perfect continuous infinitive	to have been working	not to have been working
Present participle and gerund	working	not working
Perfect participle and gerund	having worked	not having worked
Past participle	worked	

In regular verbs the simple past and the past participle are both formed by adding **d** or **ed** to the infinitive. Sometimes the final consonant of the infinitive has to be doubled, e.g. slip, slipped (see spelling rules, 355). For irregular verbs, see 364.
The present participle and gerund are always regular and are formed by adding **ing** to the infinitive. The rule concerning the doubling of the final consonant of the infinitive before adding **ing** applies here also (see spelling rules, 355).

102 Active tenses

A	Form		
Present		simple	he works (see 172)
		continuous	he is working (164)
		perfect	he has worked (182)
		perfect continuous	he has been working (190)
	Past	simple	he worked (175)
		Continuous	he was working (178)
		perfect	he had worked (194)
		perfect continuous	he had been working (197)
	Future	simple	he will work (207)
		continuous	he will be working (211)
		perfect	he will have worked (216)
		perfect continuous	he will have been working (216)
	Present	conditional	he would work (219)
		conditional continuous	he would be working (219)
	Perfect	conditional	he would have worked (220)
		conditional continuous	he would have been working

B Affirmative contractions

The auxiliaries **be, have, will, would** are contracted as follows:

am	'm	have	've	will	'll
is	's	has	's	would	'd
are	're	had	'd		

Note that **'s** can be **is** or **has** and **'d** can be **had** or **would**:

He's going = He is going.
He's gone = He has gone.
He'd paid = He had paid.
He'd like a drink = He would like a drink.

These contractions are used after pronouns, **here, there**, some question words (see 104), and short nouns:

Here's your pen. The twins've arrived.
The car'd broken down.

Affirmative contractions are not used at the end of sentences:

You aren't in a hurry but I am. (I'm would not be possible here.)

shall/should, was and **were** are not written in a contracted form but are often contracted in speech to /ʃl, ʃěd, wěz/ and /wě(r)/.

C Stress

Auxiliaries used to form tenses are normally unstressed. The stress falls on the main verb.

103 Negatives of tenses

A The simple present tense: third person singular *does not/doesn't* + infinitive; other persons *do not/don't* + infinitive.

The simple past tense negative for all persons is *did not/didn't* + infinitive.

Contractions are usual in speech:

He does not/doesn't answer letters.
They do not/don't live here.
I did not/didn't phone her.
She did not/didn't wait/or me.

The negative of all other tenses is formed by putting not after the auxiliary.

Contractions are usual in speech:

He has not/hasn't finished.
He would not/wouldn't come.

B Negative contractions

The auxiliaries **be, have, will, would, shall, should, do** are contracted as follows:

am not	*'m not*
is not	*isn't or 's not*
are not	*aren't or 're not*

I'm not going and Tom isn't going/Tom's not going.
We aren't going/We're not going.

have not and **has not** contract **to haven't** and **hasn't**, but in perfect tenses **'ve not** and **'s not** are also possible:

We haven't seen him/We've not seen him.
He hasn't/He 's not come yet.

will not contracts to **won't**, though **'ll not** is also possible, **shall not** contracts to **shan't**:

I won't go/I'll not go till I hear and I shan't hear till tomorrow.

Other verb forms are contracted in the usual way by adding **n't**.

Negative contractions can come at the end of a sentence:

I saw it but he didn't.

C In English a negative sentence can have only one negative expression in it. Two negative expressions give the sentence an affirmative meaning:

Nobody did nothing means that everyone did something.

So never, no (adjective), *none, nobody, no one, nothing, hardly, hardly ever* etc. are used with an affirmative verb. We can say:

He didn't eat anything or *He ate nothing.*
He doesn't ever complain or *He never complains.*
We haven't seen anyone or *We have seen no one.*
They didn't speak much or *They hardly spoke at all/They hardly ever spoke.*

104 Interrogative for questions and requests

A Simple present tense interrogative: *does he/she/it* + infinitive;
do I/you/we/they + infinitive.
Simple past tense interrogative: did + subject •+• infinitive.

Does Peter enjoy parties? Did he enjoy Ann's party?

In all other tenses the interrogative is formed by putting the subject after the auxiliary:
Have you finished? Are you coming?

B Contractions of **be, have, will, would, shall, should** and **do** in the interrogative

After *how, what, who, where, why,* the above auxiliaries can be contracted as shown in 102:

How will/How 'll he get there? What has/What's happened?

After when, is and will can be contracted:

When is/When's he coming?

After *which*, **will** can be contracted:
Which will/Which 'll you have?

When the verb comes first as in A above, it is not written in contracted form except in negative interrogative forms- But in speech it is usually contracted.

C The interrogative form is used for questions, but it is not used:

1 When the question is about the identity of the subject:
Who told you? What happened?

2 In indirect speech:
He said, 'Where does she live?' = He asked where she lived.

3 If we place before the question a prefix such as *Do you know. Can you tell me, I want to know, I'd like to know, I wonder/was wondering, Hare you any idea, Do you think*:
What time does it start? but *Have you any idea what time if starts?*
Where does Peter live? but *I wonder where Peter lives.*
Will I have to pay duty on this? but *Do you think I'll have/Do you know if I'll have to pay duty?*

D Requests are usually expressed by the interrogative:
Can/Could you help me? Will/Would you pay at the desk?
Would you like to come this way?

Would you mind moving your car?

But here again, if before the request we put a phrase such as *I wonder/was wondering* or *Do you think*, the verb in the request changes from interrogative to affirmative:
Could you give me a hand with this? but
I wonder/was wondering/wondered if you could give me a hand or

Do you think you could give me a hand?

In indirect speech the problem does not arise, as indirect requests are expressed by a verb such as **ask** with object + infinitive:
He asked me to give him a hand.

E The interrogative is used in question tags after a negative verb:
You didn't see him, did you? *(See 110.)*

F When, for emphasis, words/phrases such as *never, rarely, seldom, only when, only by, not only, not till* are placed first in a sentence the following main verb is put into the inverted (= interrogative) form:
Only when we landed did we see how badly the plane had been damaged. *(See 45.)*

105 Negative interrogative

A This is formed by putting **not** after the ordinary interrogative:

Did you not see her? Is he not coming?

But this form is almost always contracted:

Didn't you see her? Isn't he coming?

Note that **not** is now before the subject.

am I not? has an irregular contraction: *aren't I?*

The negative interrogative is used when the speaker expects or hopes for an affirmative answer:

Haven't you finished yet?
Don't you like my new dress?
CHILD : Can't I stay up till the end of the programme?
I could wait ten minutes. ~ Couldn't you wait a little longer?

The negative interrogative is also used in question tags after an affirmative sentence:

You paid him, didn't you?
She would like to come, wouldn't she? *(See 110.)*

Auxiliary verbs

106 Auxiliaries and modal auxiliaries

Principal auxiliaries	Modal auxiliaries		Semi-modals
to be	can	could	to need
to have	may	might	to dare
to do	must	had to	used
ought			
shall	should		
will	would		

Auxiliaries help to form a tense or an expression, hence the name.
They combine with present or past participles or with infinitives to form the tenses of ordinary verbs:

I am coming. He has finished. I didn't see them.

They combine with infinitives to indicate permission, possibility, obligation, deduction etc. as will be shown in the following chapters:

He can speak French. You may go. We must hurry.

107 Auxiliaries: forms and patterns

A be, have and do (the principal auxiliaries)

Infinitive	Present tense	Past tense	Past participle
to be	am. is, are	was	been
to have	have, has	had	had
to do	do, does	did	done

1 In the negative and interrogative, be and do follow the auxiliary pattern:
Negative, verb + **not**:
He isn't coming. It did not matter.
Interrogative, subject + verb:
Was he waiting? Does she see us?

2 have normally follows the auxiliary pattern:

Has he (got) to go?

but sometimes uses do/did forms:

Does he have to go?

3 be takes the full infinitive:

They are to wait for us at the station.

have takes the full infinitive except in two constructions (see 119 A. 120).

do takes the bare infinitive: *Did he write?*

4 **be, have** and **do**, when used as auxiliaries, require a participle or infinitive, though in answers, comments etc. this is often understood but not mentioned:

Have you seen it? ~ Yes, I have (seen it).

5 **be** (see 115), **have** and **do** can also be used as ordinary verbs with independent meanings; i.e. **have** can mean 'possess' (see 122), do can mean 'perform/occupy oneself' etc. (see 126).

be or **have** or **do** can then be the only verb in a sentence:

He is lazy. He has no job. He does nothing.

do is then conjugated with **do/did**:

What do you do in the evenings?

and have can be conjugated in either way:

Have you (got) time?/Do you have time?

B **can, could, may, might, must, ought, will, would, shall** and **should** (the modal auxiliaries)

Modal verbs have no final 9 in the third person singular:

I must, he must *I can, he can*

They always form their negative and interrogative according to the auxiliary pattern:

will not ought not. . .
will he . . . ? ought he . . . ?

They have no proper past tenses; four past forms exist, **could, might should, would**, but they have only a restricted use. Modal verbs have no infinitives or participles and therefore cannot be used in the continuous tenses. All modal verbs except ought are followed by the bare infinitive:

You should pay but You ought to pay. A modal verb always requires an infinitive, though sometimes this is understood but not mentioned:

Can you understand? — Yes, lean (understand).

', need, dare and used (the semi-modals)

. When used as auxiliaries, need and dare can conform to the modal

' pattern. They then take the bare infinitive:

He need not wait.

But they can also use the do/did forms, and then take the full infinitive with to:

He doesn't dare to interrupt. They didn't need to wait. (See 149.)

need and dare can also be used as ordinary verbs, and are then inflected and have the usual participles:

He needs help. They dared me to jump.

', used, sometimes referred to as used to. is used only in the past. For its negative and interrogative it usually follows the auxiliary pattern:

/ used not/usedn't to go.

But though technically used has no infinitive, the forms didn't use to and did he/she etc. use to? are quite often heard.

Use of auxiliaries in short answers, agreements etc.

Auxiliaries are extremely important in conversation because in short answers, agreements, disagreements with remarks, additions to remarks etc. we use auxiliaries instead of repeating the original verb.

108 Auxiliaries in short answers

Questions requiring the answer **yes** or **no**, i.e. questions such as *Do you smoke?* or *Can you ride a bicycle?*, should be answered by **yes** or **no** and the auxiliary only. The original subject, if a noun, is replaced by a pronoun. Pronoun subjects may change as shown:

Do you smoke? ~ Yes, I do (not Yes, I smoke). Is that Ann? - Yes, it is/No it isn't. Did the twins go? ~ Yes, they did/No, they didn't. Will there be an exam? — Yes, there will/No, there won't. If there is more than one auxiliary in the question, the first should be used in the answer:
Should he have gone? ~ Yes, he should. Questions with must I/he etc. or need I/he etc. are answered Yes, you/he etc. must or No, you/he etc. needn't:
Must I/Need I take all these pills? ~ Yes, you must/No, you
needn't. (See 147.) An answer with yes or no without the auxiliary would be less polite.

109 Agreements and disagreements with remarks

A Agreements with affirmative remarks are made with yes/so/of course + + affirmative auxiliary. If there is an auxiliary in the first verb this is repeated. If there is no auxiliary do, does or did is used:
He works too hard. ~ Yes, he does.
There may be a strike. ~ Yes, there may.
Living in London will be expensive. - (Yes.) of course it will.
That's Ann! ~ Oh, so it is.

B Disagreements with negative remarks are made with yes/oh yes +• affirmative auxiliary. The auxiliary is stressed here-/ won't have to Ray. ~ Oh yes, you 'will! My alarm didn 't ring', ~ Oh yes, it 'did! There isn't any salt in this. — Yes, there 'is. Bread won't make me fat. — Oh yes. it 'will.

C Agreements with negative remarks are made with no + negative auxiliary:
It wouldn't take long to get there. ~ No, it wouldn't. I haven't paid you yet. ~ No, you haven't. The boys mustn't be late. ~ No, theymustn't. The door can't have been locked. ~ No, it can't.

D Disagreements with affirmative remarks are expressed by no/oh no + negative auxiliary:
Ann'll lend it to you. ~ Oh no, she won't.
Peter gets up too late. ~ No, he doesn't.
There is plenty of time. ~ No, there isn't.
Prices are coming down. ~ Oh no, they aren't.
but can be used when disagreeing with an assumption. The assumption may be expressed by a question:

Why did you travel first class? ~ But I didn't!

110 Question tags

These are short additions to sentences, asking for agreement or confirmation.
After negative statements we use the ordinary interrogative:
You didn't see him, did you?
Ann can't swim, can she?
That isn't Tom. is it?
After affirmative statements we use the negative interrogative:

Peter helped you, didn't he?

Mary was there, wasn't she?
Negative verbs in the tags are usually contracted.
Irregular: *I'm late, aren't I?*
Note that let's has the tag shall: *Let's go, shall we?*
The subject of the tag is always a pronoun.
Examples of question tags after negative statements:
Peter doesn't smoke, does he?
Ann isn't studying music, is she?
Bill didn't want to go, did he?
James wasn't driving the car, was he?
You haven't ridden a horse for a long time, have you?
The twins hadn't seen a hovercraft be/we, had they?
They couldn't understand him, could they?
There wasn't enough time, was there?

People shouldn't drop litter an pavements, should they?
Ann hasn't got colour TV, has she?

Note that statements containing words such as *neither, no* (adjective), *none, no one, nobody*, *nothing, scarcely, barely, hardly, hardly ever*, *seldom* are treated as negative statements and followed by an ordinary interrogative tag:

No salt is allowed, is it?
Nothing was said, was it?
Peter hardly ever goes to parties, does he?

When the subject of the sentence is *anyone, anybody, no one, nobody, neither* we use the pronoun they as subject of the tag:

I don't suppose anyone will volunteer, will they?
No one would object, would they?
Neither of them complained, did they?

Question tags after affirmative statements

With the simple present tense we use don't/doesn't? in the tag. With the simple past tense we use didn't?

Edward lives here, doesn't he?
You found your passport, didn't you?

After all other tenses we just put the auxiliary verb into the negative interrogative:

Mary's coming tomorrow, isn't she?
Peter's heard the news, hasn't he?

Remember that **'s = is** or **has**, and **'d = had** or **would**:

Peter'd written before you phoned, hadn't he?
Mary 'd come if you asked her, wouldn't she?
You'd better change your wet shoes, hadn't you?
The boys'd rather go by air, wouldn't they?

With *everybody, everyone, somebody, someone* we use the pronoun they:

Everyone warned you, didn't they?
Someone had recognized him, hadn't they?

Negative interrogative tags without contractions are possible but the word order is different:

You saw him, did you not?

This is a much less usual form.

D Intonation

When question tags are used the speaker doesn't normally need information but merely expects agreement. These tags are therefore usually said with a falling intonation, as in statements. Sometimes, however, the speaker does want information. He is not quite sure that the statement is true. and wants to be reassured. In this case the question tag is said with a rising intonation and the important word in the first sentence is stressed, usually with a rise of pitch. (See *Structure Drills* 1, 11-13.)

111 Comment tags

A These are formed with auxiliary verbs, just like question tags, but after an affirmative statement we use ah ordinary interrogative tag; after a negative statement we use a negative interrogative tag. A comment tag can be added to an affirmative statement. It then indicates that the speaker notes the fact.

You saw him, did you? = Oh, so you saw him.
You've found a job, have you? = Oh, so you've found a job.

Comment tags can also be spoken in answer to an affirmative or negative statement:

I'm living in London now. ~ Are you?
I didn't pay Paul. ~ Didn't you?

When used in this way the tag is roughly equivalent to *Really!* or *Indeed!*

B The chief use of these tags is to express the speaker's reaction to a statement. By the tone of his voice he can indicate that he is interested, not interested, surprised, pleased, delighted, angry, suspicious, disbelieving etc.

The speaker's feelings can be expressed more forcibly by adding an auxiliary:

I borrowed your car. ~ Oh, you did, did you?
I didn't think you'd need it. ~ Oh, you didn't, didn't you?

i.e. before an ordinary interrogative we use an affirmative auxiliary verb, before a negative interrogative we use a negative verb.

Again, the meaning depends on the tone of voice used. The speaker may be very angry, even truculent; but the form could also express admiration or amusement.

112 Additions to remarks

Affirmative additions to affirmative remarks can be made by subject + auxiliary + **too/also** or by **so** + auxiliary + subject, in that order. If there is an auxiliary in the first remark, it is repeated in the addition:

Bill would enjoy a game and Tom would too/so would Tom.

If there is no auxiliary, do/does/did is used in the addition; i.e. instead of saying *Bill likes golf and Tom likes golf (too)* we can say *Bill likes golf and Tom does too/so does Tom*.

The additions can, of course, be spoken by another person:

The boys cheated! ~ The girls did too!/So did the girls!

I'm having a tooth out tomorrow. ~ So'm I!

When both remarks are made by the same person, both subjects are usually stressed. When they are made by different people the second subject is stressed more strongly than the first.

Affirmative additions to negative remarks are made with but + subject + auxiliary:

Bill hasn't got a license. ~- But Donald has.

She doesn't eat meat but her husband does.

The horse wasn't hurt but the rider was.

Negative additions to affirmative remarks are made with **but** + subject + negative auxiliary:

He likes pop music but I don't.

You can go but I can't.

Peter passed the test but Bill didn't.

Negative additions to negative remarks are made with **neither/nor** + auxiliary + subject:

Tom never goes to concerts, neither does his wife.

Ann hasn't any spare time. ~ Neither/Nor have I.

I didn't get much sleep last night. ~ Neither/Nor did I.

These additions can also be made with subject + negative auxiliary + either:

He didn't like the book; I didn't either.

They don't mind the noise; we don't either.

Alternatively, we can use the whole verb + object, if there is one, + either:

I didn't like it either. We don't mind it either.

11 be, have, do

be as an auxiliary verb

113 Form and use in the formation of tenses

A Form
Principal parts: be, was, been Gerund/present participle: being
Present tense:
Affirmative Negative Interrogative
lam/I'm I am nut/I'm not am!? you are/you're you are not/you're m! are you?
he is/he's he is not/he's not is he? she is/she's she is not/she's not is
she? it is/il's it is not/it's nut is if? we are/we're we are not/we're not are
we? you are/you're ynu are not/you're not are you? they are/they're they are
not/they're not are they?
Alternative negative contractions: you aren't, he isn't etc. Negative interrogative: am I
not/aren't f? we you not/aren't you? is he not/isn't he? etc.
Past tense:
Affirmative Negative Interrogative
/ was I was not/wasn't was I? you were ym were not/weren't were you?
he/she/it was he/she/it was not/wasn't was he/she/it? we were me were
not/weren't were we? you were you were not/weren't were you? they were
they were not/weren 'i were they?
Negative interrogative: was I not/wasn't I? were you not/weren't you? was he not/wasn't he?
etc.
The forms are the same when be is used as an ordinary verb. Other tenses follow the
rules for ordinary verbs. But be is not normally used in the continuous form except in
the passive and as shown in 115 B.

114 Use to form tenses

• fae is used in continuous active forms: He is working/will be working etc., and in all passive
forms: He was followed/is being/allowed.
Note that be can be used in the continuous forms in the passive:
• Active: They are carrying him. Passive: He is being carried.
'(For be used in the continuous with adjectives, see 115 B.)
^te + infinitive
The be + infinitive construction, e-g, / am to go, is extremely important and can be used in the
following ways:
To convey orders or instructions:
No one is to leave this building without the permission of the police.
(no one must leave)
, He is to stay here till we return, (he must stay) '. This is a rather impersonal way of giving
instructions and is chiefly used
•..With the third person. When used with you it often implies that the , speaker is passing on
instructions issued by someone else. The ," difference between (a) Stay here, Tom and fb)
You are to stay here, Tom ;„ is that in (a) the speaker himself is ordering Tom to stay, while in
(b) he
' may be merely conveying to Tom the wishes of another person. ^'.This distinction
disappears of course in indirect speech, and the be +
infinitive construction is an extremely useful way of expressing > indirect commands,
particularly when the introductory verb is in ;' the present tense:
'.:.'. He says, 'Wait fill I come.' = i He says that we are to wait till he comes.
, or when there is a clause in front of the imperative:
; He said, 'If I fall asleep at the wheel wake me up.' =
~. He said that if he fell asleep at the wheel she was to wake him up.
;" It is also used in reporting requests for instructions:
,'. •. 'Where shall I put it, sir?' he asked =
.',., , He asked where he was to put it. (See also 318 B.)

;' To convey a plan:
'•',, She is to be married next month.
;'.- The expedition is to start in a week's time.
^ilis construction is very much used in newspapers:
'^•^ The Prime Minister is to make a statement tomorrow. ^,;"1 headlines the verb be is often omitted to save space:
?'•" Prime Minister to make statement tomorrow. ^Sast forms:
ij,^!' He was to go. (present infinitive) ^ He was to have gone. (perfect infinitive)
The first of these doesn't tell us whether the plan was carried out or not. The second is used for an unfulfilled plan, i.e. one which was not
carried out:
The Lord Mayor was to have laid the foundation stone but he was
taker, ill last night so the Lady Mayoress is doing it instead.
B was/were + infinitive can express an idea of destiny:
He received a blow on the head. It didn't worry him at the time hut it was to be very troublesome later, (turned out to be/proved
troublesome) They said goodbye, little knowing that they were never to meet again.
(were destined never to meet)
C be about + infinitive expresses the immediate future:
They are about to start. (They are just going to start/They are on
the point of starting.) just can be added to make the future even more immediate:
They are just about to leave.
Similarly in the past:
He was just about to dive when he saw the shark. be on the point of + gerund has the same meaning as be about + infinitive, but is a shade more immediate.

be as an ordinary verb

Form: as for be used as an auxiliary (see 113 A).

115 be to denote existence, be + adjective

A be is the verb normally used to denote the existence of, or to give information about, a person or thing:
Tom is a carpenter. The dog is in the garden.
Malta is an island. The roads were rough and narrow.
Gold is a metal. Peter was tall and fair.
B be is used to express physical or mental condition:
/ am hot/cold. He was excited/calm. They will be happy/unhapfy.
With certain adjectives, e.g. quiet/noisy, good/bad, wise/foolish, it is possible to use the continuous form of be, e.g. Tom is being foolish, lo imply that the subject is showing this quality at this time. Compare ToW is being foolish, which means Tom is talking or acting foolishly now, with Tom is foolish, which means that Tom always acts or talks foolishly. Similarly, The children are being quiet means they are playing quietly now, but The children are quiet might mean that they usually play quietly.
Other adjectives include:

annoying generous/mean cautious/rash helpful/unhelpful ': clever/stupid
irritating difficult mysterious economical/extravagant optimistic/pessimistic
formal polite funny selfish/unselfish
... With some of these, e.g. stupid, difficult, funny, polite, the continuous " form may imply that the subject is deliberately acting in this way:
You are being stupid may mean You are noi trying to understand.
He is being difficult usually means He is raising unnecessary 'objections.
He is being funny usually means He is only joking. Don't ' believe him.
She is just being polite probably means She is only pretending to '(C admire your car/ciothes/house etc.
beis used for age:
How old are you? ~ I'm ten/I am ten years old. (not I'm ten years}
How old is the tower? ~ It is 400 years old. (years old must be used

when giving the age of things.)

Size and weight are expressed by be:
tier How tall are you?/What is your height? ~ I am 1'65 metres. \ How high are we flow? - We're about 20,000 feet. ;'; What is your weight? or What do you weigh/How much do you weigh? ~ I am 65 kilos or / weigh 65 kilos.
be is used for prices:
How much is this melon? or What does this melon cost? -~ It's £1. ^ The best seats are (= cost) £25.

I. Ignore is/are, there was/were etc.
When a noun representing an indefinite person or thing is the subject of I.'tfie verb be we normally use a there + be + noun construction. We |;can say A policeman is at the door but There is a policeman at the door
Juld be more usual.
te that, though there appears to be the subject, the real subject is ' noun that follows the verb, and if this noun is plural the verb must plural too:

There are two policemen at the door.

the above sentences both constructions (noun + be and there + J|yfc + noun) are possible.
But when be is used to mean exist/happen/ ^•rtt place the there construction is necessary:

There is a mistake/There are mistakes in this translation.

ese sentences could not be rewritten A mistake is/Mistakes are etc.
In the following examples (R) is placed after the example when the there construction is replaceable by noun/pronoun + verb:
There have been several break-ins this year.
There will be plenty of room for everyone.
There were hundreds of people on the beach. (R)
B there can be used similarly with someone/anyone/no one/iSmnething etc.:
There's someone on the phone for you. (R)
C there + be + something/nothing/anything + adjective is also
possible:
/s there anything wrong (with your car)? (R) ~
No, there's nothing wrong with it. (R) There's something odd/strange about this letter.
D A noun or someone/something etc. could be followed by a relative clause:
There's a film I want to see. There's something I must say.
or by an infinitive:
There's nothing to do. (nothing that we can do/must do; see 250)
E The there construction can be used with another auxiliary + be:
There must be no doubt about this. There may be a letter for me. or with seem •+• be, appear •+• be:
There seems to be something wrong here.
F there used as above is always unstressed.
Be careful not to confuse there used in this way with there, stressed,
used as an adverb:
^There's a man I want to see. (He is standing by the door.)
Compare with:
There's a man I want to see. (This man exists.)

117 it is and there is compared

For uses of it is, see 67. Some examples may help to prevent confusion between the two forms:

1 it is + adjective; there is + noun:
It is foggy or There is a fog.
It was very wet or There was a lot of rain.
It won't be very sunny or There won't be much sun.

2 it is, there is of distance and time:
It is a long way to York.

There is a long way still to go. (We have many miles still to go.) It is time to go home. (We always start home at six and it is six, now -i There is time for us to go home and come back here again before the film starts. (That amount of time exists.)

3 it is, used for identity, and there is + noun/pronoun:

There is someone at the door. I think ii's the man to read the mete ft' There's a key here. Is it the key of the safe?

• *it is, used in cleft sentences (see 67 D). and there is:*

It is the grandmother who makes the decisions, (the grandmother, not any other member of the family)

... and there's the grandmother, who lives in the granny-flat. ', , (the grandmother exists)

have as an auxiliary verb

Form and use in the formation of tenses

A Form

Principal parts; have, had, had
Gerund/present participle: having
Present tense:

Affirmative	*Negative*	*Interrogative*
have/I've	I have not/haven't	haw I?
you have/you 've	you have not/haven't	haveyw? fe^ he has/he's
he has nnt/hasn 't	has he?	
has/she's	she has not/hasn't	has she? I 'f.it has/it's
it has not/hasn't	has it? ta'- we have/we've	we have not/haven't
have we?		
you have/you 're	you have nut/haven't	have you?
they have/they've	they have not/haven't	have they?

Alternative negative contractions (chiefly used in perfect tenses): I've not, \ you've not, he's not etc.

Negative interrogative; have I not/haven't I? have you not/haven't you? I 'has he not/hasn 't he? etc.

Past tense:
Affirmative: had/'d for all persons
Negative: had not/hadn't for all persons
'interrogative: had I? etc.

Negative interrogative: had I not/hadn't I? etc.

pther tenses follow the rules for ordinary verbs.
Uae to form tenses K'httve is used with the past participle to form the following tenses:

Present perfect: / have worked.
Past perfect: / had worked.
Future perfect: / will/shall have worked.
Perfect conditional: I would/should have worked.

119 have + object + past participle

A This construction can be used to express more neatly sentences of the type 'I employed someone to do something for me'; i.e. instead of saying / employed someone to clean my car we can say / had my car cleaned, and instead of I got a man to sweep my chimneys ('got' here = paid/persuaded etc.), we can say / had my chimneys swept. Note that this order of words, i.e. have •+• object + past participle, must be observed as otherwise the meaning will be changed: He had his hair cut means he employed someone to do it, but He had cut his hair means that he cut it himself some time before the time of speaking (past perfect tense).

When have is used in this way the negative and interrogative of its present and past tenses are formed with do:

Do you have your windows cleaned every month? ~ I don't have them cleaned; I clean them myself.

He was talking about having central heating put in. Did he have it put in in the end? It can

also be used in continuous tenses:
I can't ask you to dinner this week as I am having my house painted at the moment.
While I was having my hair done the police towed away my car.
The house is too small and he is having a room built on. get can be used in the same way as have above but is more colloquial. get is also used when we mention the person who performs the action:
She got him to dig away the snow. (She paid/persuaded him
to dig etc.)
(have with a bare infinitive can be used in the same way, e.g. She had him dig away the snow, but the get construction is much more usual in British English.)
B The have + object + past participle construction can also be used colloquially to replace a passive verb, usually one concerning some accident or misfortune:
His fruit was stolen before he had a chance to pick it can be replaced by
He had his fruit stolen before he had a chance to pick it, and
Two of his teeth were knocked out in the fight can be replaced by
He had two of his teeth knocked out. It will be seen that, whereas in A above the subject is the person who orders the thing to be done, here the subject is the person who suffers as a result of the action. The subject could be a thing:
The houses had their roofs ripped off by the gale. get can also replace have here:
The cat got her tail singed through sifting too near the fire. (The
cat's tail was singed etc.)
had better + bare infinitive
had here is an unreal past: the meaning is present or future:
I had/I'd better ring him at once/tomorrow. (This would be a good
thing to do/the best thing to do.) ,*' The negative is formed with not after better:
You had belter not miss the last bus. (It would be unwise to miss it, .:H or I advise/warn you not to miss it.) "; had here is usually contracted after pronouns and in speech is •i sometimes so unstressed as to be almost inaudible. I^had better is not normally used in the ordinary interrogative, but is ^.sometimes used in the negative interrogative as an advice form:
Hadn 't you better ask him first? =
Wouldn 't it be a good thing to ask him first?
you had better is a very useful advice form:
You had better fly. (It would be best for you to fly, or I advise t1 you to fly.)
In indirect speech had better with the first or third person remains I^Bnchanged; had better with the second person can remain unchanged fi. Or be reported by advise + object + infinitive:
He said, 'I'd better hurry' = He said (that) he 'd better hurry. ^ He said, 'Ann had better hurry' = I?" He said (that) Ann had better hurry. He said, 'You'd better hurry' = He said (that) I'd better hurry or }, He advised me to hurry.

feave + object + present participle
expression is often used with a period of future time:
I'll have you driving in three days. (As a result of my efforts, you
be driving in three days.)
can also be used in the past or present:
He had them all dancing. (He taught/persuaded them all to dance.) II'1- / have them all talking to each other. (I encourage/persuade them all !• to talk to each other.) H.Itcan be used in the interrogative:
Will you really have her driving in three days? often used in the negative.
If you give all-night parties you 'II have the neighbours complaining.
(The neighbours will complain/will be complaining.)
If film-stars put their numbers in telephone books they'd have
everyone ringing them up. (Everyone would ring/would be ringing
P... ^themup.)
'II have in the first example conveys the idea 'this will happen to
Similarly they'd have in the second example conveys the idea 'this
ld happen to them'.
If you don't put a fence round your garden you'll have people walking
in and stealing your fruit. (People will walk in and steal/will be
walking in and stealing it, i.e. this will happen to you.) The construction can be used in the interrogative and negative:

When they move that bus stop, you won't have people sitting on yow steps waiting/or the bus any more.

This structure is chiefly used for actions which would be displeasing to the subject of have, as in the above example, but it can be used for an action which is not displeasing:

When he became famous, he had people stopping him in the street and asking/or his autograph =
When he became famous, people stopped him in the street and asked for his autograph.

But I won't have + object + present participle normally means '1 won't/don't allow this':

/ won't have him sitting down to dinner in his overalls. I make him

change them. (1 won't/don't allow him to sit down etc.) This use is restricted to the first person. (For have used for obligation, see chapter 14.)

have as an ordinary verb

122 have meaning 'possess'

A This is the basic meaning of have:

He has a black beard.
I have had this car for ten years.
She will have £4,000 a year when she retires.

B Form

Affirmative Negative Interrogative
Present have (got) or haven't Igot) or have I (got)? etc. or
have don't haw do you have? etc. Past had hadn 't (got) or had you (got)? etc. or didn 't have did yew have? etc.

Note that the negative and interrogative can be formed in two ways.

C have is conjugated with do for habitual actions:

Do you have earthquakes in your country? - Yes, but we dan't have them very often.

When there is not this idea of habit, the have not (got)/have you (got) forms are more usual in Britain, whereas other English-speaking countries (notably America) use the do forms here also. An American might say:

Can you help me now? Do you have time?

where an Englishman would probably say:
Can you help me now? Have you got time?
do forms can therefore be used safely throughout, but students living in , Britain should practise the other forms as well.
".got can be added to have/have not/have you etc. as shown above. It t^makes no difference to the sense so it is entirely optional, but it is quite SB common addition- got, however, is not added in short answers or i question tags:
'„ Have you gut an ice-axe? ~ Yes, I have.
^ She's got a nice voice, hasn 't she?
|" have (affirmative) followed by got is usually contracted:
S'i I've got my ticket. He's got a flat in Pimiico. t-'The stress falls on got- The 've or 's is often barely audible. i^ihave (affirmative) without got is often not contracted. The have or I'has must then be audible.
^ P
l^have meaning 'take' (a meal), 'give' (a party) etc,
pave can also be used to mean:
Intake' (a meal/food or drink, a bath/a lesson etc.)
I'give' (a party), 'entertain' (guests)
|*ite(icounter' (difficulties/trouble)
llWperience', 'enjoy', usually with an adjective, e.g. good.
^,," We have lunch at one.
I", They are having a party tomorrow.
1^',' Did you have trouble with Customs?
El hope you 'II have a good holiday.
e when used as above obeys the rules for ordinary verbs:
never followed by got.
legative and interrogative are made with do/did.

in be used in the continuous tenses.
We are hawing breakfast early tomorrow, (near future)
She is having twenty people to dinner next Monday, (near future)
I can't answer the telephone; I am having a bath. (present)
How many English lessons do you have a week? ~ I have six.
You have coffee at eleven, don't you? (habit)
Ann has breakfast in bed. but Mary doesn 't. (habit)
Will you have some tea/coffee etc.? (This is an invitation. We can also omit Will you and say Have some tea etc.)
Did you have a good time at the theatre? (Did you enjoy yourself?)
Have a good time! (Enjoy yourself!)
/ am having a wonderful holiday.
I didn 't have a very good journey.

Do

124 Form

Principal parts: do, did, done Gerund/present participle: doing
Present tense:
Affirmative Negative Interrogative
I do I do nol/don'(do I? you do you do not/don't doyou? he does he dws not/doesn't does he? she does she does not/doesn't does she? it does it does not/doesn 't does it? we do we do wit/don't do we? you do you do not/don't doyou? they do they do not/don't do they?
Negative interrogative: do I not/dan't I? du yuu not/don't you? does he not/doesn't he? etc.
do as an ordinary verb has the affirmative shown above. But for negative and interrogative we add the infinitive do to the above forms:
What does/did she do? (See 126.)
Past tense:
Affirmative: did for all persons
Negative: did not/didn't for all persons
Interrogative: did he? etc.
Negative interrogative: did he not/didn't he? etc.
do is followed by the bare infinitive:
J don't know. Did you see it? He doesn 'I like me.

125 do used as an auxiliary

A do is used to form the negative and interrogative of the present simple and past simple tenses of ordinary verbs (see 103-5):
He doesn't work. He didn't work. Does he work? Did he work?
B It is possible to use do/did + infinitive in the affirmative also when we wish to add special emphasis- It is chiefly used when another speaker has expressed doubt about the action referred to:
You didn't see him. ~ I'didseehim. (The Ad is strongly stressed in speech. This is more emphatic than the normal / saw him.) I know that you didn 't expect me to go. but I 'did go.
C do is used to avoid repetition of a previous ordinary verb:
short agreements and disagreements (see 109):
' Tom talks too much. - Yes, he does/No, he doesn't.
Hedidn'tgo. - No, he didn't/Oh yes, hedid. In additions (see 112):
He likes concerts and so do we. (Note inversion.) , He lives here but I don't. He doesn't drive but I do.
'• In question tags (see also 110):
He lives here, daesn 't he? He didn 't see you, did he?
do is used in short answers to avoid repetition of the main verb:
Do you smoke? ~ Yes, I do (not Yes, I smoke)/No, I don't. ;; Did you see him? ~ Yes, I did/No, I didn't. (See 108.)

Similarly in comparisons (see 22): He drives faster than I do.

do + imperative makes a request or invitation more persuasive:
Do come with us. (more persuasive than Come with us.) 1: Do work a little harder. Do help rue, please.
can similarly be used as an approving or encouraging affirmative ^'iinswer to someone asking for approval of, or permission to do, some Inaction: Shall I write to him? ~ Yes, do or Do alone.

126 do used as an ordinary verb

do, like **have**, can be used as an ordinary verb. It then forms its It-negative and interrogative in the simple present and past with do/did:
do not do do you do? don't you do? H':.' he does not do does he do? doesn 't he do? ||i I did not do did he do? didn't he do? etc. |||t-.can be used in the continuous forms, or simple forms:
What are you doing (now)? ~ I'm doing my homework. HI. What's he doing tomorrow? (near future) |H; What does he do in the evenings? (habit) (; Why did you do it? ~ I did it because I was angry. I||ow do you do? is said by both parties after an introduction:
HOSTESS: Mr Day, may I introduce Mr Dams? Mr Daws, Mr Day. Both men say How do you do? Originally this was an enquiry about the |Hher person's health. Now it is merely a formal greeting. pme examples of other uses of do:
He doesn't do what he's told. (doesn't obey orders)
S What do you do for a living? ~ I'm an artist.
How's the new boy doing? (getting on)
I haven't got a torch. Will a candle do? (= be suitable/adequate) ~
A candle won't do. I'm looking for a gas leak. (A candle would be unsuitable.)
Would £10 do? (= be adequate) ~ No, it wouldn't. I need £20.
do with (in the infinitive only) can mean 'concern'. It is chiefly used the construction it is/was something/nothing to do with + noun/ onoun/gerund:ft's nothingtodo withyou = It doesn't concern you.

12 **may** and **can** for permission and possibility

Permission

127 **may** used for permission: forms

may for all persons in the present and future.
might in the conditional and after verbs in a past tense.
Negative: may not/mayn't, might not/mightn't
Interrogative: may I? might I? etc.
Negative interrogative: may I not/mayn't I? might I not/mightn't I? etc,
Other forms are supplied by allow, be allowed.
may is followed by the bare infinitive.

128 can used for permission: forms

can for all persons in the present and future.
could for past and conditional.
Negative: cannot/can't, could not/couldn't
Interrogative: can I? could I? etc.
Negative interrogative: can I not/can't I? could ! not/couldn't I? etc.
Other forms are supplied by allow, be allowed.
can is followed by the bare infinitive.

129 **may** and **can** used for permission in the present or future

A First person

I/we can is the most usual form:
I can take a day off whenever I want. I/we may meaning 'I/we have permission to . . .' is possible:
I may leave the office as soon as I haw finished. But this is not a very common construction and it would be much more usual to say:
I can leave/I'm allowed to leave . . . I/we may/might is a little more usual in indirect speech:
'You may leave when you 've finished,' he says/said =
He says we may leave/He said we might leave . . . But in colloquial speech we would use can/could:
He says we can lease/He said we could leave.

B Second person

Here may is chiefly used when the speaker is giving permission. You may park here means 'I give you permission to park'. It does not normally mean 'The police etc. allow you to park' or 'You have a right to park'.
can can be used as an informal alternative to may here. But it can also be used to express the idea of having permission. *You can park here* can mean *'I allow it/The police allow it/You have aright to park here'*.
Similarly You can take two books home with you can mean 'I allow it/The library allows it' and You can't eat sandwiches in the library can mean 'I don't allow it/The librarian doesn't allow it' or 'It isn't the proper thing to do'.
could can be used when there is an idea of condition:
Why don't you ring him? You can/could use my phone.
could is also used in indirect speech introduced by a verb in a past tense:
He said I could use his phone.

C Third person ;': may can be used as in B above when the speaker is giving permission:
He may fake my car. (I give him permission to take it.)
They may phone the office and reverse the charges. (I give them permission.)
But it is chiefly used in impersonal statements concerning authority and <!•' permission:
In certain circumstances a police officer may (•= has the right to) ask WK"' a driver to take a breath test.

If convicted, an accused person may (= has the right to) appeal. y , SCRABBLE RULES: No letter may be moved after it has been played.

informal English can/can't would be used:
He can take the car.
They can phone the office.
A police officer can ask a driver . . .
An accused person can appeal.
No letter can be moved . . .

130 **could** or **was/were allowed to** for permission in the past

could can also express general permission in the past:
On Sundays we could (.= were allowed to) stay up late.
When a particular action was permitted and performed we use was/were allowed instead of **could**:
I had a visa so I was allowed to cross the frontier.
Wuldn't however can be used a little more widely than could:
We couldn 't bring our dog into the restaurant. ll'The opposite of this would be:
We were allowed to bring etc.
For perfect tenses and passives allowed must be used:
Since his accident he hasn't been allowed to drive. As a child he had been allowed to do exactly what he liked.
(For might/could in indirect speech, see 129 A.)

131 Requests for permission (see also 283)

A can I?, could I?, may I?, might I? are all possible and can be used for the present or future, can I? is the most informal. could I? is the most generally useful of the four, as it can express both formal and informal requests.
may I? is a little more forma) than could I? but can also be used for both types of requests.
might I? is more diffident than may I? and hdicates greater uncertainty about the answer.
B The negative interrogative forms can't I? and couldn't I? are used ta show that the speaker hopes for an affirmative answer:
Can't I stay up till the end of the programme? Couldn't I pay by cheque? may and might are not used in this way,
C Answers to can I/could I requests will normally be:
Yes, you can. Yes, of course (you can). No, you can't. Affirmative answers to may I/might I requests are normally:
Yes, you may. Yes. of course (you may). For a negative answer No, you may not is possible but it would normally be replaced by a milder expression:
I'd rather you didn't. I'm afraid not.
D Questions about permission are expressed by can or am/is/are allowed to in the present and by could or was/were allowed to in the past:
Can Tom use the car whenever he likes?
Is Tom allowed to use the car . . . ?
Could students choose what they wanted to study?
Were students allowed to choose . . . ?

Possibility

132 **may/might** for possibility

A Form

may/might for present and future.
might in the conditional and after verbs in the past tense.
Negative: may not/mayn't, might not/mightn't
Interrogative: see E below
Infinitive: to be + likely

nay/might + present infinitive can express possibility in the present . or future:
He may/might tell his wife. (Perhaps he tells/will tell his wife.)
He may/might emigrate. (Perhaps he will emigrate.)
Ann may/might know Tom's address. (Perhaps Ann knows etc.) Similarly with the continuous infinitive:
He may/might be waiting at the station. (Perhaps he is waiting at
the station.)
He may/might be waiting at the station when we arrive. (Perhaps he will be waiting etc.)
may or might for present or future possibility Normally either can be used. might slightly increases the doubt.
Note that in speech we can also indicate increased doubt by stressing ^nay/might. Tom 'may lend you the money (with a strong stress on may) implies that this is not very likely. Tom might Send you the money (with a strong stress on might) implies 'I don't think this is at all likely/
I think it is unlikely'-
might must be used in the conditional and when the expression is introduced by a verb in the past tense:
If you invited him he might come. I knew we might have to wait at the frontier. He said he might hire a car. (indirect speech)
may/might in the negative and interrogative
The negative presents no problems:
He may/might not believe your story. (Perhaps he won't/doesn't believe your story.)
The interrogative is normally expressed by do you think? or a construction with be + likely:
Do you think he's alone?
Do you think he believes your story? ,:, Is it likely thai the plane will be late?
Is the plane likely to be late?
may? for possibility very seldom introduces a sentence. It may be placed later on:
When may we expect you? What may be the result of the new tax? But a construction with be + likely or think is more usual:
When are you likely to arrive?
What do you think the result will be?
might? is just possible;
Might they be waiting outside the station?
But *Could they be waiting?* or *Do you think they are waiting?* would be more usual (see 134).
may/might in the affirmative, however, can form part of a question:
Do you think he may/might not be able to pay? (See 104 for this type of question.)

133 may/might + perfect infinitive

A This is used in speculations about past actions:
He may/might have gone = It is possible that he went/has gone or
Perhaps he went/has gone. might must be used, as shown in 132 D, when the main verb is in a
past tense:
He said/thought that she might have missed the plane. might, not may, must be used when the uncertainty no longer exists:
He cane home alone. You shouldn't have let him do that; he might
have got lost. (But he didn't get lost.)
So in the sentence:
You shouldn't have drunk the wine: it may/might have been drugged
the words it may have been drugged would indicate that we are still uncertain whether it was drugged or not. it might have been drugged could have the same meaning but could also mean that we know it
wasn't drugged. might, not may, is also used when the matter was never put to the
test, as in:
Perhaps we should have taken the other road. It might have been
quicker. It's a good thing you didn't lend him the money. You might never
have got it back. Sentences of this kind are very similar to the third type of conditional sentence:
// we had taken the other road we might have arrived earlier.

B may/might can be used in conditional sentences instead of will/would to indicate a possible instead of a certain result:
If he sees you he will stop. (certain) If he sees you he may stop. (possible)
Similarly:
I/you poured hot water into it, it might crack and If you had left it there someone might have stolen it.
(See 223 B.)

134 **could** as an alternative to may/might

A **could be** can be used instead of may/might be:
I wonder where Tom is. ~ He may/might/could be in the library. (Perhaps he is in the library.)
Similarly when be is part of the continuous infinitive:
I wonder why Bill isn't here? ~ He may/might/cauld still be waiting for a bus. (Perhaps he is still waiting for a bus.)
And when be is part of a passive infinitive:
Do you think the plane will be on time? ~ I don't know. It may/ might/could be delayed by fog. (Perhaps it will be delayed by fog.)
In the interrogative we can use either **could** or **might**:
Might/Could he be waiting/or us at the station? (Do you think he is waiting . . , ?)
In the negative, though, there is a difference of meaning between **could** and **may/might**:
He may/might not be driving the car himself. (Perhaps he isn't
driving the car himself.)
But He couldn't be driving the car himself espressos a negative '. deduction. It means 'This is impossible- He can't drive'.
could + the perfect infinitive of any verb can be used instead of .: .^Slay/might + perfect infinitive (possibility):
£„ / wonder how Tom knew about Ann's engagement. ~
He may/might/could have heard it from Jack. (Perhaps he heard it from Jack.)
As in A above, in the interrogative we can use might or could:
Could/Might the bank have made a mistake? (Do you think it is I' possible that the bank (has) made a mistake?)
But in the negative the meanings differ:
Ann might not have seen Tom yesterday (perhaps she didn't see him) but
Ann couldn't have seen Tom yesterday, (negative deduction: perhaps Ann and Tom were in different towns)

135 **can** used to express possibility

General possibility
Subject + **can** can mean 'it is possible', i.e. circumstances permit (this is quite different from the kind of possibility expressed by **may**):
You can ski on the hills. (There is enough snow.)
We can't bathe here on account of the sharks. (It isn't safe.)
Can you get to the top of the mountain in one day? (Is it possible?)

can also express occasional possibility:
Measles can be quite dangerous. (Sometimes it is possible for them to be quite dangerous/Sometimes they are quite dangerous.)
The Straits of Dover can be very rough. (It is possible for the Straits ^^a.i,, to be rough; this sometimes happens.)
could is used in the past:
He could be very unreasonable. (Sometimes he was unreasonable; this was a possibility.)
can is used in this way in the present or past tense only, and chiefly in the affirmative.

13 **can** and **be able** for ability

136 **can** and **be able**: forms

can is used here in conjunction with be •+- the adjective able, which supplies the missing parts of can and provides an alternative form for the present and past tense. We have therefore the following forms:

Infinitive: to be able Past participle: been able

Affirmative Negative Interrogative

Future will/shall will/shall noi shall/will I be able? be able be able will he be able? etc.

Present can or cannot or can I? or
am able am no! able am I able? etc.

Past could or could not or could I? or
was able was ml able was I able? etc.

There is only one future form, for can is not used in the future except • to express permission.

In the conditional, however, we have two forms:

could and would be able. "

All other tenses are formed with be able according to the rules fur ordinary verbs:

Present perfect: have been able

Past perfect: had been able •*[Negative interrogative: cciutdyou not/couldn't you? were you not/weref*[1] *[you able? will you not/won't you be able? etc.*

;

can/be/win/shall not and have can be contracted in the usual way: | I wasn't able, he won't be able. I've been able. can is followed by the bare infinitive. be able is followed by the full infinitive.

137 can/am able, could/was able

A **can** and **be able**

1 **shall/will be able** is the only future form:

Our baby will be able to walk in a few weeks.

Either **can** or **am able** may be used in the present, **can** is the more usual:

Can you/Are you able to type?
I can't pay you today. Can you wait fill tomorrow? or
Could you wait? (request; see B2 below)

For the present perfect, however, we must use the be able form:

Since his accident he hasn't been able to leave the house.

B could

could can be used with a present meaning when there is an idea of condition:

Could you run the business by yourself? (if this was necessary)
Could he get another job? (if he left this one)
I could get you a copy. (if you want one)

In the first two examples **could** is replaceable by **would be able**.

could you? is a very good way of introducing a request. It is an alternative to would you? and a little more polite:

Could you show me the way/lend me £5/wait half an hour?
Could you please send me an application form?

couldn't you? is also useful:

HOUSEHOLDER: Could you come and mend a leak in a pipe?
PLUMBER: Would sometime next month suit you?
HOUSEHOLDER: Couldn't you came a little earlier?

Could and **was able** used for past ability

For ability only, either can be used:

When I was young I could/was able to climb any tree in the forest.

For ability + particular action, use **was able**:

Although the pilot was badly hurt he was able to explain what had happened. (He could and did explain.)

The boat capsized quite near the bank so the children were able to swim to safety. (They could and did swim.)

This rule, however, is relaxed in the negative when the action did not take place, and with verbs of the senses:

He read the message but he couldn't/wasn't able to understand it.
I could/was able to see him through the window.

had been able is the past perfect form:

He said he had lost his passport and hadn 't been able to leave the country.

(For could in reported speech, see 312.)

138 **could** + perfect infinitive

A This form is used for past ability when the action was not performed:

I could have lent you the money. Why didn't you ask me? (see also 154)

or when we don't know whether it was performed or not:

The money has disappeared! Who could have taken it?
Tom could have (taken it); he was here alone yesterday.

Compare:

He was able to send a message. (He sent it,)
He could have sent a message. (He didn't send it or we don't know whether he sent it or not. See also 135.)

B **could** + perfect infinitive can also express irritation at or reproach for the non-performance of an action:

You could have told me = I am annoyed/disappointed that you didn't tell me. You should have
told me.

There would be a strong stress on the word the speaker wishes to emphasize. (For **might** used in the same way, see 285.)

14 ought, should, must, have to, need for obligation

139 ought: forms

ought is a modal verb (see 107 B),
The same form can be used for present and future and for the past ';' when preceded by a verb in a past tense or followed by a perfect ' infinitive:
" / *ought to write to him today/tomorrow.* "• *I knew I ought to write to him. She said I ought to write. I know/knew that I ought to have written.* "'.*Negative; ought not/oughtn't*
Interrogative: ought I? etc.
Negative interrogative: ought I not/oughtn't I? etc.
ought takes the full infinitive, and to remind students of this, it is ' sometimes referred to as ought to.
^ "Questions or remarks with ought may be answered by should and " 'vice versa:
" *You ought to put in central heating. ~ Yes, I suppose I should.*

140 should: forms

should is also a modal verb.
Like ought, the same form can be used for present and future and
for the past when preceded by a verb in a past tense, should could
replace ought to in the above examples. :'. Negative: should not/shouldn't
Interrogative: should !? etc. . Negative interrogative: should I not/shouldn 't I? etc.
should is followed by the bare infinitive.
should and ought, used for obligation, normally have the same
meaning but should is the more usual form.
In conversation should/ought to can often be used alone, the infinitive
being understood but not mentioned:
You should paint/ought to paint your door. ~ Yes, I know ! should/ I know I ought to.

13 **can** and **be able** for ability

136 **can** and **be able**: forms

can is used here in conjunction with be + the adjective able, which supplies the missing parts of **can** and provides an alternative form for the present and past tense. We have therefore the following forms:
Infinitive: to be able
Past participle: been able

	Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
Future	will/shall	will/shall not	shall/will I be able?
be able	he able	will he be able? etc.	
Present	can or	cannot or	can I? or
am able	am not able	am I able? etc.	
Past	could or	could not or	could I? or
was able	was not able	was I able? etc.	

There is only one future form, for **can** is not used in the future except to express permission.
In the conditional, however, we have two forms:
could and *would be able*.
All other tenses are formed with be able according to the rules for ordinary verbs:
Present perfect: *have been able*
Past perfect: *had been able*
Negative interrogative: *could you not/couldn't you? were you not/weren't you able? will you not/won't you be able?* etc.
can/be/will/shall not and **have** can be contracted in the usual way:
I wasn't able, he won't be able, I've been able.
can is followed by the bare infinitive.

be able is followed by the full infinitive.

137 can/am able, could/was able

A **can** and **be able**

1 **shall/will be able** is the only future form:

Our baby will be able to walk in a few weeks.

2 Either **can** or **am able** may be used in the present, **can** is the more usual:

Can you/Are you able to type?
I can't pay you today. Can you wait fill tomorrow? or
Could you wait? (request: see B2 below)

3 For the present perfect, however, we must use the **be able** form:

Since his accident he hasn't been able to leave the house.

B **could**

1 **could** can be used with a present meaning when there is an idea of condition:

Could you run the business by yourself? (if this was necessary)
Could he get another job? (if he left this one)
I could get you a copy. (if you want one)

In the first two examples **could** is replaceable by **would be able**.

2 **could you?** is a very good way of introducing a request. It is an alternative to **would you?** and a little more polite:

Could you show me the way/lend me £5/wait half an hour?
Could you please send me an application form?

couldn't you? is also useful:

HOUSEHOLDER: *Could you come and mend a leak in a pipe?*
PLUMBER: *Would sometime next month suit you?*
HOUSEHOLDER: *Couldn't you came a little earlier?*

Could and **was able** used for past ability

For ability only, either can be used:

When I was young I could/was able to climb any tree in the forest.

For ability + particular action, use **was able**:

Although the pilot was badly hurt he was able to explain what had happened. (He could and did explain.)
The boat capsized quite near the bank so the children were able to swim to safety. (They could and did swim.)

This rule, however, is relaxed in the negative when the action did not take place, and with verbs of the senses:

He read the message but he couldn't/wasn't able to understand it.
I could/was able to see him through the window.

had been able is the past perfect form:

He said he had lost his passport and hadn't been able to leave the country.

(For **could** in reported speech, see 312.)

138 could + perfect infinitive

A This form is used for past ability when the action was not performed:

I could have lent you the money. Why didn't you ask me? (see also 154)

or when we don't know whether it was performed or not:

The money has disappeared! Who could have taken it?
Tom could have (taken it); he was here alone yesterday.

Compare:

He was able to send a message. (He sent it.)
He could have sent a message. (He didn't send it or we don't know whether he sent it or not. See also 135.)

B **could** + perfect infinitive can also express irritation at or reproach for the non-performance of an action:

You could have told me = I am annoyed/disappointed that you didn't tell me. You should have told me.

There would be a strong stress on the word the speaker wishes to emphasize. (For might used in the same way, see 285.)

14 **ought, should, must, have to, need** for obligation

139 **ought**: forms

ought is a modal verb (see 107 B).
The same form can be used for present and future and for the past when preceded by a verb in a past tense or followed by a perfect infinitive:

I ought to write to him today/tomorrow.
I knew I ought to write to him.
She said I ought to write.
I know/knew that I ought to have written.

Negative; *ought not/oughtn't*
Interrogative: *ought I?* etc.
Negative interrogative: *ought I not/oughtn't I?* etc.

ought takes the full infinitive, and to remind students of this, it is sometimes referred to as **ought to**.

Questions or remarks with **ought** may be answered by **should** and vice versa:

You ought to put in central heating. ~ Yes, I suppose I should.

140 **should**: forms

should is also a modal verb.
Like **ought**, the same form can be used for present and future and for the past when preceded by a verb in a past tense, **should** could replace **ought** to in the above examples.
Negative: *should not/shouldn't*
Interrogative: *should I?* etc.
Negative interrogative: *should I not/shouldn't I?* etc.
should is followed by the bare infinitive.
should and **ought**, used for obligation, normally have the same meaning but should is the more usual form.
In conversation **should/ought to** can often be used alone, the infinitive being understood but not mentioned:

You should paint/ought to paint your door. ~ Yes, I know I should/ I know I ought to.

141 **ought/should** compared to **must** and **have to**

A Differences in use

1 **ought/should** is used to express the subject's obligation or duty:

You should send in accurate income tax returns

or to indicate a correct or sensible action:

They shouldn't allow parking here; the street is too narrow.
This word is spelt wrongly. There should be another 's'.

Here there is neither the speaker's authority, as with **must**, or external authority, as with have to (see 145). It is more a matter of conscience or good sense:

PIANIST TO PUPIL: *You must practise at least an hour a day.*
PUPIL TO MUSICAL FRIEND: *I have to practise an hour a day!*
MUSICAL FRIEND: *You ought to/should practise for more than an hour.*

2 Another difference between **ought/should** and **must** and **have to** is that with **must** and **have to** we normally have the impression that the obligation is being or will be fulfilled. This is particularly the case with the first person but quite often applies to the other persons too. With **ought/should** we do not necessarily feel that the obligation is being or will be fulfilled. Quite often, especially in the first person, the reverse is the case.
If a driver says *I ought to/should go slowly here; it's a built-up area* he usually implies that he isn't going to go slowly. If he really intended to go slowly he would say, *I must go/I have to go/I will have to go slowly here.*

Similarly, if someone says *We must have a party to celebrate your engagement*, his friends are reasonably confident that there will be a party. But if he says *We should have a party ...* it is not so certain that the party will take place. His tone or expression might indicate that it will not be possible.

B Similarities in use

1 **should** (but not **ought**) can be used in formal notices and on information sheets etc.:

Candidates should be prepared to answer questions on . . .

Intending travellers should be in possession of the following documents . . .

On hearing the alarm bell, hotel guests should leave their rooms . . .

must could be used here without change of meaning, but **should** expresses the obligation more gently.

2 **ought** and **should** can express advice:

You ought to/should read this. It's very good.

But for more emphatic advice **must** is better:

You must read this. It's marvellous!

142 **ought/should** with the continuous infinitive

ought/should with the continuous infinitive expresses the idea that the subject is not fulfilling his obligations or that he is acting foolishly, rashly etc- or not acting sensibly, prudently etc.:

He ought to be studying for his exam. He shouldn't be spending all his time on the beach.

We should be wearing seat belts. (But we are not wearing them.)

I shouldn't be telling you this. It's supposed to be a secret.

143 **ought/should** with the perfect infinitive

This construction is used to express an unfulfilled obligation or a sensible action that was neglected. In the negative it expresses a wrong or foolish action in the past,

You ought to have told him that the paint on that seat was wet.

You should have turned his omelette; he likes it turned.

They ought to have stopped at the traffic lights.

She shouldn't have opened the letter; it wasn't addressed to her.

The Emergency Exit doors shouldn't have been blocked.

144 **must** and **have to**: forms

A **must**

must is a modal verb (see 107 B). It is used in the present or future.

Negative: *must not/mustn't*

Interrogative: *must I?* etc.

Negative interrogative: *must I not/mustn't I?* etc.

The past tense is supplied by *had to*.

must takes the bare infinitive.

It can express obligation and emphatic advice:

FATHER: *You must get up earlier in the morning.* (obligation)

You must take more exercise. Join a squash club. (advice)

B **have to**

Obligation			No obligation
Speaker's Authority	External authority		
Future	must	shall/will have to	shan't/won't have to
Present	must	have to*	don't/doesn't have to*
		have (got) to*	haven't (got) to*
Past	had to	had to	didn't have to
			hadn't (got) to

*See C below.

C Difference between the starred **have to** forms

have to (without **got**) and its negative **don't/doesn't have to** are the correct forms for habitual actions but can be used for single actions also, and are common in American English.

have (got) to and **haven't (got) to** are for single actions only:

TOM: / have to go to work every day except Sunday. But I don't have to work a full day on Saturday.
But on Sunday he could say:
I'm glad I haven't (got) to go to work today or
I'm glad I don't have to go to work today.

In the past **didn't have to** can be used for both habitual and single actions in the past.
hadn't (got) to is used more for single actions.
didn't have to is the more generally used form.
have to in the affirmative expresses obligation.
have to in the negative expresses absence of obligation. This can also be expressed by **need not, don't need** etc. (see 149).

145 Difference between **must** and **have to** in the affirmative

A **must** expresses obligation imposed by the speaker:

MOTHER: *You must wipe your feet when you come in.*

have to expresses external obligation:

SMALL BOY: *I have to wipe my feet every time I come in.*

B Second person examples

1 Speaker's authority

MOTHER: *You must wear a dress tonight. You can't go to the opera in those dreadful jeans.*
EMPLOYER: *You must use a dictionary. I'm tired of correcting your spelling mistakes.*
DOCTOR: *You must cut down on your smoking.*

2 External authority

You have to wear uniform on duty, don't you?
You have to train very hard/or these big matches, I suppose.
You'll have to get up earlier when you start work, won't you?
You'll have to cross the line by the footbridge.

C Third person examples

Here **must** is chiefly used in written orders or instructions:

RAILWAY COMPANY: *Passengers must cross the line by the footbridge.*
OFFICE MANAGER: *Staff must be at their desks by 9.00.*
REGULATION: *A trailer must have two rear lamps.*

When we are merely stating or commenting on another person's obligations we use **have to**:

In this office even the senior staff have to be at their desks by 9.00.
She has to make her children's clothes. She can't afford to buy them.
They'll have to send a diver dawn to examine the hull.

If we used **must** instead of **have to** above it might imply that the speaker had authority to order these actions. But **must** may be used when the speaker approves of an obligation:

A driver who has knocked someone down must stop. (The speaker thinks it is the driver's duty to stop.)

Or when the speaker feels strongly:

Something must be done to stop these accidents.

D First person examples

In the first person the difference between **must** and **have to** is less n' important and very often either form is possible:

TYPIST: *I must/will have to buy a dictionary.*

PATIENT: *I must/have to/will have to cut down on my smoking.*

But have to is better for habits:

I have to take two of these pills a day

and must is better when the obligations are urgent or seem important to the speaker:

I must tell you about a dream I had last night.

Before we do anything I must find my cheque book.

Some other examples (all persons)

You must come and see us some time. (This is quite a usual way of expressing a casual invitation.)

The children have to play in the street till their parents come home.

This sort of thing must stop! (The speaker either has authority or feels very strongly about it.)

You must write to your uncle and thank him for his nice present.

If there are no taxis we'll have to walk.

If your father was a poor man you 'd have to work.

We have to walk our dog twice a day.

NOTICE IN SHOP WINDOW: *Closing down sale! Everything must go!*

Affirmative obligations in the past: **had to**

Here the distinction between the speaker's authority and external authority cannot be expressed and there is only one form, **had to**:

I ran out of money and had to borrow from Tom.

You had to Ray duty on that, I suppose?

There were no buses so he had to walk.

146 **need not** and **must not** in the present and future

need not can be used for present and future. It has the same form for all persons, (See 148.) **need not** expresses absence of obligation. The speaker gives permission for an action not to be performed or sometimes merely states that an action is not necessary:

EMPLOYER: *You needn't make two copies. One will do.*

Give them this cheque. They needn't send me a receipt.

You needn't change (your clothes). Just come as you are.

must not expresses a negative obligation imposed by the speaker or very emphatic advice:

You mustn't repeat this to anyone.

NOTICE IN SHOP: *Staff must not smoke when serving customers.*

You mustn't leave your car unlocked. This place is full of thieves.

147 **need not, must not** and **must in** the present and future

DOCTOR: *You needn't go on a diet; but you must eat sensibly and you mustn't overeat.*

ZOO NOTICE: *Visitors must not feed the animals.*

RAILWAY NOTICE: *Passengers must not walk on the line.*

You mustn't drive fast. There is a speed limit here.

You needn't drive fast. We've plenty of time.

You needn't strike a match. I can see well enough.

You mustn't strike a match. This room is full of gas.

SCHOOL NOTICE: *The lifts must not be used during Fire Drill.*

You mustn't wear that dress again. You look terrible in yellow.
TEACHER: *You needn't read the whole book but you must read the first four chapters. You must cut down that dead tree or it will fall on your house.*
DOCTOR: *You mustn't take more than two of these pills at once. Three might be fatal.*
DOCTOR *(to patient's wife): If the pain has gone he needn't take any more of these.*

148 **need**: forms

A **need** can be both an auxiliary and an ordinary verb. As an auxiliary it is a semi-modal, i.e. it has both modal and 'ordinary verb' forms. As a modal, its forms are *need or need not/needn't* for all persons in the present and future and in indirect speech. (See C below.)
Interrogative: *need I?* etc.
Negative interrogative: *need I not/needn't I?* etc.
need conjugated as above takes the bare infinitive.

B **need** as an auxiliary is seldom used in the affirmative except when a negative or interrogative sentence is preceded by an expression which changes the negative or interrogative verb into an affirmative:
I needn't wear a coat or *I don't suppose I need wear a coat.*
Need I tell Tom? or *Do you think I need fell Tom?*
It is however sometimes used in fairly formal English with *hardly/scarcely* or *only*:
I need hardly say how pleased we are to welcome Mr X. (I needn't say . . .)
You need only touch one of the pictures for all the alarm bells to start ringing. (If you even touch one of the pictures all the bells . . .)

C **needn't'** in direct speech can be reported unchanged:
' You needn't pay till the 31st' he says/said = He says/said I needn't pay till the 31st.
(See also 325 C.)

D **need** can also be conjugated as an ordinary verb with negative forms as shown in 149 below. Corresponding **have to** forms are also shown. For interrogative forms, see 151.

need conjugated with **will/shall, do/does/did** etc. takes the full infinitive and is sometimes referred to as **need to**.

149 Absence of obligation; forms

	Speaker's authority	External authority
Future	need not	shan't/won't need to shan't/won't have to
Present	need not	don't/doesn't need to don 't/doesn't have to haven 't/hasn't got to
Past (see 150 B)	didn't need to didn't have to hadn't got to	

But see 148 C above for needn't in indirect speech.

shan't/won't need to = shan't/won't have to
don't/doesn't need to = don't/doesn't have to
didn't need to = didn't have to (but didn't have to is the more usual form)

There are no exact *need* equivalents of *haven't/hasn't got to* and *hadn't got to* as can be seen from the table.

150 Difference between **need not** and the other forms

As already stated, **need not** expresses the speaker's authority or advice:

You needn't write me another cheque, just change the date and initial it.
I'm in no hurry. He needn't send it by air. He can send it by sea.
You needn't do it by hand. I'll lend you my machine.
You needn't call me Mr Jones. We all use first names here.
COLLEGE LECTURER: *You needn't type your essays but you must write legibly.*

2 The other forms express external authority:

Tom doesn't have to wear uniform at school.
We don't have to type our essays but we have to write legibly.
When I'm an old age pensioner I won't have to pay any more bus fares.
Ann hasn't got to go/doesn't have to go to this lecture. Attendance is optional.
When I have a telephone of my own I won't have to waste time waiting outside these wretched telephone boxes.
Ann doesn't have to cook for herself. She works at a hotel and gets all her meals there.

3 Sometimes, however, **need not** can be used for external authority also, as an alternative to **won't/don't need to** or **won't/don't have to** forms. This is particularly common in the first person:

I needn't type/I won't/don't have to type this report today. Mr Jones said that there was no hurry about it.
Note, however, that though it is possible to use need not for a future habitual action:
I'm retiring. After Friday I need never go to the office again.

it is not possible to use it for a present habitual action:

I don't have to queue for my bus. I get on at the terminus. (need not could not be used here.)

B Past

Here the distinction between the speaker's authority and external authority disappears, and we have a choice of three forms: **didn't have to, didn't need to** and **hadn't got to**. There is no difference in meaning, but **hadn't got to** is not normally used for habitual actions.
didn't have to is the most usual form:

I didn't have to wait long. He was only a few minutes late.
When he was at university he didn't have to/need to pay anything for his keep, for he stayed with his uncle.

151 **must, have to** and **need** in the interrogative

	Asking the authority	External authority	
Future	must I? etc. need I? etc.	shall I/we have to? will he etc. have to?	shall I/we need to? will he etc. need to?
Present	must I? etc. need I? Etc.	do I etc. have to? does he etc. have to? have I etc. (got) to? has he etc. (got) to?	do I etc, need to? does he etc. need to?
Past		did he etc. have to? did he etc. need to? had he etc. gel to?	

Both **need?** and **must?** imply that the person addressed is the authority concerned. **need?** also implies that the speaker is hoping for a negative answer: *Must I go, mother?* and *Need I go, mother?* mean the same, but in the second question the speaker is hoping that his mother will say *No*. The other interrogative form of need, do I need? etc., can be used similarly. Note possible answers:

Shall I have to go? ~ Yes, you will/No, you won't.
Have I got to go? ~ Yes, you have/No, you haven't.
Does he have to go? ~ Yes, he does/No, he doesn't.
Need I go? ~ Yes, you must/No, you needn't.

Must I go? ~ Yes, you must/No, you needn't.

152 **needn't** + perfect infinitive

This structure is used to express an unnecessary action which was nevertheless performed:

I needn't have written to him because he phoned me shortly afterwards. (But I had written, thus wasting my time.)

You needn't have brought your umbrella for we are going by car. (You brought your umbrella unnecessarily.)

He needn't have left home at 6.00; the train doesn't start till 7.30. (So he will have an hour to wait.)

153 **needn't have (done)** compared with **didn't have/ need (to do)**

needn't have done: no obligation but action performed (unnecessarily), i.e. time wasted:

You needn't have watered the flowers, for it is going to rain. (You wasted your time.)

You needn't have written such a long essay. The teacher only asked for 300 words, and you have written 600.

He needn't have bought such a large house. His wife would have been quite happy in a cottage. (waste of money)

You needn't have carried all these parcels yourself. The shop would have delivered them if you had asked them.

didn't have/need to do: no obligation, and normally no action:

I didn't have to translate it for him for he understands Dutch.

I didn't have to cut the grass myself. My brother did it. (no obligation and no action)

Some people do use **didn't have to/didn't need to** for actions which were performed. The **have** or **need** is then usually stressed: *You didn't have to give him my name* would then mean "It wasn't necessary to give him my name, but you gave it to him". But the student is advised to use **needn't have** + past participle when an unnecessary action was performed:

You needn't have given him my name.

154 **needn't, could** and **should** + perfect infinitive

A **needn't** + perfect infinitive is often combined with **could** + perfect infinitive. The use of this combination is best shown by examples:

I wanted a copy of the letter, so I typed it twice. ~ You needn't have typed it twice. You could have used a carbon.

I walked up six/lights of stairs. ~ You needn't have walked up; you could haw taken the lift.

She stood in a queue to get an Underground ticket. ~ But she needn't have stood in a queue. She could have got a ticket from the machine.

B **needn't have** and **should have** compared

should or **ought to** could be used instead of need or could in all the examples in A above:

She shouldn't have stood in a queue. She should have got tickets from the machine.

But there is a difference in meaning:

She shouldn't have stood in a queue. (It was wrong or foolish of her to stand in a queue.)

She needn't have stood in a queue. (It was not necessary to do this, but she did it.)

shouldn't have (done) implies criticism.

needn't have (done) does not imply criticism.

155 **to need** as an ordinary verb, meaning 'require'

As shown in 149, **need** can be conjugated as an ordinary verb. It then has the normal regular forms, but no continuous tense.

to need can be used with an infinitive or with a noun/pronoun object;

I need to know the exact size.

How much money do you need? I need £5.

to need can also be used with the passive infinitive or the gerund in such sentences as:

Your hair needs to be cut/needs cutting.

The windows need to be washed/need washing.

want + gerund can be used instead of need here:

Your hair wants cutting.

15 **must, have, will** and **should** for deduction and assumption

156 **must** used for deduction

A Forms

Present

must + present infinitive: *He must live here*, or

must + continuous infinitive: *He must be living here*.

Past

must + perfect infinitive: *He must have lived here*, or

must + continuous perfect infinitive: *He must have been living here*.

Note the difference between the past forms of **must** used for deduction and the past equivalent of must used for obligation: had to.

must is not used for negative deduction (see 159) and is not normally used in the interrogative except when querying a deduction with must:

There's a lot of wise from upstairs. It must be Tom. ~ Why must it be Tom? Other people use that flat.

Examples

He has a house in London and another in Paris, so he must be rich.

I've had no sleep for 48 hours. - You must be exhausted.

He develops his own films. That must save him a lot of money.

I keep meeting him on the bus. He must live/must be living near by.

The police are stopping all cars. They must be looking for the escaped prisoner.

What explosion? I didn't hear any. ~ You must have heard it! The whole town heard it!

He must have taken sleeping pills last night. He didn't wake up till lunch time.

I waited under the clock! - So did I, but I didn't see you! We must have been waiting under different clocks.

It was a head-on collision, but the drivers weren't hurt. ~ They must have been wearing their seat belts.

157 **must** (deduction) compared to **may/might**

The difference is best seen by examples:

(a) Imagine that we have three keys on a ring and we know that one of these keys opens the cellar door. We might begin by picking one key and saying:

This may/might be the key. (Perhaps this is the key.)

But after trying two keys unsuccessfully, we wilt pick up the third key and say *This must be the key*. No other choice remains.

(b) *I wonder why Tom hasn't answered my letter. ~ He may/might be ill.* (Perhaps he is ill. But there are other possibilities also: he may be away or too busy to answer.)

But imagine that Bill never has any visitors. If an ambulance stops at his door the neighbours will say *Bill must be ill*. This is the only possible explanation of the arrival of the ambulance.

(c) Similarly, when considering a past action:

He may have come by train. (Perhaps he came by train. But there are other possibilities: he might have come by taxi or bus.)

But *He must have come by taxi* implies that he had no choice. There was no other way of making this journey.

158 **have/had** used for deduction

This is an American usage which is sometimes heard in Britain.

have/had here is chiefly used with **to be**:

There's a tall grey bird fishing in the river. ~ It has to be/must be a heron.

had + to be can express the speaker's feeling of certainty in the past:

There was a knock on the door. It had to be Tom. (She was sure it was Tom.)

had + to be can also be an alternative to must + perfect infinitive:

I wonder who took the money. ~ It had to be Tom/It must have been Tom. He's the only one who was there.

But, to avoid confusion, the student is advised to stick to the must forms,

159 **can't** and **couldn't** used for negative deduction

A Negative deductions about a present event can be expressed by can't/couldn't with the present infinitive of the verb be or with the continuous infinitive of any verb:

CHILD: Can I have some sweets? I'm hungry.
MOTHER: You can't/couldn't be hungry. You've just had dinner.
ANN (looking through binoculars): An aeroplane is pulling up people from the boat!
TOM: I can't/couldn't be an aeroplane. It must be a helicopter.
He says he's still reading 'The Turn of the Screw'. ~ He can't/couldn't still be reading it. I lent it to him ages ago and it's quite a short book.

B Negative deductions about a past event are expressed by can't/couldn't + the perfect infinitive or continuous perfect infinitive of any verb:

A man answered the phone. I suppose it was her husband. ~ If can't/couldn't have been her husband. He's been dead for ages.
I took a Circle Line train to St Paul's. ~ You can't/couldn't have taken the Circle Line. It doesn't go through St Paul's. You must have been on the Central Line.

couldn't must be used when the deduction is made in the past or introduced by a verb in the past tense:

She said I couldn't have come on the Circle Line.
He said it couldn't be an aeroplane.

Otherwise either **can't** or **couldn't** can be used.

160 **will** and **should** for assumption

A **will** used for assumptions about present or past actions

will here can be used with the present infinitive (for non- deliberate actions only) or with the continuous or perfect infinitive:

Ring his home number. He'll be at home now. (I'm sure he's at home.)
He'll be expecting a call from you. (I'm sure he's expecting a call.)
He'll have finished his supper. (I'm sure he has finished his supper.)
It's no use asking Tom: he won't know. (I'm sure he doesn't.)
Will Bill be at the club now, do you think? (Do you think he is?)

B **should** used for assumptions about present or past actions

should here is used mainly with the present infinitive (for non-deliberate actions only) in the affirmative or negative. It is sometimes also possible with the continuous and perfect infinitives:

The plane should be landing now. (I expect it is landing.)
The letter should have arrived by now. (I expect it has arrived.)

Assumptions with should are less confident than assumptions with win:

Tom should know the address. (I expect Tom knows it.) But
Tom'll know the address. (I'm sure Tom knows it.)
He should have finished by now. (I expect he has finished.) But
He'll have finished by now. (I'm sure he has finished.)

should is not used for assumptions which displease the speaker:

Let's not go shopping now. The shops will be very crowded. (**should** would not be used.)

But for the opposite (agreeable) assumption, either word could be used:

Let's go shopping now. The shops wilt be/should be fairly empty or
The shops won't be/shouldn't be too crowded.

will and **should** can also express assumptions about the future:

He should/will have plenty of time to get to the station.
They shouldn't/won't have any difficulty in finding the house.

will + present infinitive used for assumptions about the future is not restricted to non-deliberate actions. (See also 209.)

ought to can be used in the same way as should in B and C above:

The plane ought to be/should be taking of fin a minute.

But **should** is the more usual form.

16 *The auxiliaries* ***dare*** *and* ***used***

161 dare

A In the affirmative dare is conjugated like an ordinary verb, i.e. *dare/dares* in the present, dared in the past. But in the negative and interrogative it can be conjugated either like an ordinary verb or like an auxiliary, i.e. it is a semi-modal.

Negative:	present	do/does not dare	dare/dares not
	past	did not dare	dared not
Interrogative:	present	do you/does he dare?	dare you/he?
	past	did you/did he dare?	dared you/he?

The ordinary verb construction is more commonly used.

B Infinitives after **dare**

Negatives and interrogative forms with **do/did** are in theory followed by the infinitive with to, but in practice the to is often omitted:

He doesn't dare (to) say anything.

Did he dare (to) criticize my arrangements?

dare I/he/you? etc. and dare not forms take the infinitive without to;

Dare we interrupt? They dared not move.

When **dare** is preceded by *nobody, anybody* etc. the to is optional:

Nobody dared (to) speak.

C **dare** is not much used in the affirmative except in the expression **I daresay. I daresay** (or **I dare say**) has two idiomatic meanings:

1 'I suppose':

I daresay there'll be a restaurant car on the train.

2 I accept what you say (but it doesn't make any difference)':

ENGLISH TOURIST: *But I drive on the left in England!*

SWISS POLICEMAN: *I daresay you do, but we drive on the right here.*

TRAVELLER: *But the watch was given to me; I didn't buy it.*

CUSTOMS OFFICER: *I daresay you, didn't, but you'll have to pay duty on it all the same.*

daresay is used in this way with the first person singular only.

D **how dare(d) you? how dare(d) he/they?** can express indignation:

How dare you open my letters? (I am angry with you for opening them.)

How dared he complain? (I am indignant because he complained.)

E **dare** is also an ordinary transitive verb meaning 'challenge' (but only to deeds requiring courage). It is followed by object + full infinitive:

MOTHER: *Why did you throw that stone through the window?*

SON: *Another boy dared me (to throw it).*

162 Used

A Form

used is the past tense of a defective verb which has no present tense.

Affirmative: *used* for all persons

Negative: *used not/usedn't* for all persons

Interrogative: *used you/he/they?* etc.

Negative interrogative: *used you not/usedn't you?* etc.

Negative and interrogative can also be formed with did:

didn't use to did you use to? didn't you use to?

This is a more informal form, common in conversation.

used is followed by the full infinitive, and to remind students of this it is often referred to as **used to** (just as **have** used for obligation is referred to as have to).

B Use

used is used:

To express a discontinued habit or a past situation which contrasts with the present:

I used to smoke cigarettes; now I smoke a pipe.

He used to drink beer; now he drinks wine.

She usedn't to like Tom but she quite likes him now or

She used to dislike Tom but she quite likes him now.

used is not normally stressed, but it can be stressed if the speaker wishes to emphasise the contrast between past and present.

To express a past routine or pattern. Here we are not making a contrast between past and present: we are merely describing someone's routine during a certain period. Very often there is a succession of actions, **used to** here is replaceable by **would** (but **would** cannot replace used to for a discontinued habit etc. as in 1 above). **used** here is always unstressed.

Tom and Ann were a young married couple. Every morning Tom used to kiss Ann and set off/or work. Ann used to stand at the window and wave goodbye. In the evening she used to welcome him home and ask him to tell her about his day.

If we use **would** we have:

Every morning Tom would kiss Ann and set off/or work. Ann would stand at the window and wave goodbye etc.

Remember that **used** has no present form. So for present habits or routines we must use the simple present tense.

163 **used** as an adjective: **to be/become/get used to**

used can also be an adjective meaning 'accustomed'. It is then preceded by **be, become** or **get** in any tense and followed by the preposition to + noun/pronoun or gerund:

I am used to noise.
I am used to working in a noisy room.
You will soon get used to the electric typewriters.
You will soon get used to typing on electric typewriters.
They soon got used to the traffic regulations.
They soon got used to driving on the left.

I am used to ... etc. is a psychological statement. *I am used to working in a noisy room* means that I have worked in a noisy room, so the noise doesn't bother me: I don't mind it. *You'll soon get used to typing on electric typewriters* means that after you have used them for a while you will find them quite easy to use. Very often *I'm used to it* has the meaning 'I don't mind it/It doesn't give me any trouble', as in the above examples. But it can work the other way. Imagine our canteen serves only tea with its meals. A Frenchman, newly arrived from France, might say:

I'm used to wine with my meals, so I find these lunches rather unsatisfying.

Do not confuse subject + **be/become/get** + **used to** with subject + used to (see 162}.
In the first, **used** is an adjective and to is a preposition. In the second, **used** is a verb and to is part of the following infinitive. Do not confuse these forms with the regular verb **to use** /ju:z/ meaning 'employ'.

17 The present tenses

There are two present tenses in English:
The present continuous: I am working.
The simple present: I work.

The present continuous

164 Form

The present continuous tense is formed with the present tense of the auxiliary verb be + the present participle:

Affirmative	*Negative*	*Interrogative*
I am working	I am not working	am I working?
you are working	you are ml working	are you working?
he/she/it is working	he/she/it is not working	is he/she/it working?
we are working	we are not working	are we working?
you are working	you are not working	are you working?
they are working	they are not working	are they working?

Negative interrogative: *am I not working? are you not working? is he not working?* etc.

Contractions: the verb be can be contracted as shown in 102 B, so the present continuous of any verb can be contracted:

Affirmative	*Negative*	*Negative interrogative*
I'm working	I'm not working	aren't I working?
you're working	you're not/you aren't working	aren't you working?
he's working etc.	he's not/he isn't working etc.	isn't he working? etc.

Note the irregular contraction aren't I? *for* am I not?

Interrogative contractions: am, is, are may be contracted as shown |'in 104 B:
Why's he working? Where're you working?

165 The spelling of the present participle

A When a verb ends in a single **e**, this **e** is dropped before **ing**:
argue, arguing *hate, haling* *love, loving*
except after **age, dye** and **singe**:
ageing *dyeing* *singeing*
and verbs ending in **ee**:
agree, agreeing *see, seeing*

B When a verb of one syllable has one vowel and ends in a single consonant, this consonant is doubled before **ing**:
hit, hitting *run, running* *stop, stopping*
Verbs of two or more syllables whose last syllable contains only one vowel and ends in a single consonant double this consonant if the stress falls on the last syllable:
admit, admitting *begin, beginning* *prefer, preferring*
but

budget, budgeting *enter, entering*
(stress not on the last syllable).
A final 1 after a single vowel is, however, always doubled:
signal, signalling *travel, travelling*
except in American English.

C **ing** can be added to a verb ending in **y** without affecting the spelling of the verb:
carry, carrying *enjoy, enjoying* *hurry, hurrying*

166 Uses of the present continuous tense

A For an action happening now:
It is raining.
I am mil wearing a coat as it isn't cold.
Why are you sitting at my desk?
What's the baby doing? ~ He's tearing up a £5 note.

B For an action happening about this time but not necessarily at the moment of speaking:
I am reading a play by Shaw. (This may mean 'at the moment of speaking' but may also mean 'now' in a more general sense.)
He is teaching French and learning Greek. (He may not be doing either at the moment of speaking.)
When two continuous tenses having the same subject are joined by **and**, the auxiliary may be dropped before the second verb, as in the above example. This applies to all pairs of compound tenses:
She was knitting and listening to the radio.
For a definite arrangement in the near future (the most usual way of expressing one's immediate plans):
I'm meeting Peter tonight. He is taking me to the theatre.
Are you doing anything tomorrow afternoon? ~ Yes, I'm playing tennis with Ann.
Note that the time of the action must always be mentioned, as otherwise there might be confusion between present and future meanings, come and go, however, can be used in this way without a time expression. (See 202 B.)

167 Other possible uses of the present continuous

A With a point in time to indicate an action which begins before this point and probably continues after it:
At six I am bathing the baby. (I start bathing him before six.)
Similarly with a verb in the simple present:
They are flying over the desert when one of the engines fails.
The present continuous is rarely used in this way except in descriptions of daily routine and in dramatic narrative, but the past continuous is often combined with a point in time or a verb in the simple past. (See 179 B, C.)

B With **always**:
He is always losing his keys.
This form is used, chiefly in the affirmative:
For a frequently repeated action, usually when the frequency annoys the speaker or seems unreasonable to him: *Tom is always going away for weekends* (present continuous) would imply that he goes away very often, probably too often in the speaker's opinion. But it does not necessarily mean that he goes away every weekend. It is not a literal statement.
Compare with **always** + simple present:
Tom always goes away at weekends = Tom goes away every weekend. (a literal statement)
I/we + always + continuous tense is also possible here. The repeated action is then often accidental:
I'm always making that mistake.
For an action which appears to be continuous:
He's always working = He works the whole time.

This sort of action quite often annoys the speaker but doesn't necessarily do so: *He's always reading* could imply that he spends too much time reading, but could also be said in a tone of approval.
The first person could be used here too. The action then, like the other actions here in 2, is usually deliberate.

168 Verbs not normally used in the continuous tenses

The continuous tenses are chiefly used for deliberate actions. Some verbs are, therefore, not normally used in the continuous and have only one present tense, the simple present. These verbs can be grouped as follows:

A Verbs of the senses (involuntary actions): **feel, hear, see, smell**; also **notice** and **observe** (= notice), and **feel**, **look**, **taste** used as link verbs (see 18 B, C). **For feel, look. smell, taste**, see also 169. For **hear** and **see**, see also 170.
Verbs such as **gaze, listen, look** (at), **observe** (= watch), **stare** and **watch** imply deliberate use of the senses, and can, of course, be used in the continuous tenses:
Watch! ~ I am watching but I don't see anything unusual.
He is listening to a tape, but he's wearing earphones so nobody else hears it.

B Verbs expressing feelings and emotions, e.g. **admire** (= respect), **adore, appreciate** (= value), **care for** (= like), **desire, detest, dislike, fear, hate, like, loathe, love, mind** (= care), **respect, value, want, wish**.
But the continuous can be used with admire meaning 'look at with admiration', appreciate meaning 'increase in value', care for meaning 'look after', long for, mind meaning 'look after/concern oneself with', value meaning 'estimate the financial worth of, enjoy and sometimes like/love meaning 'enjoy', and hate meaning the opposite, though it is safer to use the simple tenses with like, love and hate:
He's enjoying his holiday in the Arctic. He hates tourist places and he doesn't mind the cold.
I'm minding my own business.
How are you liking/Do you like your new job? ~ I'm hating it/I hate it. I just don't like work, you see.

C Verbs of mental activity, e.g. **agree, appreciate** (= understand), **assume, believe, expect** (= think), **feel** (= think), **feel sure/certain, forget, know, mean, perceive, realize, recall, recognize, recollect, remember, see** (= understand), **see through someone** (= penetrate his attempt to deceive), **suppose, think** (= have an opinion), **trust** (= believe/have confidence in), **understand**. But the continuous can be used with appreciate meaning 'to increase in value'. See also 171 for think, assume, expect.

D Verbs of possession: **belong, owe, own, possess**:
How much do I owe you?

E The auxiliaries, except be and have in certain uses. (See 113 B, 115 B. 123.)
appear (= seem), **concern, consist, contain, hold** (= contain) **keep** (= continue), **matter, seem, signify, sound** (= seem/appear):
It concerns us all. *This box contains explosives.*
But appear meaning 'to come before the public' can be used in the continuous.

169 **feel, look, smell** and **taste** used in the continuous forms

A **feel**
feel, when followed by an adjective indicating the subject's emotions or i physical or mental condition, e.g. *angry/pleased, happy/sad, hot/cold, tense/relaxed, nervous/confident*, is normally used in the simple tenses but can also be used in the continuous:
How do you feel/are you feeling? ~ I feel/am feeling better.
feel meaning 'touch' (usually in order to learn something) can be used in the continuous:
The doctor was feeling her pulse.
Similarly, **feel for** meaning 'try to find something by touching':
He was feeling for the keyhole in the dark.
But **feel** is not used in the continuous when it means 'sense':
Don't you feel the house shaking?
when it means 'think':
I feel you are wrong

and when it is used as a link verb:

The water feels cold.

B **look**

The continuous is not used with **look** used as a link verb, e.g. *That cake looks good*, or with **look on** (= consider), **look up to** (= respect) and **look down on** (= despise) (see chapter 38). But **look (at), look for/in/into/out** and **look on** (== watch) are deliberate actions and can be used in the continuous tenses:

He is looking for his glasses.

I'm looking out for a better job.

C **smell**

The continuous is not used with **smell** meaning 'perceive a scent/an odour', e.g. *I smell gas*, or with smell used as a link verb, but can be used with smell meaning 'sniff at':

Why are you smelling the milk? Does it smell sour?

D **taste**

taste as a link verb is not used in the continuous:

This coffee tastes bitter. (has a bitter taste)

But taste meaning 'to test the flavour of can be used in the continuous:

She was tasting the pudding to see if it was sweet enough.

170 **see** and **hear** used in the continuous forms

A **see** can be used in the continuous when it means 'meet by appointment' (usually for business), 'interview':

The director is seeing the applicants this morning.

I am seeing my solicitor tomorrow. (See 202.)

Also when it means 'visit' (usually as a tourist):

Tom is seeing the town/the sights.

It can also be used in the continuous in the following combinations:

see about = make arrangements or enquiries:

We are seeing about a work permit/or you. (trying to arrange this)

see to = arrange, put right, deal with:

The plumber is here. He is seeing to the leak in our tank.

see somebody **out** = escort him/her to the door.

see somebody **home** = escort him/her home.

see somebody **to** + place = escort him/her to + place:

ANN : *Is Bill seeing you home after the party?*

MARY: *No, he's just seeing me to my bus.*

see someone **off** = say goodbye to a departing traveller at the starting point of his journey (usually the station, airport etc.):

We're leaving tomorrow. Bill is seeing us off at the airport.

B **hear** can be used in the continuous when it means 'listen formally to' (complaints/evidence etc.):

The court is hearing evidence this afternoon.

hear meaning 'receive news or letters' can also be used in the continuous form but only in the present perfect and future:

I've been hearing ail about your accident.

You 'll be hearing about the new scheme at our next meeting.

171 **think, assume** and **expect** used in the continuous forms

A **think** can be used in the continuous when no opinion is given or asked for:
What are you thinking about? ~ I'm thinking about the play we saw last night. But
What do you think of it? (opinion asked for) ~ *I don't think much of it.* (opinion given)
Tom is thinking of emigrating. What do you think of the idea? ~ I think it is a stupid idea. He should stay where he is.

B **assume** can be used in the continuous when it means 'accept as a starting point':
I'm assuming that you have time to do a lot of research.
assume power/control of a country or organisation can also be used in the continuous:
The new government is assuming power at once.

C **expect** can be used in the continuous when it means 'await':
I'm expecting a letter. *She's expecting a baby in May.*

The simple present tense

172 Form

In the affirmative the simple present has the same form as the infinitive but adds an **s** for the third person singular.

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative	Negative interrogative
I work	I do not work	do I work?	do I not work?
you work	you do not work	do you work?	do you not work?
he/she/it	he/she/it does.	does he/she/it	does he/she/it works
works	not work	work?	not work?
we work	we do not work	do we work?	do we not work?
you work	you do not work	do you work?	do you not work?
they work	they do not work	do they work?	do they not work?

Irregular verbs form this tense in exactly the same way.

Contractions: the verb **do** is normally contracted in the negative and negative interrogative (see 103 A): *I don't work, he doesn't work, don't, I work? doesn't he work?*
Spelling notes
Verbs ending in **ss, sh, ch, x** and **o** add **es**, instead of **s** alone, to form the third person singular:
I kiss, he kisses *I box, he boxes*
I rush, he rushes *I do, he does*
I watch, he watches *I go, he goes*
When **y** follows a consonant we change the y into **i** and add **es**:
I carry, he carries I copy, he copies I try, he tries
but verbs ending in **y** following a vowel obey the usual rule:
obey, he obeys *I say, he says*

173 The simple present used to express habitual action

The main use of the simple present tense is to express habitual actions:
He smokes. *Dogs bark.* *Cats drink milk.*
This tense does not tell us whether or not the action is being performed at the moment of speaking, and if we want to make this clear we must add a verb in the present continuous tense:
He's working. He always works at night.
My dog barks a lot, but he isn't barking at the moment.
The simple present tense is often used with adverbs or adverb phrases such as: *always, never, occasionally, often, sometimes, usually, every week, on Mondays, twice a year* etc.:
How often do you wash your hair?

I go to church on Sundays *It rains in winter.*

or with time clauses expressing routine or habitual actions.
whenever and **when** (= whenever) are particularly useful:

Whenever it rains the roof teaks.
When you open the door a light goes on.

174 Other uses of the simple present tense

A It is used, chiefly with the verb say, when we are asking about or quoting from books, notices or very recently received letters:

What does that notice say? ~ It says, 'No parking.'
What does the book say? ~ It says, 'Cook very slowly.'
I see you've got a letter from Ann. What does she say? ~ She says she is coming to London next week.
Shakespeare says, 'Neither a borrower nor a lender be.'

Other verbs of communication are also possible:

Shakespeare advises us not to borrow or lend.
A notice at the end of the road warns people not to go any further.

B It can be used in newspaper headlines:

MASS MURDERER ESCAPES PEACE TALKS FAIL

C It can be used for dramatic narrative. This is particularly useful when describing the action of a play, opera etc., and is often used by radio commentators at sports events, public functions etc.:

When the curtain rises, Juliet is writing at her desk. Suddenly the window opens and a masked man enters.

D It can be used for a planned future action or series of actions, particularly when they refer to a journey. Travel agents use it a good deal.

We leave London at 10.00 next Tuesday and arrive in Paris at 13.00. We spend two hours in Paris and leave again at 15.00. We arrive in Rome at 19.30, spend four hours in Rome etc.

E It must be used instead of the present continuous with verbs which cannot be used in the continuous form, e.g. love, see, believe etc., so that we can say I love you but not I am loving you. (See 168.)

F It is used in conditional sentences, type 1 (see 221):

If I see Ann I'll ask her.
Unless you take the brake off the car won't move.

G It is used in time clauses

(a) when there is an idea of routine:

As soon as he earns any money he spends it.
She takes the boy to school before she goes to work.

(b) when the main verb is in a future form (see 342):

It will stop raining soon.
Then we'll go out. = When it stops raining we 'II go out.

18 The past and perfect tenses

The simple past tense

175 Form

The simple past tense in regular verbs is formed by adding **ed** to the infinitive:
Infinitive: *to work* Simple past: *worked*
Verbs ending in **e** add **d** only:
Infinitive: *to love* Simple past: *loved*
The same form is used for ail persons:
I worked you worked he worked etc.

The negative of regular and irregular verbs is formed with **did not** (**didn't**) and the infinitive:
I did not/didn't work
you did not/didn't work etc.

The interrogative of regular and irregular verbs is formed with did + subject + infinitive:
did I work? did you work? etc.

Negative interrogative: did you not/didn't you work? *etc.*

Spelling notes
The rules about doubling the final consonant when adding **ing** (see 165) apply also when adding **ed**:
admit, admitted *stop, stopped* *travel, travelled*
Verbs ending in **y** following a consonant change the **y** into **i** before adding **ed**:
carry, carried *try, tried*
but **y** following a vowel does not change: *obey, obeyed*.

176 Irregular verbs: form

These vary considerably in their simple past form:
Infinitive: *to eat, to leave, to see, to speak*
Simple past: *ate, left, saw, spoke*
The simple past form of each irregular verb must therefore be learnt, but once this is done there is no other difficulty, as irregular verbs (like regular verbs) have no inflexions in the past tense.
A list of irregular verbs will be found in chapter 39.

177 Use for the relation of past events

A It is used for actions completed in the past at a definite time. It is therefore used:
1 for a past action when the time is given:
I met him yesterday. *Pasteur died in 1895.*
2 or when the time is asked about:
When did you meet him?
3 or when the action clearly took place at a definite time even though this time is not mentioned:
The train was ten minutes late. How did you get your present job? I bought this car in Montreal.
4 Sometimes the time becomes definite as a result of a question and answer in the present perfect:
Where have you been? ~ I've been to the opera. ~ Did you enjoy it?
(See 184 A for further examples.)
B The simple past tense is used for an action whose time is not given but which (a) occupied a period of time now terminated, or (b) occurred at a moment in a period of time now terminated. These may be expressed diagrammatically. TS here stands for time of speaking in the present.

```
                                                    TS
(a) |————————————————————————|.........................●

                X                                   TS
(b) [...........●...............................|.........................●
```

Examples of type (a):

He worked in that bank for four years. (but he does not work there now)

She lived in Rome for a long time. (but she is not living there now)

Examples of type (b):

My grandmother once saw Queen Victoria.

Did you ever hear Maria Callas sing?

These will be clearer when compared with the present perfect (see 182-4).

C The simple past tense is also used for a past habit:

He always carried an umbrella.

They never drank wine. (For **used to** indicating past habits, see 162.)

D The simple past is used in conditional sentences, type 2 (see 222). (For use of the unreal past after *as if, as though, it is time, if only, wish, would sooner/rather,* see chapters 28, 29.)

The past continuous tense

178 Form

The past continuous tense is formed by the past tense of the verb **to be** + the present participle:

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
I was working	I was not working	was I working?
you were working	you were not working	Win you working?
he/she/it was working	he/she/it was not working	was he/she/it working?
we were working	we were not working	were we working?
you were working	you were not working	were you working?
they were working	they were not working	were they working

Negative contractions: *I wasn't working, you weren't working* etc.
Negative interrogative: *was he not/wasn't he working?* etc.

See 165 for spelling of the present participle. Remember that some verbs cannot be used in the continuous tenses (see 168).

179 Main uses of the past continuous tense

The past continuous is chiefly used for past actions which continued for some time but whose exact limits are not known and are not important. It might be expressed diagrammatically. '……' indicates uncertainty about times of starting or finishing:

. . . . _____ . . . .

Used without a time expression it can indicate gradual development:

It was getting darker. *The wind was rising.*

Used with a point in time, it expresses an action which began before that time and probably continued after it. *At eight he was having breakfast* implies that he was in the middle of breakfast at eight, i.e. that he had started it before eight. He had breakfast at eight would imply that started it at eight.

If we replace the time expression with a verb in the simple past tense:

When I arrived
X
. . . . . _____•_____ . . . .

Tom was talking on the phone

We convey the idea that the action in the past continuous started before the action in the simple past and probably continued after it. The diagram may help to show this relationship. The action in the simple past is indicated by X. Compare this combination with a combination of two simple past tenses, which normally indicates successive actions:

When he saw me he put the receiver down.

E We use the continuous tense in descriptions. Note the combination of description (past continuous) with narrative (simple past):

A wood fire was burning on the hearth, and a cat was sleeping in front of it. A girt was playing She piano and (was) singing softly to herself. Suddenly there was a knock on the door. The girl stopped playing. The cat woke up.

180 Other uses of the past continuous

This tense can be used as a past equivalent of the present continuous:

A Direct speech: *He said, 'I am living in London.'*
Indirect speech: *He said he was living in London.*

B Just as the present continuous can be used to express a definite future arrangement:

I'm leaving tonight. I've got my plane ticket.

so the past continuous can express this sort of future in the past:

He was busy packing, for he was leaving that night. (The decision to leave had been made some time previously.)

C The past continuous with always:

He was always ringing me up. *He was always working.*

(See 167 B for present continuous with always.)

181 Past continuous as an alternative to the simple past

The past continuous can be used as an alternative to the simple past to indicate a more casual, less deliberate action:

I was talking to Tom the other day.

The past continuous here gives the impression that the action was in no way unusual or remarkable. It also tends to remove responsibility from the subject. In the above example it is not clear who started the conversation, and it does not matter. Note the contrast with the simple past tense, *I talked to Tom*, which indicates that I took the initiative.

Similarly:

From four to six Tom was washing the car.

This would indicate that this was a casual, possibly routine action. Compare with:

From four to six Tom washed the car. (implying a deliberate action by Tom)

Note that continuous tenses are used only for apparently continuous uninterrupted actions. If we divide the action up, or say how many times it happened, we must use the simple past:

I talked to Tom several times. *Tom washed both cars.*

But we may, of course, use the continuous for apparently parallel actions:

Between one and two I was doing the shopping and walking the dog.

This tense is normally used in this way with a time expression such as *today, last night, in the afternoon*, which could either be regarded as points in time or as periods. Periods can also be indicated by exact times as shown above.

In questions about how a period was spent, the continuous often appears more polite than the simple past: *What were you doing before you came here?* sounds more polite than *What did you do before you came here?*

On the other hand. *What were you doing in my room?* could indicate a feeling that I think you had no right to be there, while *What did you do in my room?* could never give this impression.

The present perfect tense

182 Form and use

A Form

The present perfect tense is formed with the present tense of have + the past participle:
I have worked etc.

The past participle in regular verbs has exactly the same form as the simple past, i.e. *loved, walked* etc. (see spelling rules, chapter 37).

In irregular verbs, the past participles vary (see 364).

The negative is formed by adding not to the auxiliary.

The interrogative is formed by inverting the auxiliary and subject.

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
I have worked	I have not worked	have I worked?
you haw worked	you have not worked	have you worked?
he/she/it has worked	be/she/it has not marked	has he/she/it worked?
we have worked	we have not worked	have we worked?
you haw worked	you have not worked	have you worked?
they have worked	they have not worked	have they worked?

Negative interrogative: *has he not worked?* etc.

Contractions: *have/has* and *have not/has not* can be contracted thus (see 118): *I've worked, you haven't worked, hasn't he worked?* etc. the contracted forms are often almost inaudible in colloquial speech.

have and **has** may also be contracted as shown in 104 B:

Where 've you been? What's he done?

B Use

This tense may be said to be a sort of mixture of present and past. It always implies a strong connexion with the present and is chiefly used in conversations, letters, newspapers and television and radio reports.

183 The present perfect used with just for a recently completed action

He has just gone out = He went out a few minutes ago.

This is a special use of this tense, just must be placed between the auxiliary and the main verb. This combination is used chiefly in the affirmative, though the interrogative form is possible:

Has he just gone out?

It is not normally used in the negative.

184 The present perfect used for past actions whose time is not definite

A The present perfect is used for recent actions when the time is not mentioned:

I have read the instructions but I don't understand them.

Have you had breakfast? ~ No, I haven't had it yet.

Compare with:

I read the instructions last night. (time given, so simple past)

Did you have breakfast at the hotel? (i.e. before you left the hotel: simple past)

Note possible answers to questions in the present perfect:

Have you seen my stamps? ~ Yes, I have/No, I haven't or *Yes, I saw them on your desk a minute ago.*

Have you had breakfast? ~ Yes, I have or No, I haven't had it yet or *Yes. I had it at seven o 'clock or Yes. I had it with Mary*. (time implied)

B Recent actions in the present perfect often have results in the present;

Tom has had a bad car crash. (He's probably still in hospital.)

The lift has broken down. (We have to use the stairs.)

I've washed the car. (it looks lovely.)

But actions expressed by the simple past without a time expression do not normally have results in the present:

Tom had a bad crash. (but he's probably out of hospital now)

The lift broke down. (but it's probably working again now)

I washed the car. (but it may be dirty again now)

Actions expressed by the present perfect + yet usually have results in the present:

He hasn't come yet. (so we are still waiting for him)

It can also be used for actions which occur further back in the past, provided the connexion with the present is still maintained, that is that the action could be repeated in the present:

I have seen wolves in that/west

implies that it is still possible to see them, and

John Smith has written a number of short stories

implies that John Smith is still alive and can write more. If, however, the wolves have been killed off and John Smith is dead we would say:

I saw wolves in that forest once/several times or

I used to see wolves here *and*

John Smith wrote a number of short stories.

Note also that when we use the present perfect in this way we are not necessarily thinking of any one particular action (the action may have occurred several times) or of the exact time when the action was performed. If we are thinking of one particular action performed at a particular time we are more likely to use the simple past.

185 The present perfect used for actions occurring in an incomplete period

This may be expressed by the following diagram:

Each X represents an action. TS stands for 'time of speaking' in the present.

An incomplete period may be indicated by *today* or *this morning/afternoon/evening/week/month/year/century* etc.

Note that the present perfect can be used with this morning only up to about one o'clock, because after that this morning becomes a completed period and actions occurring in it must be put into the simple past:

(at 11 a.m.) *Tom has rung up three times this morning already.*

(at 2 p.m.) *Tom rang up three times this morning.*

Similarly, this afternoon will end at about five o'clock:

(at 4 p.m.) *I haven't seen Tom this afternoon.*

(at 6 p.m.) *I didn't see Tom this afternoon.*

The present perfect used with an incomplete period of time implies that the action happened or didn't happen at some undefined time during this period:

Have you seen him today? (at any time today) — *Yes, I have/*

Yes. I've seen him today. (at some time during the day)

But if we know that an action usually happens at a certain time or in a i certain part of our incomplete period we use the simple past tense. If my alarm clock normally goes off at six, I might say at breakfast:

My alarm clock didn't go off this morning.

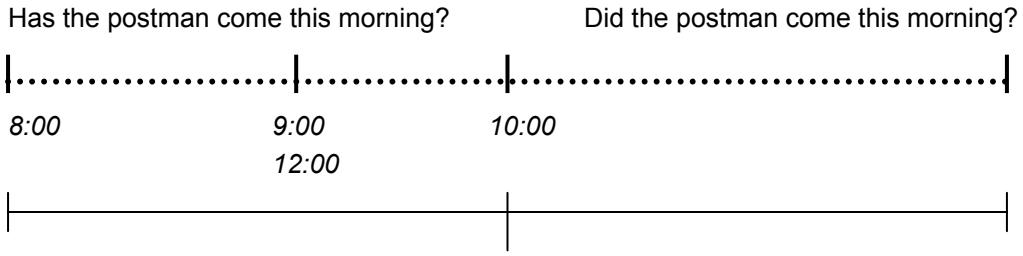
Imagine that the postman normally comes between nine and ten. From nine till ten we will say:

Has the postman come yet/this morning?

But after this nine to ten period we will say:

Did the postman come this morning?

We use the past tense here because we are thinking about a complete period of time even though we do not mention it.



this morning

C ***lately, recently*** *used with the present perfect also indicate an incomplete period of time.*

In the sentences Has he been here lately/recently? *and* He hasn't been here lately/recently, ***lately/recently*** *means 'at any time during the last week/month etc. and in* He has been here recently*,* ***recently*** *means 'at some undefined time during the last week/month etc.'*

lately *is less usual with the affirmative, except for actions covering periods of time:*

There have been some changes lately/recently.
He's had a lot of bad luck lately/recently.

recently*, used with a simple past tense, means 'a short time ago';*

He left recently = He left a short time ago.

D *The present perfect can be used similarly with* ever, never, always, occasionally, often, several times *etc. and* since + *a point in time,* since + *clause, or* since*, adverb:*

1 ANN: *Have you ever/alien off a horse?*
TOM: *Yes, !'ve fallen off quite often/occasionally.*

But if Tom's riding days are over, we would have;

ANN: *Did you ever/all off a horse? (past tense)*
TOM: *Yes. I did occasionally/frequently.*

2 *I haven't seen him since November.*
Has he written since he left home?
We had a letter last week. We haven't heard since.
I've since changed my mind = I've changed my mind since then-

3 The present perfect can be used here for habitual actions:
They've always answered my letters.
I've never been late for work.

Sometimes these appear to be continual rather than repeated action:

Since my accident I have written with my left hand.
I've worn glasses since my childhood.

We can then use **for** + a period of time as an alternative to **since** + a point in time:

I've used my left hand/or a month now.
I've worn glasses for ten years. (See 186.)

Note also sentences of this type:

This is the best wine I have ever drunk.
This is the worst book I have ever read.
This is the easiest job I have ever had.
We can use this construction, without ever. with the first, the second etc. and the only:
It/This is the first time I have seen a mounted band.
It is only the second time he has been in a canoe.
This is the only book he has written.

186 The present perfect used for an action which lasts throughout an incomplete period

Time expressions include *for, since* (see 387), *all day/night/week, all my* etc. *life, all the time*, *always, lately, never, recently*.

The action usually begins in the past and continues past the time of speaking in the present:

He has been in the army for two years. (He is still in the army.)
I have smoked since I left school. (I still smoke.)
We have waited all day. (We are still waiting.)
He has lived here all his life. (He still lives here.)
He has always worked for us. (He still works for us.)

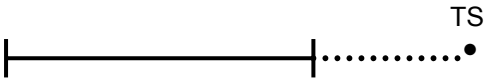
This type of action might be expressed by a diagram thus:

TS

Compare the above sentences with:

He was in the army for two years. (He is not in the army now.)
I smoked for six months. (and then stopped smoking)
He lived here all his life. (Presumably he is now dead.)

In each of the last three examples we are dealing with a completed period of time:

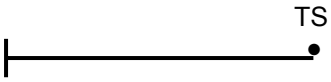


so the simple past tense is used (see 177 B).

Sometimes, however, the action finishes at the time of speaking:

ANN (on meeting someone): *I haven't seen you for ages?* (but I see you now)
This room hasn't been cleaned for months, (but we are cleaning it now)
It has been very cold lately but it's just beginning to get warmer.

This type of action could be expressed by a diagram thus:



C Verbs of knowing, believing and understanding cannot be used in the present perfect except as shown in A above:

I have known him for a Song time.
I have never believed their theories.

So recent actions, even when the time is not mentioned, must be expressed by the simple past:

Did you know that he was going to be married? (Have you known would not be possible) and
Hello! I didn't know you were in London. How long have you been here?

think and **wonder** however can be used as in 185 D:

I have sometimes thought that I should hare emigrated.
I have often wondered why he didn't marry her.

D Note that questions/answers such as:

How long have you been here? — I've, been here six months

will normally be followed by general inquiries in the present perfect about actions occurring within the period mentioned, which is regarded as an incomplete period of time:

because the action of staying, being etc., is not yet finished:

Have you been to the zoo/the theatre/the museums/the casino?
Have you enrolled in a school/found a job/met many people?

The answers will be in the same tense if no time is mentioned, otherwise they will be in the simple past tense:

Yes, I have (been to the zoo etc,) or *Yes, 1 went there last week.*
No, I haven't enrolled yet or *Yes, I enrolled on Monday/this morning.*

187 The present perfect used with for and since

A **for** is used with a period of time: *for six days, for a long time*.

for used with the simple past tense denotes a terminated period of time:

We lived therefor ten years. (but we don't live there now)

for used with the present perfect denotes a period of time extending into the present:

We have lived in London for ten years. (and still live there)

for can sometimes be omitted, especially after be, live and wait'.

We're been here an hour/two days.

for (of time) is not used before expressions beginning with *all*:

They've worked all night.

since is used with a point in time and means 'from that point to the time of speaking'. It is always used with a perfect tense, except as shown in 188 below.

She has been here since six o'clock. (and is still here)

We've been friends since our schooldays.

Note that there is a difference between **last** and **the last**. Compare:

(a) I have been here since last week (month, year etc.) and

(b) I have been here/or the last week last week.

in (a), means a point in time about seven days ago.

the last week, in (b), means the period of seven days just completed.

since + clause is also possible:

I've worked here since I left school

and ever since (adverb):

He had a bad/all last year and has been of/work ever since.

188 **it is** + period + **since** + past or perfect tense

We can say:

It is three years since I (last) saw Bill or *It is three years since I have seen Bill.*

I last saw Bill three years ago or *I haven't seen Bill for three years.*

It is two months since Tom (last) smoked a cigarette or *It is two months since Tom has smoked a cigarette.*

He last smoked a cigarette two months ago or *He hasn't smoked a cigarette for two months.*

We can use the **it is** ... **since** construction without the adverb last:

It is two years since he left the country.

This, however, is replaceable only by:

He left the country two years ago.

We could not use a negative present perfect here as in the sentence about Bill above. *He hasn't been (living) in this country/or the last two years* is possible but isn't an exact equivalent of *He left two years ago*.

This construction can be used in the past:

He invited me to go riding with him. But it was two years since I had ridden a horse. (I hadn't ridden a horse for two years previous to the invitation so I wasn't sure that I would enjoy it.)

188 Further examples of the use of the present perfect and Simple past

A TOM (visiting Philip for the first time): *I didn't know you lived in a houseboat.*

PHILIP: *I've always lived in a houseboat. I was born in one.*

I thought you were still on holiday. When did you get back? ~ I came back last week.

Has your term started yet? ~ Yes, it started on Monday.

B Note that a conversation about a past action often begins with a question and answer in the present perfect, but normally continues in the simple past, even when no time is given. This is because the action first mentioned has now become definite in the minds of the speakers-.

Where have you been? ~ I've been to the cinema.

What did you see?/What was the film? ~ (I saw) 'Amadeus'. ~ Did you like it?

HUSBAND: *Where have you been?*

WIFE: *I've been at the sales.*

HUSBAND: *What have you bought?/What did you buy?*

WIFE: *I have bought/I bought you some yellow pyjamas.*

HUSBAND: *Why did you buy yellow? I hate yellow.*

C The present perfect is often used in newspapers and broadcasts to introduce an action which will then be described in the simple past tense. The time of the action is very often given in the second sentence:

Thirty thousand pounds' worth of jewellery has been stolen from Jonathan Wild and Company, the jewellers. The thieves broke into the flat above some time during Sunday night and entered the shop by cutting a hole in the ceiling.

But even if the time of the action is not given the past tense will normally be used in the second sentence:

Two prisoners have escaped from Dartmoor. They used a ladder which had been left behind by some workmen, climbed a twenty-foot wail and got away in a stolen car.

D The present perfect is often used in Setters:

I am sorry I haven't written before but I've been very busy lately as Tom has been away.

We have carefully considered the report which you sent us on 26 April, and have decided to take the following action.

The present perfect continuous tense

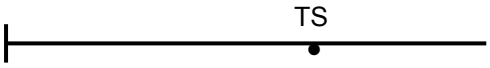
190 Form

This tense is formed by the present perfect of the verb **to be** + the present participle:

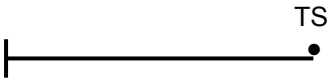
Affirmative: *I have been working, he has been working* etc.
Negative: *I have not/haven't been working* etc.
Interrogative: *have I been working?* etc.
Negative interrogative: *have I not/haven't I been working?* etc.

191 Use

This tense is used for an action which began in the past and is still continuing:



or has only just finished:



I've been waiting for an hour and he still hasn't turned up.

I'm so sorry I'm late. Have you been waiting long?

Remember that a number of verbs are not normally used in the continuous form (see 168), but that some of these can be used in this form in certain cases (see 169-71). We can therefore say:

Tom has been seeing about a work permit for you.
She has been having a tooth out.
I've been thinking it over.

I've been hearing all about his operation.

In addition, the verb want is often used in this tense, and wish is also possible:

Thank you so much for the binoculars. I've been wanting a pair for ages.

The present perfect continuous tense does not exist in the passive. The nearest passive equivalent of a sentence such as *They have been repairing the road* would normally be *The road has been repaired lately* (present perfect passive), which is not exactly the same thing.

192 Comparison of the present perfect simple and continuous

An action which began in the past and is still continuing or has only just finished can, with certain verbs, be expressed by either the present perfect simple or the present perfect continuous. Verbs which can be used in this way include *expect, hope, learn, lie, live, look, rain, sleep, sit, snow, stand, stay, study, teach, wait, want, work*:

How long have you learnt English?
How long have you been learning English?
He has slept for ten hours.

He has been sleeping/or ten hours.
It has snowed/or a long time.
It has been snowing/or a long time.

A This is not of course possible with verbs which are not used in the continuous forms (see 168), i,e, the present perfect continuous could not replace the simple present perfect in the following examples:

They've always had a big garden.
How long have you known that?
He's been in hospital since his accident.

Notice also that the present perfect continuous can be used with or without a time phrase. In this way it differs from the simple present perfect, which can only express this type of action if a time phrase is added such as *for six days, since June, never*. When used without a time expression of this kind, the simple present perfect refers to a single completed action.

B A repeated action in the simple present perfect can sometimes be expressed as a continuous action by the present perfect continuous:

I've written six letters since breakfast.
I've been writing letters since breakfast.
I have knocked five times. I don't think anyone's in.
I've been knocking. I don't think anybody's in.

Note that the present perfect continuous expresses an action which is apparently uninterrupted: we do not use it when we mention the number of times a thing has been done or the number of things that have been done.

C There is, however, a difference between a single action in the simple present perfect and an action in the present perfect continuous:

(a) *I've polished the car* means that this job has been completed.
(b) *I've been polishing the car* means 'this is how I've spent the last hour'. It does not necessarily mean that the job is completed.

Note also that a single action in the present perfect continuous continues up to the time of speaking, or nearly up to this time:

He's been taking photos (he's probably still carrying his camera) but
He has taken photos. (This action may or may not be very recent.)

193 Some more examples of the present perfect and the present perfect continuous

A *I haven't seen your brother lately. Has he gone away?*
B *Yes, he's/he has been sent to America.*
A *When did he go?*
R *He went last month.*
A *Have you had any letters from him?*
B *I haven't, but his wife has been hearing from him regularly.*
A *Does she intend to go out and join him?*
B *They've been thinking about it but haven't quite decided yet.*
Unfortunately they've had a lot of expense lately and perhaps haven't got the money for her fare.
TOM: *What have you done with my knife? (Where have you put it?)*
ANN: *I put it back in your drawer.*
TOM *(taking it out): But what have you been doing with if? The blade's ail twisted! Have you been using it to open tins?*
A: *Do you see those people on that little sandy island? They've been waving handkerchiefs for the last half hour. I wonder why.*
B: *They need help. The tide's coming in and very soon that little island wilt be under water. Have you been sitting here calmly and doing nothing to help them?*
A: *I've never been here before. I didn't know about the tides.*

The past perfect tense

194 Form and use

A Form This tense is formed with had and the past participle:
Affirmative: *I had/I'd worked* etc.
Negative: *I had not/hadn't worked* etc.
Interrogative: *had I worked?* etc.
Negative interrogative: *had I not/hadn't I worked?* etc.

B Use

The past perfect is the past equivalent of the present perfect.

Present: *Ann has just left. If you hurry you'll catch her.* (See 183.)
Past: *When I arrived Ann had just left*.
Present: *I've lost my case*. (See 184.)
Past: *He had lost his case and had to borrow Tom's pyjamas*.

Unlike the present perfect the past perfect is not restricted to actions whose time is not mentioned. We could therefore say:

He had left his case on the 4.40 train.

The present perfect can be used with *since/for/always* etc, for an action which began in the past and is still continuing or has only just finished (see 186). The past perfect can be used similarly for an action which began before the time of speaking in the past, and

(a) was still continuing at that time or
(b) stopped at that time or just before it.

But note that the past perfect can also be used:

(c) for an action which stopped some time before the time of speaking.

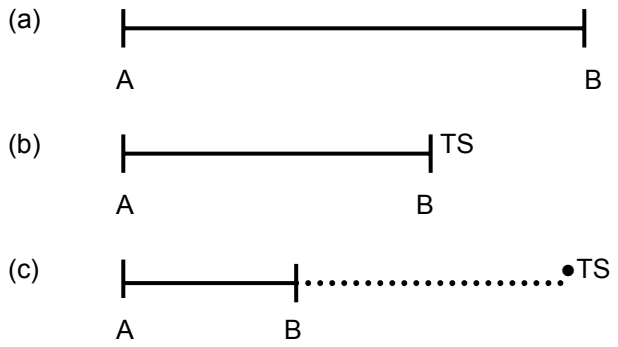
Examples of types (a), (b) and (c) are given below:

(a) *Bill was in uniform when I met him. He had been a soldier for ten years/since he was seventeen, and planned to stay in the army till he was thirty*.
Ann had lived in a cottage for sixty years/ever since she was born, and had no wish to move to a tower block. (The past perfect continuous tense had been living would also be possible here.)
(b) The old oak tree, which had stood in the churchyard/or 300 years/since before the church was built, suddenly crashed to the ground. (The past perfect continuous tense had been standing would also be possible here.)
Peter, who had waited for an hour/since ten o'clock, was very angry with his sister when she eventually turned up. (*had been waiting* would also be possible.)
(c) He had served in the army for ten years; then he retired and married. His children were now at school.

Here we cannot use either **since** or the past perfect continuous. Note also that the past perfect here has no present perfect equivalent. If we put the last verb in this sentence into the present tense the other tenses will change to the simple past.

He served in the army for ten years: then retired and married. His children are now at school.

These structures are shown below in diagram form, with the line AB for the action in the past perfect, and TS for the time of speaking in the past:



(See also 196 for the use of the past perfect in indirect speech.)

3 The past perfect is also the past equivalent of the simple past tense, and is used when the narrator or subject looks back on earlier action from a certain point in the past:

Tom was 23 when our story begins. His father had died five years before and since then Tom had lived alone. His father had advised him not to get married till he was 35, and Tom intended to follow this advice.

I had just poured myself a glass of beer when the phone rang. When 1 came back from answering it the glass was empty. Somebody had drunk the beer or thrown it away.
He met her in Paris in 1977. He had last seen her ten years before.
Her hair had been grey then: now it was white. Or He met her in 1967 and again ten years later. Her hair, which had been grey at their first meeting, was now white.

But if we merely give the events in the order in which they occurred no past perfect tense is necessary:

Tom's father died when Tom was eighteen. Before he died he advised Tom not to marry till he was 35, and Tom at 23 still intended to follow this advice.
He met her first in 1967 when her hair was grey. He met her again in 1977/He didn't meet her again till 1977. Her hair was now white.

There is no looking back in the above two examples so no reason for a past perfect.
Note the difference of meaning in the following examples:

She heard voices and realised that there were three people in the next room.
She saw empty glasses and cups and realised that three people had been in the room. (They were no longer there,)
He arrived at 2.30 and was told to wait in the VIP lounge.
He arrived at 2.30. He had been told to wait in the VIP lounge.

In the third example he received his instructions after his arrival. In the fourth he received them before arrival, possibly before the journey started.

195 Past and past perfect tenses in time clauses

A Clauses with **when**

When one past action follows another. *He called her a liar. She smacked his face,* we can combine them by using **when** and two simple past tenses provided that it is clear from the sense that the second action followed the first and that they did not happen simultaneously:

When he called her a liar she smacked his face.

When two simple past tenses are used in this way there is usually the idea that the first action led to the second and that the second followed the first very closely:

When he opened the window the bird flew out.
When the play ended the audience went home.
When he died he was given a state funeral.

The past perfect is used after **when** when we wish to emphasize that the first action was completed before the second one started:

When he had shut the window we opened the door of the cage. (We waited for the window to be quite shut before opening the cage.)
When she had sung her song she sat down. ('When she sang her song she sat down' might give the impression that she sang seated.)
When he had seen all the pictures he said he was ready to leave. (When he had finished looking at them . . .)

Compare with:

When he saw all the pictures he expressed amazement that one man should have painted so many. (Immediately he saw them he said this.)

B The past perfect can be used similarly with **as soon as, the moment, immediately**. (For **as** as a time conjunction, see 332.)

The past perfect can be used with **till/until** and **before** to emphasize the completion or expected completion of an action. But note that in **till/until** + past perfect + simple past combinations the simple past action may precede the past perfect action; and in **before** + past perfect + simple past combinations the simple past action will always precede the past perfect action:

He refused to go till he had seen all the pictures.
He did wit wait till we had finished our meal.
Before we had finished our meal he ordered us hack to work.
Before we had walked ten miles he complained of sore feet.

Past perfect tenses in both time clause and main clause are also possible:

It was a very expensive town. Before we had been here a week we had spent all our money.

C **after** is normally followed by a perfect tense:

After the will had been read there were angry exclamations.

D We have already stated (see 194) that actions viewed in retrospect from a point in the past are expressed by the past perfect tense. If we have two such actions:

He had been to school but he had learnt nothing there, so was now illiterate.

and wish to combine them with a time conjunction, we can use when etc. with two past perfect tenses:

When he had been at school he had learnt nothing, so he was now illiterate.

But it is more usual to put the verb in the time clause into the simple past:

When he was at school he had learnt nothing, . . .

Similarly:

He had stayed in his father's firm till his father died. Then he had started his own business and was now a very successful man.

E Verbs of knowing, understanding etc. are not normally used in the past perfect tense in time clauses except when accompanied by an expression denoting a period of time:

When she had known me for a year she invited me to tea but
When I knew the work of one department thoroughly I was moved to the next department or *As soon as I knew* etc.

Compare with:

When I had learnt the work of one department I was moved.

F Time clauses containing past perfect tenses can be combined with a main verb in the conditional tense, but this is chiefly found in indirect speech, and some examples will be given in the next paragraph.

196 Use of the past perfect in indirect speech

A Present perfect tenses in direct speech become past perfect tenses in indirect speech provided the introductory verb is in the past tense:

He said, 'I've been in England for ten years' = He said that he had been in England for fen years.

He said. 'When you've worked for a year you'll get arise' = He said that when I'd worked for a year I'd get a rise.

She said, 'I'll lend you the book as soon as I have read it myself = She said she'd lend me the book as soon as she'd read it herself.

B Simple past tenses in direct speech usually change similarly:

He said, 'I knew her well' = He said that he had known her well.

But there are a number of cases where past tenses remain unchanged (see 309-10).

(For the past perfect after **if** (conditional), see 223; after **wish** and **if only**, see 300; after **as if**, **as though**, see 292.)

The past perfect continuous tense

197 Form and use

A Form

This tense is formed with **had been** + the present participle. It is therefore the same for all persons:

I had/I'd been working
they had wit/hadn't been working
had you been working?
had you not/hadn't you been working?

It is not used with verbs, which are not used in the continuous forms, except with **want** and sometimes **wish**:

The boy was delighted with his new knife. He had been wanting one for a long time.

Note that this tense has no passive form. The nearest passive equivalent of a sentence such as *They had been picking apples* would be *Apples had been picked*, which is not the same thing (see B3 below).

B Use

The past perfect continuous bears the same relation to the past perfect as the present perfect continuous bears to the present perfect (see 192)

1 When the action began before the time of speaking in the past, and continued up to that time, or stopped just before it, we can often use either form (see 192 A):

It was now six and he was tired because he had worked since dawn = It was now six and he was tired because he had been working since dawn.

2 A repeated action in the past perfect can sometimes be expressed as a continuous action by the past perfect continuous (see 192 B):

He had tried five times to get her on the phone.
He had been trying to get her on the phone.

3 But there is a difference between a single action in the simple past perfect and an action in the past perfect continuous (see 192 C):

By six o'clock he had repaired the engine. (This job had been completed.)

He had been repairing the engine tells us how he had spent the previous hour/half hour etc. It does not tell us whether or not the job was completed.

Another difference is that an action in the present perfect continuous continues up to, or beyond, the time of speaking in the past. An action in the past perfect may occur shortly before the time of speaking, but there could be quite a long interval between them:

He had been painting the door. (The paint was probably still wet.)

But

He had painted the door. (Perhaps recently, perhaps some time ago.)

19 The future

198 Future forms

There are several ways of expressing the future in English. The forms are listed below and will be dealt with in the order in which they are given. Students should study them in this order, as otherwise the relationship between them will not be clear.

(a) The simple present (see 199)
(b) **will** + infinitive, used for intention (201)
(c) The present continuous (202)
(d) The **be going to** form (203-6)
(e) The 'future simple' **will/shall** + infinitive (207-10)
(f) The future continuous (211-14)
(g) The future perfect (216 A)
(h) The future perfect continuous (216 B)

For **be** + infinitive used to express future plans, see 114.

For **be about** + infinitive and **be on the point of** + gerund, see 144 C.

Note: Most of the auxiliary verbs are dealt with in chapters 11-16, but **will** + infinitive is an essential part of the future, so we have placed it here- It may seem odd that it has been

separated from the future simple but logically it seems best to place it before the present continuous and the **be going to** form.

199 The simple present used for the future

This tense can be used with a time expression for a definite future arrangement:

The boys start school on Monday. *I leave tonight.*

instead of the more normal present continuous tense (see 202):

The boys are starting school on Monday. *I'm leaving tonight.*

The difference between them is:

(a) The simple present is more impersonal than the continuous. *I'm leaving tonight* would probably imply that I have decided to leave, but *I leave tonight* could mean that this is part of a plan not necessarily made by me.

(b) The simple present can also sound more formal than the continuous. A big store planning to open a new branch is more likely to say *Our new branch opens next week* than *Our new branch is opening next week.*

(c) The simple present is sometimes used where the continuous would sound a bit clumsy, e.g. when speaking of a series of proposed future actions, like plans for a journey; i.e. we say:

We leave at six, arrive in Dublin at ten and take the plane on . . .

instead of:

We are leaving at six, arriving in Dublin at ten and taking the plane on . . .

Note, however, that in a sentence such as *My train leaves at six* we are using the simple present for a habitual action. Here, therefore, the simple present is not replaceable by the continuous.

200 A note on the meaning of future with intention

When we say that a form expresses future with intention we mean that it expresses a future action which will be undertaken by the speaker in accordance with his wishes, **will** + infinitive and the **be going to** form can be used in this way.

When we say that a form expresses future without intention we mean that it merely states that a certain action will happen. We don't know whether it was arranged by the subject or by some other person and we don't know what the subject thinks of it. The present tense and the future continuous tense can be used in this way.

The present continuous tense in the second or third person conveys no idea of intention, though there may be a hint of intention when the first person is used. The future simple (apart from **will** used as in 201, 205) normally conveys no idea of intention; but see **shall**, 208 B, 234.

201 **will** + infinitive used to express intention at the moment of decision (see also 205 E2 and E3)

(a) *The phone is ringing. ~ I'll answer it.*
(b) BILL (to waiter): *I'll have a steak, please*. (*would like* is also possible. See 210 B.)
(c) ANN: *I'd better order a taxi for tonight.*
TOM: *Don't bother. I'll drive you.*
(d) MARY (looking at a pile of letters): *I'll answer them tonight.*
(e) PAUL (who is getting fat and tired of paying parking fines): *I know what to do. I'll sell my car and buy a bike.*
(f) ALAN (on receiving a telegram saying his father is ill): *I'll go home tonight/I'll leave tonight.*

For unpremeditated actions, as above, we must use **will** (normally contracted to **'ll**). But note that if after his decision the speaker mentions the action again, he will not use **will**, but **be going to** or the present continuous. (**be going to** is always possible; the present continuous has a more restricted use. See 202.)

For example, imagine that to (b) above a friend, Tom, joins Bill before his food has arrived:

TOM: *What are you having/going to have?*
BILL: *I'm having/going to have a steak.*

Similarly, at a later time, in:

(c) Ann might say:

Tom is driving me /going to drive me to the airport tonight.

(d) Mary, however, could only say:

I'm going to answer these letters tonight. (She hasn't made an arrangement with anybody.)

(e) Paul. similarly, could say:

I'm going to sell the car

though when he finds a buyer he can say:

I'm selling the car.

(f) Alan, however, could say:

I'm going home tonight

even though this is, as yet, only a decision, (See 202 B, D.)

(For **will** compared to **be going to**, see 2115.)

202 The present continuous as a future form

Note that the time must be mentioned, or have been mentioned, as otherwise there may be confusion between present and future.

A The present continuous can express a definite arrangement in the near future: *I'm taking an exam in October* implies that I have entered for it;

and *Bob and Bill are meeting tonight* implies that Bob and Bill have arranged this. If there has merely been an expression of intention, as in 201 (d) and (e) above, we use the **be going to** form.

B But with verbs of movement from one place to another, e.g. *arrive, come, drive, fly, go, leave, start, travel,* verbs indicating position, e.g. *stay, remain*, and the verbs *do* and *have* (food or drink), the present continuous can be used more widely. It can express a decision or plan without any definite arrangement. Alan in 201 (f) can therefore say *I'm going home tonight/I'm leaving tonight* even before he has arranged his journey.

Note also:

What are you doing next Saturday? (This is the usual way of asking people about their plans.)

Possible answers:

I'm going to the seaside.

The neighbours are coming in to watch television.

I'm not doing anything. I'm staying at home. I'm going to write letters. (*I'm writing* .. . would not be possible.)

C This method of expressing the future cannot be used with verbs which are not normally used in the continuous tenses (see 168). These verbs should be put into the future simple (**will/shall**):

I am meeting him tonight but *I will/shall know tonight.*

They are coming tomorrow but *They will be here tomorrow.*

We 'II think it over.

Note, however, that **see**, when it is used for a deliberate action (**see to/about, see someone out/off/home** etc., **see** meaning 'meet by appointment'), can be used in the continuous tenses (see 170):

I'm seeing hint tomorrow. (I have an appointment with him.)

to be can be used in the continuous tenses when it forms part of a passive verb:

He is being met at the station tonight.

Our new piano is being delivered this afternoon.

D More examples of combinations of **will** + infinitive used at the moment of decision (see 201) and the present continuous tense used as a future form:

TRAVEL AGENT: *Now, how do you want to go to Rome, sir? By air or by train?*

TRAVELLER (making up his mind): *The trains are too slow. I'll fly.*

But afterwards, talking about his plans, this traveller will say:

I'm flying to Rome next week.

ANN: *I'll have to pay £150 rent at the end of this month and I don't know where to find the money.*

TOM: *Don't worry. I'll lend you £150.*

Later, but before Tom has actually tent the money, Ann will say:

Tom is lending me £150.

TOM: *Would you like to come to the opera tonight?*
ANN: *I'd love to. Shall I meet you there?*
TOM: *No, I'll call for you. About seven?*
ANN: *OK.*

Later, Ann, telling a friend about this plan, will say:

Tom is taking me to the opera tonight. He's calling for me at seven.

(The be going to form could replace the continuous tense in the above examples.)

203 The be going to form

A Form , The present continuous tense of the verb to go + the full infinitive:

I'm going to buy a bicycle.
She is not going to be there.
Is he going to lecture in English?

B This form is used:

(a) For intention (see 204).
(b) For prediction (see 206).

204 The **be going to** form used for intention

The **be going to** form expresses the subject's intention to perform a certain future action. This intention is always premeditated and there is usually also the idea that some preparation for the action has already been made. Actions expressed by the **be going to** form are therefore usually considered very likely to be performed, though there is not the same idea of definite future arrangement that we get from the present continuous. The following points may be noted:

1 As already shown, **be going to** can be used for the near future with a time expression as an alternative to the present continuous, i.e. we can say:

I'm/I am meeting Tom at the station at six.
I'm/I am going to meet Tom at the station at six.

But note that *I'm meeting Tom* implies an arrangement with Tom. *I'm going to meet Tom* does not: Tom may get a surprise!

2 **be going to** can be used with time clauses when we wish to emphasize the subject's intention:

He is going to be a dentist when he grows up.
What are you going to do when you get your degree?

Normally, however, the future simple (shall/will) is used with time clauses. (See 342.)

3 **be going to** can be used without a time expression;

I'm going to play you a Bach fugue.
He is going to lend me his bicycle.

It then usually refers to the immediate or near future.

4 As seen in (2) above, the he going to form can be used with the verb to be. It is also sometimes found with other verbs not normally used in the continuous tenses:

I am going to think about it. I'm sure I'm going to like it. But on the whole it is safer to use the future simple here.

5 Note that it is not very usual to put the verbs go and come into the be going to form. Instead we generally use the present continuous tense:

i.e. instead of / am going to go we normally say 1 am going and instead of / am going to come we very often say / am coming. Note that we can express intention by using will + infinitive- This fori[11] is compared with be going to in 202.

205 Comparison of the use of **be going to** and **will** + infinitive to express intention

Very often we can use either the **be going to** form or **will** + infinitive, but there are differences between them, as a result of which there are occasions when only one of them is possible.

The chief difference is:

A The **be going to** form always implies a premeditated intention, and often an intention + plan. **will** + infinitive implies intention alone, and this intention is usually, though not necessarily, unpremeditated.

If, therefore, preparations for the action have been made, we must use **be going to**:

I have bought some bricks and I'm going to build a garage.

If the intention is dearly unpremeditated, we must use will:

There is somebody at the hall door. - I'll go and open it. (See examples in section E.)

When the intention is neither clearly premeditated nor clearly unpremeditated, either **be going to** or **will** may be used:

I will/am going to climb that mountain one day.

I won't/am not going to tell you my age. But will is the best way of expressing determination:

I will help you. (with stress on will) This means 'I definitely intend to help you'.

Other differences:

As already noted, will + infinitive in the affirmative is used almost entirely for the first person. Second and third person intentions are therefore normally expressed by be going to:

He is going to resign.

Are you going to leave without paying?

But in the negative won't can be used for all persons. So we can say:

He isn't going to resign or He won't resign. But note that won't used for a negative intention normally means 'refuse':

He won't resign = He refuses to resign. He isn't going to res^n normally means 'He doesn't intend to resign'.
be going to, as already stated, usually refers to the fairly immediate future, will can refer either to the immediate or to the more remote future.
More examples of be going to and will
Examples of be going to used to express intention:

What are you doing with that spade? -lam going to plant some apple trees.
She has bought some wool; she is going to knit a jumper.
Why are you taking down all the pictures? ~ l am going to repaper the room.
Some workmen arrived today with a roller. I think they are going to repair our road.
Why is he carrying his guitar? - He is going to play it in the Underground.

Note that it would not be possible to substitute will for be going to in any of the above examples, as in each of them there is clear evidence of premeditation.

2 Examples of **will** + infinitive (see 201):

This is a terribly heavy box. ~ I'll help you to carry it.
I've left my watch upstairs. ~ I'll go and get if for you.
Who will post this letter/or me? ~ I will.
Will you lend me £100? ~ No, I won't.

3 Some comparisons of **be going to** and **will**
In answer "to Tom's remark *There aren't any matches in the house* Ann might reply either *I'm going to get some today* (premeditated decision) or *I'll get some today* (unpremeditated decision). The first would imply that some time before this conversation she realized that there were no matches and decided to buy some- The second would imply that she had not previously decided to buy matches but took the decision now, immediately after Tom's remark.
Similarly, if Ann says *Where is the telephone book?* and Tom says *I'll get it for you* he is expressing a decision made immediately after Ann's question. If he said I'm going to get it, it would mean that he had decided to do this before Ann spoke (presumably because he had anticipated that Ann would want it, or needed it for himself).

4 Note that will/won't does not have any meaning of intention when it is used as indicated in 209 A-E, i.e. when it is used as part of the future simple will/shall. So He won't resign can mean He refuses to resign or / don't expect that he will resign; and in // he hurries he 'II catch up with her, will doesn't express intention but merely states a fact.

206 The be going to form used for prediction

A The be going to form can express the speaker's feeling of certainty. The time is usually not mentioned, but the action is expected to happen in the near or immediate future:

Look at those clouds' It's going to rain.
Listen to the wind. We 're going to have a rough crossing.

It can be used in this way after such verbs as *be sure/afraid, believe, think*:

How pale that girl is! I am sure/I believe/I think she is going to faint.

B Comparison of **be going to** (used for prediction) with **will** (used for probable future)
will is a common way of expressing what the speaker thinks, believes hopes, assumes, fears etc. will happen (see 209 A):

It will probably be cold/I expect it will be cold.
Tomatoes will be expensive this year/I'm sure tomatoes will be expensive.

will and **be going to** are therefore rather similar and often either form can be used:

It will fake a long time to photocopy ail the documents = It is going to take a long time to photocopy all the documents.

But there are two differences:

1 **be going to** implies that there are signs that something will happen, will implies that the speaker thinks/believes that it will happen.

2 **be going to** is normally used about the immediate/fairly immediate future; will doesn't imply any particular time and could refer to the remote future.
For example, *The lift is going to break down* implies that it is making strange noises or behaving in a strange way; we had better get out on the next floor. *The lift will break down* implies that this will happen some time in the future (perhaps because we always overload our lifts, perhaps because it is an XYZ Company lift and they don't last). Similarly (of a sick man), *He is going to get better* implies that there are signs of recovery. Perhaps his

temperature has gone down. *He will get better* implies confidence in his doctor or in the course of treatment, but promises eventual rather than immediate recovery.

207 The future simple

Form
There is no future tense in modern English, but for convenience we often use the term 'future simple' to describe the form will/shall + bare infinitive.

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
I will/I'll work or	*I will not/won't work or*	
I shall work	*I shall not/shan't work*	*shall I work?*
you will/you'll work	*you will not/won't work*	*will you work?*
he will/he'll work etc.	*he will not/won't work etc.*	*will he work? etc.*
we will/we'll work or	*we will not/won't work or*	
we shall work	*we shall not/shan't work*	*shall we work?*
you will/you 'II work	*you will not/won't work*	*will you work?*
they will/they'll work	*they will not/won't work*	*will they work?*

For interrogative contractions, see 104.
Negative interrogative: *will he not/won't he work?* etc.

208 First person **will** and **shall**

A Formerly **will** was kept for intention:

I will wait for you = I intend to wait for you

and **shall** was used when there was no intention, i.e. for actions where the subject's wishes were not involved:

I shall be 25 next week.
We shall know the result next week. (It will be in the papers.)
Unless the taxi comes soon we shall miss our plane.
I'm sure I shan't lose my way.
I shall see Tom tomorrow. (Perhaps we go to work on the same train.)

shall, used as above, is still found in formal English, but is no longer common in conversation. Instead we normally use will:

I will be 25 next week.
We 'II know the result tomorrow.
Unless the taxi comes soon we 'Il miss the plane.
I 'm sure I won't lose my way.

Sometimes, however, **will** might change the meaning of the sentence. If in *I shall see Tom tomorrow* we replace **shall** by **will**, we have *I will see Tom tomorrow*, which could be an expression of intention. To avoid ambiguities of this kind we use the future continuous tense:

I'll be seeing Tom tomorrow. (See 211-14.)

shall, however, is still used in the interrogative:
In question tags after **let's**: *Let's go, shall me?*
In suggestions: *Shall we take a taxi?*
In requests for orders or instructions: *What shall I do with your mail?*
In speculations: Where shall we be this time next year? (Here, though, will is also possible.)

B **shall** for determination

We have already noted (see 201, 205) that determination is normally expressed by **will**. But sometimes public speakers feel that to express determination they need a 'heavier' word, a word not normally used much, and so they say shall:

(in a speech) *We shall fight and we shall win.*

We will fight and we shall win would be equally possible.

shall used in this way sometimes carries the idea of promise which we get in second person **shall**:

You shall have a sweet = I promise you a sweet. (See 234 A.)

In *we shall win* the speaker is promising victory.
shall can be used in this way in ordinary conversation:

I shall be there, I promise you.

But will here is equally possible and less trouble for the student. When in doubt use will.

209 Uses of the future simple

To express the speaker's opinions, assumptions, speculations about the future. These may be introduced by verbs such as *assume, be afraid, be/feel sure, believe, daresay, doubt, expect, hope, know, suppose, think, wonder* or accompanied by adverbs such as *perhaps, possibly, probably, surely*, but can be used without them:

(I'm sure) he 'II come back.
(I suppose) they 'II sell the house.
(Perhaps) we 'II find him at the hotel.
They'll (probably) wait for us.

The future simple can be used with or without a time expression **be going to** is sometimes possible here also, but it makes the action appear more probable and (where there is no time expression) more, immediate. *He'll build a house* merely means 'this is my opinion', and gives no idea when the building will start. But *He's going to build a house* implies that he has already made this decision and that he will probably start quite soon.

The future simple is used similarly for future habitual actions which we assume will take place:

Spring will come again.
Birds will build nests.
People will make plans.
Other men will climb these stairs and sit at my desk.

(*will be coming/building/making/climbing/sitting* would also be possible.)

The future simple is used in sentences containing clauses of condition, time and sometimes purpose:

If I drop this glass if will break. (See 221.)
When it gets warmer the snow will start to melt. (See 342.)
I'm pulling this letter on top of the pile so that he'll read it first. (See 336.)

Note that in an **if**-clause or a time clause we don't use the future simple even when the meaning is future:

He will probably be late but *If he is late . . .* and
It will get warmer soon but *When if gets warmer . . .*

Verbs not normally used in the continuous tenses, e.g. auxiliary verbs, verbs of the senses, of emotion, thinking, possessing etc. (see 168), usually express the future by the future simple, though be going to is sometimes possible:

He 'II be here at six. *You 'II have time for tea.*
She'll wonder where you are. *They'll know tonight.*

The future simple is used, chiefly in newspapers and news broadcasts, for formal announcements of future plans and for weather forecasts. In conversations such statements would normally be expressed by the present continuous or **be going to** form or, for plans only, by the present continuous:

NEWSPAPER: *The President wilt open the new heliport tomorrow.*
The fog will persist in all areas.

But the average reader/listener will say:

The President is going to open/is opening . . .
The fog is going to persist/continue . . .

F **won't** can be used with all persons to express negative intention. So *He won't pay* can mean either *He refuses to pay* or *I don't think he 'll pay*.
I/we will can express affirmative intention (see 201), but **he/you/they will** do not normally express intention. They may appear to do so sometimes in such sentences as *My son/brother/husband* etc. *will help you*, but the intention may be the speaker's rather than the subject's.

210 will contrasted with **want/wish/would like**

A **will** must not be confused with **want/wish/would like**.

will expresses an intention + a decision to fulfil it:

I will buy it = I intend to buy it/I'm going to buy it.

want/wish/would like merely expresses a desire. They do not give any information about intended actions. (See also 296, 299.)

B Note, however, that **I'd like** is often a possible alternative to *I'll have/take*:

CUSTOMER (in a shop*): I'd like/I'll have a pound of peas, please.*

DINER (in a restaurant): *I'd like/I'll have the soup, please.*

Both can be used for invitations:

Would you like a drink? or Will you have a drink?

When accepting an invitation we can use either form:

I'd like/I'll have a sherry, please.

But the two forms are not interchangeable in the negative, so if we wish to refuse an invitation we must say:

I won't have anything, thanks or I don't want anything, thanks.

wouldn't like means 'would dislike', so could not be used here.

211 The future continuous tense

A Form

This tense is made up of the future simple of to be + the present participle. In the first person, will is more usual than shall, except in the interrogative.

Affirmative	*I/we will/shall be working*
	he/she/it/you/they mill be working
Negative	*I/we will/shall not be working*
	he/she/it/you/they will not be working
Interrogative	*shall/will I/we be working?*
	will he/she/it/you/they be working?

Contractions as shown in 207.

Negative interrogative: *will he not/won't he be working?* etc.

Use

This tense has two uses:

It can be used as an ordinary continuous tense.

It can express a future without intention.

212 The future continuous used as an ordinary continuous tense

Like other continuous tenses it is normally used with a point in time, and expresses an action which starts before that time and probably continues after it. This use is best seen by examples. Imagine a class of students at this moment -9.30 a.m. We might say:

Now they are sitting in their classroom. They are listening to a tape. This time tomorrow they will be sitting in the cinema. They will be watching a film. On Saturday there is no class. So on Saturday they will not be sitting in the classroom. They will be doing other things. Bill will be playing tennis. Ann will be shopping. George will still be having breakfast.

A continuous tense can also be used with a verb in a simple tense:

Peter has been invited to dinner with Ann and Tom. He was asked to come at eight but tells another friend that he intends to arrive at seven. The friend tries to dissuade him: 'When you arrive they'll still be cooking the meal!'

213 The future continuous used to express future without intention

Example: *I will be helping Mary tomorrow*.

This does not imply that the speaker has arranged to help Mary or that he wishes to help her. It merely states that this action will happen. The future continuous tense used in this way is somewhat similar to the present continuous, but differs from it in the following points.

The present continuous tense implies a deliberate future action. The future continuous tense usually implies an action which will occur in the normal course of events. It is therefore less definite and more casual than the present continuous:

I am seeing Tom tomorrow.

I'll be seeing Tom tomorrow.

The first implies that Tom or the speaker has deliberately arranged the meeting, but the second implies that Tom and the speaker will meet in the ordinary course of events (perhaps they work together). This difference is not always very important, however, and very often either tense can be used. We can say:

He'll be taking his exam next week or

He is taking his exam next week.

He won't be coming to the party or

He isn't coming to the party.

The present continuous can only be used with a definite time and for the near future, while the future continuous can be used with or without a definite time and for the near or distant future. We can say:

I am meeting him tomorrow but

I'll be meeting him tomorrow/next year/some time. (or without a time expression at all)

214 The future continuous and will + infinitive compared

A There is approximately the same difference between **will** + infinitive and the future continuous as between **will** + infinitive and the present continuous. **will** + infinitive expresses future with intention. The future continuous expresses future without intention.

In this sentence:

I'll write to Mr Pitt and tell him about Tom's new house

the verb in bold type expresses intention. The speaker announces a deliberate future action in accordance with his own wishes. But in the sentence:

I'll be writing *to Mr Pitt and I'll tell him about Tom's new house*

the verb in bold type expresses no intention. It is a mere statement of fact and implies that this letter to Mr Pitt will be written either as a matter of routine or for reasons unconnected with Tom's new house. Similarly, *Tom won't cut the grass* means Tom refuses to cut it, while

Tom won't be cutting the grass is a mere statement of fact, giving no information about Tom's feelings. Perhaps Tom is away. or ill, or will be doing some other job.

B **will** + infinitive can express invitation, request or command:

Will you have a cigarette? (See 210.)

Will you help me to lift the piano? (See 284.)

You will work in this room. (See 282.)

The future continuous can have none of the above meanings:

Will you please bring the piano in here? (request) ~ *Yes sir/OK.*

But

Will you be bringing the piano in here? (question only) ~*Yes, I think I will or No, I think I'll put it upstairs.*

You will work in this office (command) but

You will be working here. (only a statement)

As before, the present continuous could be used here instead of the future continuous, provided that a time expression was added.

215 Examples of various future forms

A Imagine that we ask five people about their plans for the following Saturday. We say:

What are you doing/going to do on Saturday?

(a) Peter has arranged to play golf with George; so he will say:

I'm playing/going to play golf with George.

(b) Mary has decided to stay at home and make jam; so she will say:

I'm staying/going to stay at home. I'm going to make jam.

(c) Andrew's plans depend on the weather; so he may sav:

If it's fine I'll work/I'm going to work in the garden.

(d) Ann hasn't made any plans, but she may say:

Perhaps I'll take/I expect I'll take/I'll probably take/I suppose I'll take my children for a walk.

(e) Bill always has to work on Saturdays; so he will say:

Oh, I'll be working as usual. (No other form would give this exact meaning.)

B Questions about intentions

These are usually expressed by the present continuous, the **be going to** form or the future continuous. This last tense is a particularly useful interrogative form as it is considered more polite than the others. So if we are continuing to ask our five people questions we may say:

(a) Where are you playing/are you going to play/will you be playing golf?

(b) What kind of jam are you going to make/will you be making?

will you + infinitive is less usual than the other forms and is rarely found at the beginning of a sentence. (This is to avoid confusion, because **will you** + infinitive at the beginning of a sentence usually introduces a request.) It is however used in conditional sentences and when the speaker is offering something or asking the other person to make a decision:

What will you do if he is not on the plane?

Will you have a drink?

Will you have your meal now or later?

More examples of questions based on the sentences in A above:

(c) If we are questioning Andrew we will probably say:

What are you going to do/What will you be doing in the garden? (though *What will you do?* would be possible), and *Are you going to cut/Will you be cutting the grass?* (*Will you cut the grass?* would sound more like a request.)

(d) To Ann we would probably say:

I/you take them, where will you go? (though *where will you be going?* is possible)

(e) To Bill we could say:

Will you be working all day?

This is the only possible form if we wish to convey the idea that Bill works on Saturday because it is the routine, not from choice-Note that the future continuous must of course be used in questions of the type *What will you be doing this time next week?* regardless of whether the action is intentional or not (see 212).

216 The future perfect and the future perfect continuous

A The future perfect

Form

will/shall + perfect infinitive for first persons, **will** + perfect infinitive for the other persons.

Use

It is normally used with a time expression beginning with **by**: *by then, by that time, by the 24th*:

By the end of next month he will have been here for ten years.

It is used for an action which at a given future time will be in the past, or will just have finished. Imagine that it is 3 December and David is very worried about an exam that he is taking on 13 December.

Someone planning a party might say:

We'd better wait fill 14 December. David will have had his exam by then, so he'll be able to enjoy himself.

Note also:

I save £50 a month and I started in January. So by the end of the year I will/shall have saved £600.

BILL (looking at Tom's cellar): *You've got over 400 bottles. How long will that last you? Two years?*

TOM: *Not a hope. I drink eight bottles a week. I'll have drunk all these by the end of this year.*

B The future perfect continuous

Form

will/shall have been + present participle for the first persons,

will have been + present participle for the other persons.

Use

Like the future perfect, it is normally used with a time expression beginning with **by**:

By the end of this year he'll have been acting for thirty years.

The future perfect continuous bears the same relationship to the future perfect as the present perfect continuous bears to the present perfect, i.e. the future perfect continuous can be used instead of the future perfect:

1 When the action is continuous:

By the end of the month he will have been living/working/studying here for ten years.

2 When the action is expressed as a continuous action:

By the end of the month he will have been training horses/climbing mountains for twenty years.

But if we mention the number of horses or mountains, or divide this action in any way, we must use the future perfect;

By the end of the month he will have trained 600 horses/climbed 50 mountains.

20 The sequence of tenses

217 Subordinate clauses

A sentence can contain a main clause and one or more subordinate clauses. A subordinate clause is a group of words containing a subject and verb and forming part of a sentence:

We knew that the bridge was unsafe.
He gave it to me because he trusted me.
He ran faster than we did.
This is the picture that I bought in Rome.

(In the examples above and in 218 the subordinate clauses are in bold type.)
For other examples see under conditional sentences, relative pronouns and clauses of purpose, comparison, time, result and concession. It is not necessary for the student to make a detailed study of clauses or even to be able to recognize the different kinds of clause, but it is necessary for him to learn to know which is the main verb of a sentence because of the important rule given below.

218 The sequence of tenses

When the main verb of a sentence is in a past tense, verbs in subordinate clauses are normally in a past tense also. See the starred sentences below.

Tense of verb in main clause		Tense of verb in subordinate clause
Present	*He thinks **that it will rain**.*	Future simple
Past	*He thought **that it would rain**.**	Conditional
Present	*He sees **that he has made a mistake**.*	Pres. perf.
Past	*He saw **that he had made a mistake**.**	Past perf.
Present	*I work so hard **that I am always tired**.*	Present
Past	*I worked so hard **that I was always tired**.**	Past
Pres. perf.	*He has done all **that is necessary**.*	Present
Past perf.	*He had done all **that was necessary**.**	Past
Present	*He says **that he is going to eat it**.*	Pres. continuous
Past	*He said **that he was going to eat it**.**	Past continuous

Note that infinitive and gerunds are not affected by the above rule:

He wants to go to Lyons. *He wanted to go to Lyons.*
He likes riding. *He liked riding.*

The rule about sequence of tenses applies also to indirect speech when the introductory verb is in a past tense. (See chapter 31.)

21 The conditional

The conditional tenses

219 The present conditional tense

A *This is formed with would/should + infinitive for the first person and would + infinitive for the other persons.*

Affirmative	*I would/I'd work or / should work*
	you would/you'd work etc.
Negative	I would not/wouldn't work or
	I should not/shouldn't work
	you would not/wouldn't work etc.
Interrogative	would/should I work?
	would you work? etc.
Negative interrogative	should I not/shouldn't I work?
	would you wit/wouldn't you work? etc.

B *It is used:*

(a) in conditional sentences (see 221-9).

(b) In special uses of ***would*** *and* ***should*** *(see chapter 22).*

(c) As a past equivalent of the future simple, would/should must be used instead of will/shall when the main verb of the sentence is in the past tense:

I hope (that)I will/shall succeed.
I hoped (that) I would/should succeed.
I know (that) he will be in time.
I knew (that) he would be in time.
He thinks (that) they will give him a visa.
He thought (that) they would give him a visa.
I expect (that) the plane will be diverted.
I expected (that) the plane would be diverted.

(For ***will/shall, would/should*** *in indirect speech, see chapter 31.)*

220 The perfect conditional tense

A *This is formed with would/should and the perfect infinitive:*

Affirmative	I would/should have worked
	you would have worked etc.
Negative	I would not/should not have worked etc.
Interrogative	would/should I haw worked? etc.
Negative interrogative	should I not have/shouldn't I have worked'
	would you not have/wouldn't you
	have worked? etc.

Other contractions as in 219,

B It is used:

(a) In conditional sentences (see 221-9).
(b) In special uses of would and should (see 230-7).
(c) As a past equivalent of the future perfect tense:

I hope he will have finished before we get back.
I hoped he would have finished before we got back.

Conditional sentences

Conditional sentences have two parts: the **if**-clause and the main clause. In the sentence *If it rains I shall stay at home* 'If it rams' is the **if**-clause, and 'I shall stay at home' is the main clause, There are three kinds of conditional sentences. Each kind contains a different pair of tenses. With each type certain variations are possible but students who are studying the conditional for the first time should ignore these and concentrate on the basic forms.

221 Conditional sentences type 1: probable

A The verb in the if-clause is in the present tense; the verb in the main clause is in the future simple. It doesn't matter which comes first.

If he runs he'll get there in time.
The cat will scratch you if you pull her fail.

This type of sentence implies that the action in the if-clause is quite probable.

Note that the meaning here is present or future, but the verb in the if-clause is in a present, not a future tense, if + will/would is only possible with certain special meanings. (See 224.)

Possible variations of the basic form

Variations of the main clause

Instead of **if** + present + future, we may have:

(a) **if** + present + **may/might** (possibility)

If the fog gets thicker the plane may/might be diverted. (Perhaps the plane will be diverted.)

(b) **if** + present + **may** (permission) or can (permission or ability)

If your documents are in order you may/can leave at once. (permission)
If it stops snowing we can go out. (permission or ability)

(c) **if** + present + **must, should** or any expression of command, request or advice

If you want to lose weight you must/should eat less bread.
If you want to lose weight you had better eat less bread.
If you want to lose weight eat less bread.
If you see Tom tomorrow could you ask him to ring me?

(d) **if** + present + another present tense

if + two present tenses is used to express automatic or habitual results:

I/you heat ice it turns to water. (.will turn is also possible.)
I/there is a shortage of any product prices of that product go up.

(e) When **if** is used to mean **as/since** (see 338 A), a variety of tenses can be used in the main clause:

Ann hates London. ~ I/she hates it why does she live there?/she ought to move out. (*If so* could replace *If she hates it* here.)

This is not, of course, a true conditional clause.

2 Variations of the **if**-clause

Instead of **if** + present tense, we can have:

(a) **if** + present continuous, to indicate a present action or a future arrangement

If you are waiting for a bus (present action) *you'd better join the queue.*
If you are looking for Peter (present action) *you'll find him upstairs.*
If you are staying for another night (future arrangement) *I'll ask the manager to give you a better room.*

(b) **if** + present perfect

If you have finished dinner I'll ask the waiter for the bill.
If he has written the letter I'll post it.
I/they haven't seen the museum we'd better go there today.

222 Conditional sentences type 2

A The verb in the if-clause is in the past tense; the verb in the main clause is in the conditional tense:

If I had a map I would lend it to you. (But I haven't a map. The meaning here is present.)
If someone tried to blackmail me I would tell the police. (But I don't expect that anyone will try to blackmail me. The meaning here is future.)

There is no difference in time between the first and second types of conditional sentence. Type 2, like type 1, refers to the present or future, and the past tense in the if-clause is not a true past but a subjunctive, which indicates unreality (as in the first example above) or improbability (as in the second example above).

B Type 2 is used:

1 When the supposition is contrary to known facts:

If I lived near my office I'd be in time for work. (But I don't live near my office.)

If I were you I'd plant some trees round the house. (But I am not you.)

2 When we don't expect the action in the if-clause to take place:

If a burglar came into my room at night I'd scream. (But I don't expect a burglar to come in.)

If I dyed my hair blue everyone would laugh at me. (But I don't intend to dye it.)

Some if-clauses can have either of the above meanings:

If he left his bicycle outside someone would steal it.

'If he left his bicycle' could imply 'but he doesn't' (present meaning, as in 1 above) or 'but he doesn't intend to' (future meaning, as in 2). But the correct meaning is usually clear from the text. Ambiguity of this kind can be avoided by using **were/was** + infinitive instead of the past tense in type 2.

if he/she/it were can be used instead of **if he/she/it was**, and is considered the more correct form:

If he were to resign . . . = If he resigned . . .

If I were to succeed . . . = If I succeeded . . .

This construction with **were** is chiefly found in fairly formal sentences.

if he/she/it was + infinitive is possible in colloquial English, but the past tense, as shown above, is much more usual.

B Sometimes, rather confusingly, type 2 can be used as an alternative to type 1 for perfectly possible plans and suggestions:

Will Mary be in time if she gets the ten o'clock bus? ~ No, but she'd be in time if she got the nine-thirty bus or *No, but she'll be in time if she gets the nine-thirty bus.*

We'll never save £100! ~ If we each saved £10 a week we'd do it in ten weeks or

If we each save £10 a week we'll do it in ten weeks.

A suggestion in type 2 is a little more polite than a suggestion in type 1, just as **would you** is a more polite request form than **will you**. But the student needn't trouble too much over this use of type 2.

Possible variations of the basic form

Variations of the main clause

(a) might or could may be used instead of would:

If you tried again you would succeed. (certain result)

If you tried again you might succeed. (possible result)

If I knew her number I could ring her up. (ability)

If he had a permit he could get a Job. (ability or permission)

(b) The continuous conditional form may be used instead of the simple conditional form:

Peter is on holiday; he is touring Italy. ~ If I were on holiday

I would/might be touring Italy too.

(c) if + past tense can be followed by another past tense when we wish to express automatic or habitual reactions in the past: compare **if** + two present tenses, 221 B1(d). Note that the past tenses here have a past meaning:

If anyone interrupted him he got angry, (whenever anyone interrupted him)

If there was a scarcity of anything prices of that thing went up.

(d) When **if** is used to mean 'as' or 'since', a variety of tenses is possible in the main clause, **if** + past tense here has a past meaning. The sentence is not a true conditional,

The pills made him dizzy. Ail the same he bought/has bought/is buying some more. ~ If they made him dizzy why did he buy/has he bought/is he buying more?

I knew she was short of money. ~ If you knew she was short of money you should have lent her some./why didn't you lend her some?

2 Variations of the **if**-clause

Instead of **if** + simple past we can have:

(a) **if** + past continuous

(We're going by air and) I hate flying. If we were going by boat I'd feel much happier.

If my car was working I would/could drive you to the station.

(b) if + past perfect

If he had taken my advice he would be a rich man now.

(This is a mixture of types 2 and 3. For more examples, see 223,) (For if + would, see 224.)

223 Conditional sentences type 3

A The verb in the if-clause is in the past perfect tense; the verb in the main clause is in the perfect conditional. The time is past and the condition cannot be fulfilled because the action in the if-clause didn't happen.

If I had known that you were coming I would have met you at the airport. (But I didn't know, so I didn't come.)

If he had tried to leave the country he would have been stopped at the frontier. (But he didn't try.)

B Possible variations of the basic form

1 could or might may be used instead of would:

If we had found him earlier we could have saved his life. (ability)

If we had found him earlier we might have saved his life. (possibility)

If our documents had been in order we could have left at once. (ability or permission)

2 The continuous form of the perfect conditional may be used:

At the time of the accident I was sitting in the back of the car, because Tom's little boy was sitting beside him in front. If Tom's boy had not been there I would have been sitting in front.

3 We can use the past perfect continuous in the if-clause:

I was wearing a seat belt. If I hadn't been wearing one I'd have been seriously injured.

4 A combination of types 2 and 3 is possible:

The plane I intended to catch crashed and everyone was killed. If I had caught that plane I would be dead now or I would have been killed. (type 3)

If I had worked harder at school I would be sitting in a comfortable office now; I wouldn't be sweeping the streets. (But I didn't work hard at school and now I am sweeping the streets.)

5 **had** can be placed first and the if omitted:

I/you had obeyed orders this disaster would not have happened = Had you obeyed orders this disaster would not have happened.

224 Special uses of **will/would** and **should** in **if**-clauses

Normally these auxiliaries are not used after if in conditional sentences. There are, however, certain exceptions.

A **if you will/would** is often used m polite requests. **would** is the more polite form.

If you will/would wait a moment I'll see if Mr Jones is free.

(Please wait.)

I would be very grateful if you would make the arrangements for me.

if you would +• infinitive is often used aione when the request is one which would normally be made in the circumstances. The speaker assumes that the other person will comply as a matter of course.

If you'd fill up this form.

(in a hotel) *If you'd just sign the register*.

(in a shop) *If you'd put your address on the back of the cheque*.

(in a classroom) *If you 'd open your books*.

if + will/would can be used with all persons to indicate willingness:

If he'll listen to me I'll be able to help him. (If he is willing to listen . . .)

If Tom would tell me what he wants for his dinner I'd cook it for him. (The speaker implies that Tom is unwilling to tell her.) .

won't used in this way can mean 'refuse':

If he won't listen to me I can't help him. (if he is unwilling to listen/If he refuses to listen . . .)

If they won't accept a cheque we'll have to Ray cash. (If they refuse to accept. . .)

will can be used to express obstinate insistence (230 B):

If you 'will play the drums all night no wonder the neighbours complain. (If you insist on playing . . .)

if + would like/care can be used instead of if + want/wish and is more polite;

If you would like to come I'll get a ticket for you.

If you'd care to see the photographs I'll bring them round.
If he'd like to leave his car here he can.

But if we rearrange such sentences so that **would like** has no object, we can drop the **would**:

If you like I'll get a ticket for you but
If you'd like a ticket I'll get one for you.
If he likes he can leave his car here but
If he'd like to leave his car here he can or
He can learn it here if he'd like to.

E **if + should** can be used in type 1 to indicate that the action, though possible, is not very likely. It is usually combined with an imperative and is chiefly used in written instructions:

If you should have any difficulty in getting spare parts ring this number.
If these biscuits should arrive in a damaged condition please inform the factory at once.

should can be placed first and the if omitted:

Should these biscuits arrive . . . (See 225 B.)

225 if + were and inversion of subject and auxiliary

A **if + were** instead of **if + was**

1 Usually either can be used, were being more likely in formal English:

I/she was/were offered the job she'd take it.
If Tom was/were here he 'd know what to do.

2 But **were** is a little more usual than **was** in the advice form *If I were/ was you I would/should . . .*

If I were you I would wait a bit,' he said. (See 287 C.)

were is also more usual in the infinitive construction:

If Peter were/was to apply for the post he'd get it. (See 222 B.)

3 were, not was, is used when the auxiliary is placed first:

Were I Tom I would refuse. (See B below.)

When **if** means 'since' (see 222 C) **was** cannot be replaced by **were**.
were can replace **was** after *if only* (see 228) and *wish* (see 300),

B **if** + subject + auxiliary can be replaced in formal English by inversion of auxiliary and subject with **if** omitted:

If I were in his shoes . . . = Were I in his shoes . . .
If you should require anything . . . =
Should you require anything . . .
If he had known . . . = Had he known . . .

226 if, even if, whether, unless, but for, otherwise, provided, suppose

A even if = even though

Compare:

You must go tomorrow if you are ready and
You must go tomorrow even if you aren't ready.

B **whether ... or = if... or**

You must go tomorrow whether you are ready or not.

C **unless** + affirmative verb = **if** + negative

Unless you start at once you 'll be late = If you don't start at once you 'll be late.
Unless you had a permit you couldn't get a job = If you hadn't a permit you couldn't get a job.

Note the difference between:

(a) Don't call 'me if you need help and
(b) Don't call me unless you need help.

In (a) he won't help her even if she needs help. In (b) he will help her if she needs help but doesn't want non-urgent calls.

unless + he'd/you'd like/prefer etc. normally replaces if he/you wouldn't like etc.:

I'll ask Tom, unless you 'd prefer me to ask/unless you 'd rather
I asked Bill.

but for = 'if it were not for/if it hadn't been for'

My father Rays my fees. But for that! wouldn't be here. The car broke down. But for that we would have been in time.

otherwise = 'if this doesn't happen/didn't happen/hadn't happened' We must be back before midnight; otherwise we'll be locked out = I/we are not back by midnight we'll be locked out. Her father pays her fees; otherwise she wouldn't be here = If her father didn't pay her fees she wouldn't be here. I used my calculator; otherwise I'd have taken longer = If I hadn't used my calculator I'd have taken longer.
In colloquial English or (+ else) can often replace otherwise:
We must be early or (else) we won't get a seat.
provided (that) can replace if when there is a strong idea of limitation or restriction. It is chiefly used with permission. You can camp here provided you leave no mess.
suppose/supposing . . . ? = what if. . . ?
Suppose the plane is late? = What if/What will happen if the plane is late? Suppose no one had been there? = What if no one had been there? suppose can also introduce suggestions:
Suppose you ask him/Why don't you ask him?

227 if and in case

in case is followed by a present or past tense or by should (see 337). It appears similar to if and is often confused with it. But the two are completely different.
An in case clause gives a reason for the action in the main clause:
Some cyclists carry repair outfits in case they have a puncture == Some cyclists cany repair outfits because they may have/because if i;
possible they will have a puncture.
! always slept by the phone in case he rang during the night =
I always slept by the phone because (I knew) he might ring during
the night.
An in case clause can be dropped without changing the meaning of the main clause. In a conditional sentence, however, the action in the main clause depends on the action in the if-clause, and if the if-clause is dropped the meaning of the main clause changes. Compare:
(a) BILL: I'll come tomorrow in case Ann wants me and
(b) TOM: I'll came tomorrow if Ann wants me. In (a) perhaps Ann will want Bill, perhaps she won't. But Bill will come anyway. His action doesn't depend on Ann's, in case Ann wants me could be omitted without changing the meaning of the main verb. In (b), a conditional sentence, Tom will only come if Ann asks him. His action depends on hers. We cannot remove if Ann wants me without changing the meaning of the main verb.
B An in case clause is normally placed after the main clause, not before it. Note, however, that in case of + noun = if there is a/an + noun:
In case of accident phone 999 = If there is an accident phow 999, This may have led to the confusion of if-clauses and in case clauses.

228 if only

only can be placed after if and indicates hope, a wish or regret, according to the tense used with it.

A **if only** + present tense/will expresses hope:
If only he conies in time = We hope he will come in time.
If only he will listen to her = We hope he will be willing to listen to her.

B **if only** + past/past perfect expresses regret (see also **wish** + past/past perfect, 300):
If only he didn't smoke! = We wish he didn't smoke or We are sorry he smokes.
If only (= I/We wish) Tom were here!
If only you hadn't said, 'Liar'! = We wish you hadn't said, 'Liar'/We are sorry you said, 'Liar'.

C **if only + would** can express regret about a present action as an alternative to if only 4- past tense (it has the same meaning as wish + would):
If only he would drive more slowly! == We are sorry that he isn't willing to drive more slowly or a not very hopeful wish concerning the future:
If only (= I/We wish) the rain would stop! (We don't really expect it
to stop.)
(See also wish, 300-1.)
if only clauses can stand alone as above or form part of a ful! conditional sentence.

229 Conditional sentences in indirect speech

Type 1, basic form. The tenses here change in the usual way:
He said, 'If I catch the plane fit be home by five' = He said that if he caught the plane he would be home by five.
Type 2, basic form. No tense changes:
'If I had a permit I could gel a job,' he said = He said that if he had a permit he could get a job.
Type 3, basic form. No tense changes:
'If she had loved Tom.'he said, 'she wouldn't have left him' = He said that if she had loved Tom she wouldn't have left him.
Examples of if-clauses + commands and requests in indirect speech (see also 320-1):
He said, 'if you have time wash the floor' or
He said. 'If you have time would you wash the floor?' =
He told/asked me to wash the floor if I had time (note change of order) or
He said that if I had time I was to wash the floor.
'If you see Ann ask her to ring me,' he said =
He said that if I saw Ann I was to ask her to ring him.
(The infinitive construction here would be clumsy and less clear,)
PETER (on phone): If you miss the last bus get a taxi =
Peter says that if we miss the last bus we are to get a taxi. (The infinitive construction would be much iess usual here.)
(For if you would . . . requests, see 284 F.)
if-clauses + expressions of advice in indirect speech:
'If you feel ill,' she said, 'why d/m 'I you go to bed?' or
'. . . you'd better go to bed' =
She advised me to go to bed if I felt ill or
She said that if I felt ill I'd better/I should go to bed.
'If I were you I'd stop taking pills.' she said =
She advised me to stop taking pills.
if-clauses + questions are usually reported with the if-clause last:
'If the baby is a girl what will they call her?' he wondered = He wondered what they would call the baby if it was a girl, 'If the door is locked what shall I do?' she asked = She asked what she would do if the door was locked.

22 Other uses of will/would, shall/should

For **will/shall** in commands, see 282.
For **will/would** in requests, see 284.
For **will/would** in invitations, see 286.
For **would/should** used with like, prefer, wish etc., see chapter 29.

230 Habits expressed by will, would

A Habits in the present are normally expressed by the simple present tense; but will + infinitive can be used instead when we wish to emphasize the characteristics of the performer rather than the action performed. It is chiefly used in general statements:

An Englishman will usually show you the way in the street. (It is normal for an Englishman to act in this way.)

This is not a very important use of will, but the past form, would, has a much wider use and can replace used to when we are describing a past routine:

On Sundays he used to/would get up early and go fishing. He used to/would spend the whole day by the river and in the evening used to/would come home with marvellous stories of the fish he had nearly caught.

Note, however, that when used to expresses a discontinued habit, it cannot be replaced by would. (See 162.)

Both will and would can be contracted when used as above.

B will can also express obstinate insistence, usually habitual;

If you 'will keep your watch half an hour slow it is hardly surprising that you are late for your appointments. would is used in the past:

We all tried to stop him smoking in bed but he 'would do it. will and would are not contracted here and are strongly stressed,

C would can express a characteristic action, usually one which annoys the speaker:

Bill objects/objected. — He 'would'./He 'would object! (He always objects.)

231 should/would think + that-clause or so/not

(See 347 for so/not used to replace clauses.)

Will it be expensive? - I should/would think so./I should think if would. (= probably 'Yes') or
I shouldn't think it would./I shouldn't/wouldn't think so./

I should/would think not. (= probably'No') By this sort of answer the speaker implies that he doesn't really know but that this is his impression. I should/would think is therefore less confident than / think.

so/not is not usually possible when should/would think introduces a comment. A that-clause therefore has to be used:

He's an astrologer, looking for work. ~ I shouldn't/wouldn't think that he'd find it easy to get work.

If we are commenting on a past action we use should/would have thought:

He actually got a job as an astrologer. ~ I shouldn 't/wouldn 't have thought that it was possible to do that.

should/would have expected + an infinitive construction or a that-clause is also possible. The impersonal pronoun you can sometimes replace I:

She has emigrated. ~ Has she? You'd/I'd have expected her to stay in this country.

232 would for past intention

As has already been noted would is the past equivalent of will when will is used for the ordinary future:

He knows he will be late. He knew he would be late. would similarly is the past equivalent of will used to express intention ' (see 201):

I said, 'I will help him' =
I said that I would help him.
He said, '! won't lend you a penny' =

He said that he wouldn 't lend me a penny. But notice that whereas would used for future or intention is restricted to subordinate clauses as in the above examples, wouldn't used for negative intention can stand aione:
He won't help me today. (He refuses to help.)
He wouldn't help me yesterday. (He refused to help.) would cannot be used in this way. So to put a sentence such as / will help him today into the past, we have to replace will by another verb:
I wanted/intended/offered to help him yesterday.

233 **shall I/we?** in requests for orders or advice, offers, suggestions

Requests for orders:
How shall I cook it? Where shall we put this? When the request is for advice only we use either shall or should:
Which one shall I buy? or Which one should I buy?
Offers:
Shall I waif for you? Shall! help you to Rack?
Suggestions:
Shall we meet at the theatre? Let's meet at the- theatre, shall we?
(See 318 for shall I/we? in indirect speech.)

234 **shall** in the second and third persons

shall can express (A) the subject's intention to perform a certain action or to cause it to be performed, and (B) a command. Both these uses are old-fashioned and formal and normally avoided in modern spoken English.

A Examples of shall used to express the speaker's intention:
You shall have a sweet = I'll give you a sweet or I'll see that you get a sweet. He shan't come here = / won't let him come here. They shall not pass = We won't let them pass. In the past, i.e. in indirect speech, it is usually necessary to change the wording:
He said, 'You shall have a sweet' = He promised me a sweet.

B Examples of shall used to express a command:
Yachts shall go round the course, passing the marks in the correct order, (yacht-racing rules)
Members shall enter the names of their guests in the book provided. (club rules)
This construction is chiefly used in regulations or legal documents. In less formal English must or are to would be used instead of shall in the above sentences. (See also 282.)

C **shall you?** is an old-fashioned form which is occasionally still found in some novels possibly because it is shorter and neater than the future continuous tense:
Shall you go? -= Will you be going?

235 **that. . . should** after certain verbs

Certain verbs can be followed by **that** + subject + **should** as an alternative to a gerund or infinitive construction.
that. . . should is particularly useful in the passive and sometimes is the only possible passive form.
that. . . should is more formal than a gerund or infinitive construction and usually implies less direct contact between the advisers/organizers etc. and the people who are to carry out the action. Verbs which can be used with that. . . should include the following:
advise, agree, arrange, ask, beg, command, decide, demand determine insist, order, propose, recommend, request, stipulate, suggest, urge. Note also: be anxious, be determined.
She advised that we should keep the gate Socked.
She advised that the gate should be kept locked.
She advised keeping the gate locked/advised us to keep it locked.

(See 267.)
recommend could be used above instead of advise and would sound more formal -
They agreed/decided that the roof should be repaired. They agreed/decided to repair the roof.
He arranged that I should go abroad.
He arranged/or me to go abroad.
They arranged that the minister should be met at the airport.
They arranged/or the minister to be met at the airport.
be anxious (= wish: see 27 C) takes the same construction as arrange:
He is anxious that classes should start/should he started at once. He is anxious/or classes to start/to be started at once.
They asked/begged/urged that relief work should he given priority. They asked/begged/urged the authorities to give relief work priority. (See 243.)
He commanded that the army should advance. (He was not
necessarily with the army.)
He commanded the army to advance. (He probably was with the
army.)
She determined/was determined that he should study music. She determined/was determined to let him/make him study music. She insisted that he should study music/insisted on his studying music. (See 262.)
He ordered that Ann should go. (He probably told someone else to
tell her.)
He ordered Ann to go. (He probably told her himself.) (See 320.)
He ordered that the goods should be sent by air.
He ordered the goods to be sent by air.
He proposed/suggested that we should try homeopathic remedies. (See 289.)
He proposed/suggested that homeopathic remedies should be tried. i, He proposed/suggested (our) trying homeopathic remedies.
They stipulated that the best materials should be used. They stipulated/or the best materials So be used.
should is sometimes omitted before be. (See 291 C.)
236 it is/was + adjective + that . . . should

A that. . . should can be used after if is/was advisable, better, desirable. essential, imperative, important, natural, necessary; after fair (.= just), just, right (these are often preceded by only) and after reasonable, as an alternative to a for+ infinitive construction:
It is advisable that everyone should have a map.
It is better for him to hear itfrwn you.
If is better that he should hear it/row you.
It is essential for him to be prepared for this.
ft is essential that he should be prepared for this.
!t is only right that she should have a share. should is sometimes omitted before be:
It is essential that he be prepared.

B that. . . should can be used after it is/was absurd, amazing, annoying, ludicrous, odd, ridiculous, strange, surprising and similar adjectives as an alternative to that + present/past tense:
It is ridiculous that we should be (= that we are) short of water in a
country where it is always raining. The perfect infinitive is sometimes used when referring to past events:
It is amazing that she should have said (= that she said) nothing
about the murder.

237 Other uses of should

A After can't think why/don't know why/see no reason why etc. when the
speaker queries the reasonableness or justice of an assumption:
/ don't know why you should think that I did it. I see no reason why you should interfere in their quarrel.
The perfect infinitive is usual when the assumption was in the past:
I can't think why he should have said that it was my fault.

B Idiomatically with what, where, who in dramatic expressions of surprise:
What should J find but an enormous spider' Quite often the surprise is embarrassing:
Who should come in but his first wife!

C After lest and sometimes after in case:

1 In literary English lest. . . should is sometimes placed after expressions of fear or anxiety;

He was terrified lest he should slip w the icy rocks. should •+• perfect infinitive is used when the anxiety concerns a previous action:

She began to be worried lest he should have met with some accident.

lest can also be used in purpose clauses to mean 'for fear that':

He dared not spend the money lest someone should ask where
he had got it.

As above, this is a literary form.

in case, which is more usual than lest here, can be followed bv should or by an ordinary present or past tense:

in case someone should ask/someone asked (See also 227, 337.)

should is sometimes used in purpose clauses as an alternative to would/could:

He wore a mask so that no one should recognize him. (See 336.)

In conditional sentences instead of the present tense:

If the pain should return fake another of these pills. (See 224.)

In indirect, rather formal, commands when the recipient of the command is not necessarily addressed directly:

He ordered that Tom should leave the house. (See 321 B.) Compare with He ordered Tom to leave which implies that he told Tom himself.

23 The infinitive

238 Form

A Examples of infinitive forms
Present infinitive to work, to do Present continuous infinitive to be working
to be doing Perfect infinitive to have worked, to have
done Perfect continuous infinitive to have been working
to have been doing Present infinitive passive to be done
Perfect infinitive passive to have been done

B The full infinitive consists of two words, to + verb, as shown above. But after certain verbs and expressions we use the form without to, i.e. the 'bare infinitive' (see 246);
You had better say nothing. (See 120.)

C It is not normally advisable to put any words between the to and the verb, but see 248, split infinitives.

D To avoid repetition, an infinitive is sometimes represented by its to:
Do you smoke? ~ No, but I used to (smoke). (See 247.)

239 Uses of the infinitive

A The infinitive may be used alone. We began to walk, or as part of an infinitive phrase, We began to walk down the road.

B The infinitive may be the subject of a sentence (see 240),

C The infinitive may be the complement of a verb:
His plan is to keep the affair secret.

D The infinitive may be the object or part of the object of a verb.
It can follow the verb directly: He wants to pay (see 241, 243) or follow verb + how, what etc. (see 242) or follow verb •+• object: He wants w to pay (see 243, 244).

E be + infinitive can express commands or instructions (see 114). F The infinitive can express purpose (see 334).

G The infinitive can be used after certain adjectives:
angry, glad. happy, sorry (see 26) fortunate, likely, lucky (see 27)
The infinitive can connect two clauses (see 249).
The infinitive can sometimes replace relative clauses (see 77, 250).
The infinitive can be used after certain nouns (see 251).
The infinitive can be used with too/enough and certain adjectives/adverbs (see 252).
An infinitive phrase such as to tell the truth, to cut a long story short can be placed at the beginning or end of a sentence (see 253).

The infinitive as subject

An infinitive or an infinitive phrase can be the subject of the verbs appear, be, seem. The infinitive can be placed first:

To compromise appears advisable.

To lean out of the window is dangerous.

To save money now seems impossible.

But it is more usual to place the pronoun it first, and move the infinitive or infinitive phrase to the end of the sentence:

It appears advisable to compromise.

It is dangerous to lean out of the window.

It seemed impossible to save money. it here is known as the introductory it. Note its use with interrogatives:

Would it be safe to camp here?

Wouldn 't it be better to go on?

The it construction is necessary here. Would 4- to cam? and Wouldn't + to go on would not be possible.

Usually infinitive constructions of this type consist of it + be +
adjective + infinitive. (See 26-7,)

But sometimes a noun can be used instead of an adjective:

It would be a crime/a mistake/a pity to cut down any more trees.

It is an offence to drop lifter in the street.

cost/take + object can also be used:

It would cost millions/fake years to rebuild the castle.

The gerund can be used instead of the infinitive when the action is being considered in a general sense, but it is always safe to use an infinitive. When we wish to refer to one particular action we must use the infinitive:
He said, 'Do come.' It was impossible to refuse. But It is not always easy to refuse invitations can be replaced by Refusing invitations is not always easy. Here the action is considered in a general sense, and either gerund or infinitive is possible. (See also 258.)
F An it + infinitive construction may be preceded by believe/consider/ discover/expect/find/think (that) and wonder (if):
He thought (that) it would be safer to go by train. After find used in this way we can omit that + the verb be, i.e. we can say:
He found (that) it was easy to earn extra money or
He found it easy to earn extra money.
He will find (that) it is hard to make friends or
He will find it hard to make friends. This is sometimes also possible with think:
He thought it safer to go.
After other verbs, however, the student is advised not to omit the be. (For similar gerund constructions, see 258.)
G The perfect infinitive can also be used as the subject of a sentence:
To have made the same mistake twice was unforgivable.
Similarly with it first:
It is better to have loved and lost than never to have loved at all.
241 The infinitive as object or complement of the verb
A The roost useful verbs which can be followed directly by the infinitive are:
agree** be determined** pretend* aim endeavour proceed appear*
fail promise* arrange* * forget* prove* ask*' guarantee* refuse
attempt happen* remember* bother hesitate resolve*" care (negative)
hope seem* choose leam* swear* claim"[1]' long tend
condescend manage threaten* consent neglect trouble (negative)
decide** offer try (= attempt) decline plan undertake* demand**
prepare volunteer determine** be prepared vow
" See D, ** see F.
Auxiliary verbs
be dare have must ought will can do may need shall used
(For verbs taking object + infinitive, see 244. For verbs taking infinitive or gerund, see chapter 25.)
The following phrases can also be followed by an infinitive:
be about make up one's mind* (= decide) be able + afford occur* + to + object
do one's best/ sef out do what one can take the trouble make an/every effort
turn out* (= prove to be) * See D.
Examples of A and B
She agreed to pay £50.
Two men failed to return from the expedition.
I managed to put the fire out.
They are preparing (= getting ready) to evacuate the area.
We are not prepared (= willing) to wait any longer.
The tenants refused to lease.
Prices always lend to go up.
She volunteered to help with Meals on Wheels.
fie is just about to leave, (on the point of leaving)
We can't afford to live in the centre.
He didn't bother/trouble to answer personally. Opposite of the above:
He took the trouble to answer personally.
Starred verbs or expressions can also be used with a that-dause (see 346);
/ promise to wait = I promise that I will wait.
He pretended to be angry = He pretended that he was angry. occur (used mainly in negative and interrogative) requires an introductory it both with an infinitive and a that construction;
It didn't occur to me to ask him for proof of his identity. (I didn't think of doing this.)
It occurred to me that he was trying to conceal something. (The idea came to me.)
appear, happen, seem, turn out, when used with a that construction, also require an introductory it:
/(turned out that his 'country cottage' was an enormous bungalow

but
His 'country cottage' turned out to be an enormous bungalow.
(infinitive construction)
But a verb + infinitive does not necessarily have the same meaning as the same verb used with a that-clause- With leam, forget and remember the meaning will be different;
He leamt to look after himself.
He learnt (= was told) that it would cost £100.
He forgot to leave the car keys on the table. (He didn't leave them.)
He forgot that his brother wanted to use the car. remember could be used similarly with the opposite meaning. agree/decide + infinitive expresses an intention to act.
agree that. . . expresses an opinion. decide that. . . expresses a conclusion or a decision not necessarily
leading to action.
F Verbs with two stars take an infinitive or a that. . . should
construction, that. . . should is particularly useful in the passive
(see 302).
They decided/agreed to divide the profits equally. They decided that the profits should be divided equally. I arranged to meet/for Tom to meet them. I arranged that Torn should meet them. I arranged that they should be met.
G The continuous infinitive is often used after appear, happen,
pretend, seem:
/ happened to be looking out of the window when they arrived.
He seems to be following us.
It is also possible after agree, arrange, decide, determine, hope, manage, plan and the auxiliary verbs (see 254).
H The perfect infinitive is possible after appear, hope, pretend, seem
and the auxiliary verbs (see 255).
242 Verb + how/what/when/where/which/why + infinitive
A The verbs most frequently used in this way are ask, decide, discover, find out, forget, know, learn, remember, see (= understand/perceive), show + object, think, understand, want to know, wonder:
He discovered how to open the safe.
I found out where to buy, fruit cheaply.
I didn 't know when to switch the machine off.
I showed her which button to press.
She couldn't think what to say.
(Note that this construction is not usual after think in the simple present or past, but can be used after other tenses of think, or after think as a second verb, as in the last example above.)
B whether + infinitive can be used similarly after want to know,
wonder:
/ wonder/wondered whether to write or phone and after decide, know, remember, think when these verbs follow a
negative or interrogative verb:
You needn 't decide yet whether to study arts or science. He couldn 't remember whether to turn left or right.
C ask, decide, forget, learn, remember can also be followed directly by the infinitive (see 241). But the meaning is not necessarily the same-learn how + infinitive = 'acquire a skill':
She learnt how to make lace
though if the skill is a fairly usual one, the how is normally dropped;
She learnt to drive a car. learn + infinitive (without how) can have another meaning:
She learnt to trust nobody =
She found from experience that it was belter to trust wibody.
Note also:
/ decided to do it = I said to myself. Til do it.'
I decided how to do it = I said to myself, 'I'll do it this way.'
I remembered to get a ticket. (I got a ticket.)
/ remembered where to get a ticket. (I remembered that the tickets
could be obtained from the Festival Office.)
The infinitive after verb or verb + object

The most important verbs which can be used in either of these ways are ask, beg, expect, would hate, help, intend, like (= think wise or right), would like (= enjoy), would love, mean, prefer, want, wish:
He likes to eat well.
He likes his staff to eat well.
I want to ride. ! want you to ride too.
ask and beg
ask + infinitive has a different meaning from ask + object + infinitive:
/ asked to speak to Mrs Jones =
I said, 'Could I speak to Mrs Jones?' but
/ asked Bill to speak to her •=
I said, 'Bill, would you speak to her?' With beg there is a similar difference, though beg is not often followed directly by the infinitive:
/ begged (to be allowed) to go = I said, 'Please let me go.'
I begged him to go = I said, 'Please go.' ask and beg can be followed by that. . . should (see 235).
expect + infinitive and expect + object •+• infinitive can have the same meaning:
I expect to arrive tomorrow =
I think it is likely that I will arrive tomorrow.
I expect him to arrive tomorrow =
I think it is likely that he will arrive tomorrow. But very often expect + object + infinitive conveys the idea of duty;
He expects his wife to bring him breakfast in bed at weekends. (He
thinks it is her duty to do this.)
expect can also be followed by that + subject + verb. Here there is no idea of duty.
For examples of care, hate, like, love and prefer used with infinitives or gerunds, see 294-8. .
intend, mean, want can also be followed by gerunds (see 266).

244 The infinitive after verb + object

A The most important of these are:
advise forbid make (b) show how allow force oblige teach/teach how bribe
hear (b) order tell/tell hovi command implore permit tempt compel induce
persuade train enable instruct remind urge encourage invite request warn entitle
let (b) see (b) watch (b) feel (b)
(b) here means 'bare infinitive'. (See 246.) advise, allow and permit can also be used with gerunds. (For verbs of knowing and thinking, see 245.)

B Examples of verb + object + infinitive:
These glasses will enable you to see in the dark.
She encouraged me to try again.
They forbade her to leave the house or
She was forbidden to leave the house, (more usual)
Nothing would induce me to do business with them.
They persuaded us to go with them.
They are training these dogs to sniff out drugs.

C show/teach/tell + how
show used with an infinitive requires how:
He showed me how to change a fuse. tell how 4- infinitive = 'instruct':
He told me how to replace a fuse. (He gave me the necessary
information or instructions.) But tell + object + infinitive = 'order':
He told me to change the fuse = He said, 'Change the fuse.'
teach how:
We can teach someone (how) to swim, dance, type, ride etc.:
He taught me how to light a fire without matches. how is possible, but when the skill is a fairly usual one the how is normally dropped: He taught me to ride. teach + object + infinitive (without how) can also mean to teach ur train someone to behave in a certain way:
He taught me to obey all commands without asking questions.

D remind, show, teach, tell can also be followed by that:

He reminded me that the road was dangerous. He showed me that it was quite easy. Note that tell + that does not have the same meaning as tell +
infinitive:
He told (= ordered) me to go. He told (.= informed) me that I was late.

E **request** can also be followed by that +. should. This construction is chiefly used in the passive:

He requested that the matter should be kept secret.

245 The infinitive after verbs of knowing and thinking etc.

A **assume, believe, consider, feel, know, suppose, understand** can be followed by object + **to be**:

I consider him to be the best candidate.

But it is much more common to use that + an ordinary tense:

I consider that he is the best candidate.

With think, estimate and presume the object + infinitive construction is extremely rare, a that-clause being normally used instead:

I think that he is the best player.
They estimate that this vase is 2.000 years old.

B When, however, these verbs are used in the passive they are more often followed by an infinitive than by the that construction:

He is known to be honest = It is known that he is honest.
He is thought to be the best player = It is thought that he is . ..
This vase is estimated to be 2,000 years old.

C Note, however, that suppose when used in the passive often conveys an idea of duty:

You are supposed to know the laws of your own country = It is your duty to know/You are expected to know . . .

D The continuous infinitive can also be used:

He is thought to be hiding in the woods. (People think he is hiding.)
He is supposed to be washing the car. (He should be washing it.)

E When the thought concerns a previous action we use the perfect infinitive:

They are believed to have landed in America. (It is believed that they landed.)

suppose + perfect infinitive may or may not convey an idea of duty.
They are supposed to have discovered America means 'It is thought that they did'.
But *You are supposed to have read the instructions* would normally mean 'You should have read them'.
(For infinitive constructions after passive verbs, see also 306.)

246 The bare infinitive after verbs and expressions

A **can. do, may, must, shall, will**:

They could do it today. *I may as well start at once.*
He will probably object.

need and **dare**, except when they are conjugated with **do/did** or **will/would**;
You needn 't say anything but You don 'f/ivon 't need to say anything. I dared not wake him but I didn't/wouldn't dare (to) wake him. In theory the to is required in the last example but in practice it is oftfn omitted- The theory is that if dare and used are treated as auxiliaries. they take the bare infinitive like most auxiliaries. If they are treated as ordinary verbs, with do/did etc.. they take the full infinitive like ordinary verbs,
C feel, hear, see and watch:
/ heard him lock the door. I saw/watched him drive, off. But see and hear in the passive take the full infinitive:
He ivas seen to enter the office. He was heard to say that. . . But feel, hear, see and watch are more often used with present participles;
I heard them shouting. (See 273.)
D let takes the bare infinitive in both active and passive. But let in the passive is often replaced by another verb; They let me know . . . would be replaced in the passive by / was

told . . . and They let him see the documents by He was allowed to see them. The infinitive/infinitive phrase after let is sometimes dropped to avoid repetition:
She wants to go out to work but he won't let her (go out to work). let is used without an object in the expression:
Live and let live. (For let us/let's used for imperatives and suggestions, see 281, 289.)
E make
make in the active takes the bare infinitive:
He made me move my car. But in the passive it takes the full infinitive:
/ was made to move my car.
Sometimes the infinitive after make (active) is dropped to avoid repetition.
Why did you tell him? ~ He made me (tell him)! An infinitive after make (passive) can be represented by its to:
/ was made to (tell him).
F would rather/sooner, rather/sooner than (see 297-8):
Shall we go today? - I'd rather waif till tomorrow. Rather/Sooner than risk a bad crossing, he postponed his journey.
G had better (see 120):
'You had better start at once,' he said.
H help may be followed by a fuli or bare infinitive:
He helped us (fo) push if.
I If two infinitives are joined by and, the to of the second infinitive is normally dropped:
I intend to sit in the garden and write letters. I want you tu stand beside me and hold the torch.
but and except take the bare infinitive when they follow do + any thi ng/n othing/e very thing:
He does nothing but complain. My dog does everything but speak. Can't you do anything hut ask silly questions? There's nothing to do but wait.
The to is optional in sentences such as:
The only thing to do/we can do is (to) write to him or Ail we can do is (to) write to him.
The infinitive represented by its to
An infinitive can be represented by to alone to avoid repetition. This is chiefly done after such verbs as hate, hope, intend, would like/love, make (passive), mean, plan, try. want, after the auxiliaries have, need, ought, and with used to, be able to and the be going to form:
Would you like to come with me? ~ Yes, I'd love to.
Did you get a ticket? ~ No, I tried to, but there weren 't any left.
Why did you take a taxi? ~ I had to (take one). I was late.
Do you ride? ~ Not now but I used to.
He wanted to go but he wasn 't able to.
Have you fed the dog? — No, but I'm just going to.
Split infinitives
It used to be considered bad style to split an infinitive (i.e. to put a word between the to and the verb), but there is now a more relaxed
i attitude to this.
really is often placed after the to in colloquial English:
It would take ages to really master this subject
, instead of... really to master, which sounds rather formal.
: Some other degree adverbs such as completely, entirely, (un)duly can be
„ treated similarly, i.e. we can say:
(a) to completely cover the floor instead of
', (b) to cover the floor completely
(a) to unduly alarm people instead of
(b) to alarm people unduly. But it is safer to keep to the conventional order, as in (b) above.
' The infinitive used as a connective link
. The infinitive is used after only to express a disappointing sequel;
He hurried to the house only to find that it was empty =
He hurried to the house and was disappointed when he found that it
was empty.
He survived the crash only to die in the desert =
He survived the crash but died in the desert.
B The infinitive can also be used as a connective link without only, and without any idea of misfortune:
He returned home to learn that his daughter had just become
engaged.

But this use is mainly confined to such verbs as find, hear, leam, see, be told etc., as otherwise there might be confusion between an infinitive used connectively and an infinitive of purpose,

250 The infinitive used to replace a relative clause

A The infinitive can be used after the first, the second etc., the last, the only and sometimes after superlatives (see 77):

He loves parties; he is always Ike first to come and the last to leave.

(the first who comes and the last who leaves)

She was the only one to survive the crash, (the only one who

survived)

Infinitives used in this way replace subject pronoun + verb. Compare with infinitive used to replace object pronoun + verb, as in B below, Note that the infinitive here has an active meaning. When a passive sense is required a passive infinitive is used;

He is the second man to be killed in this way. (the second man who

was killed)

the best play to be performed that year (the best play that was

performed that year) Compare this with:

the best play to perform (the best play for you to perform/the play

you should perform)

B 1 The infinitive can be placed after nouns/pronouns to show how they can

be used or what is to be done with them, or sometimes to express the

subject's wishes (see 77):

/ have letters to write, (that I must write)

Does he get enough to eat?

Have you anything to say? (that you want to say)

AT THE CL'STOMS: / have nothing to declare, (that I need to declare)

a house to let (a house that the owner wants to let)

Similarly with infinitives + prepositions:

someone to talk to a case to keep my records in cushions to sit on a glass So drink out of a tool to open it with a table to write on

2 Use of passive infinitive

There is plenty to do =

(a) plenty of things we can do, i.e. amusements, or

(b) plenty of work we must do,

In the there + be + noun/pronoun + infinitive construction, when there is an idea of duty, as in (b) above, a passive infinitive is possible:

There is a lot to be done. But the active infinitive is more usual.

The infinitive after certain nouns

A number of nouns can be followed directly by the infinitive. Some of the most useful are:

ability demand failure request ambition desire offer scheme anxiety determination plan willingness attempt eagerness promise wish decision effort refusal

His ability to get on with people is his chief asset.

He made an attempt/effort to stand up.

Failure to obey the regulations may result in disqualification.

Their offer/plan/promise to rebuild the town was not taken seriously.

She was annoyed by his unwillingness to do his share of the work.

The infinitive after too, enough and so ... as

too + adjective/adverb + infinitive too + adjective 4- infinitive

(a) The infinitive can refer to the subject of the sentence. It then has an active meaning;

You are too young to understand. (You are so young that you cannot

understand,)

He was too drunk to drive home. (He was so drunk that he couldn't

drive home.)

(b) The infinitive can also refer to the object of a verb. It then has a passive meaning:

The plate was so hot that we coutdn 'f touch it could be expressed:

The plate was too hot to touch, (too hot to be touched) Note that it, the object of touch in the first sentence, disappears in the infinitive construction, because the infinitive, though active in form, is passive in meaning. Sometimes either an active or a passive infinitive may be used:

This parcel is too heavy to send/to be sent by post. But this is not always possible, so students are advised to stick to the active infinitive,
for + noun/pronoun can be placed before the infinitive in this construction:
The case was too heavy (for a child) to carry =
The case was too heavy to be carried by a child.
(c) The infinitive can refer similarly to the object of a preposition:
The grass was so wet that we couldn 't sit on it. The grass was too wet (for us) to sit on. The light is so weak that we can't read by it. The light is too weak to read by.
2 too •+• adjective + a +• noun + infinitive
He ivas too shrewd a businessman to accept the first offer = As a businessman he was too shrewd to accept the first offer. He is too experienced a conductor to mind what the critics say = As a conductor he is too experienced to mind what the critics say.
The infinitive here always refers to the subject of the sentence as in 1
above. A passive infinitive is also possible:
He was too experienced a conductor to be worried by what the, critics said.
3 too + adverb + infinitive
it is too soon (for me) to say whether the scheme will succeed or wit. He spoke too quickly/or me to understand, (for me is necessary here.) She works too slowly to be much use to me.
B Adjective/adverb + enough •+• infinitive
1 Adjective + enough + infinitive
(a) As with the too construction, the infinitive can refer to the subject of the verb:
She is old enough to travel by herself.
He was tall enough to see over the heads of the other people.
(b) Or it can refer to the object of a verb:
The case is light enough for me to carry =
The case is so light that I can carry it.
After a few minutes the coffee was coo! enough (for us) to drink.
(c) It can refer to the object of a preposition:
The ice was thick enough to walk on. The light was strong enough to read by.
2 enough may be used as pronoun or adjective:
He doesn 't earn enough (money) to live on.
We haven't enough time to do it properly.
She had enough sense to turn off the gas. have + enough 4- abstract noun here is sometimes replaceable by have + the + noun:
She had the sense to turn off the gas.
He had the courage to admit his mistake.
I hadn 't the patience to listen to any more. But the is optional before time here:
We haven't (the) time to do it properly.
3 Adverb + enough + infinitive:
He didn 't jump high enough to win a prize. He spoke slowly enough for everyone to understand.
C so 4- adjective + as + infinitive:
He was so foolish as to leave his car unlocked. This is an alternative to the enough construction in Bl above, but no e that He was foolish enough to leave his car unlocked can mean either he did it or that he was capable of doing it, but He was so foolish as to leave etc. implies that he actually did so.
The so ... as construction is not very often used as shown above, but it is quite common as a request form:
Would you be so good as to forward my letters? =
Would you be good enough to forward my letters? There is no difference in meaning here between the two forms. It is important not to forget the as. (For other adjective + infinitive constructions, see 26-7.)
Introductory or final infinitive phrases
Certain infinitive phrases can be placed at the beginning or sometimes at the end of a sentence and are then similar to sentence adverbs (see 40):
To be perfectly frank, you're a bad driver. To be honest. I just don't like him. To be fair (to him), he wasn't entirely to blame. To cut a Song story short, we said 'No!' To tell you the truth, I've never met him or I've never met him. to tell you the truth.
The continuous infinitive
Form to be + present participle: He seems to be following us.
Use The continuous infinitive can be used:
After the auxiliary verbs:

They'll be wondering where you are.
He may/might be watching TV. ~ He can 't/couldn 'I be watching TV. There are no programmes today because of the strike. (negative deduction)
He must he coming by bus. (deduction)
You shouldn't be readings novel. You should be reading a textbook. After appear, happen, pretend, seem:
'•' '• He appears/seems to be living in the area =
It appears/seems that he is living in the area. : He appeared/seemed to be living in the area = It appeared/seemed that he was living in the area. I happened to be standing next to him when he collapsed = '•• It happened that I was standing next to him when he collapsed. '
He pretended to be looking for a book = He pretended that he was looking for a book.
;After hope and promise and, but less usually, after agree, arrange, ^tecide, determine/be determined, plan, undertake:
'i.., / hope/hoped to be earning my living in a year's time = t; .' hope I will/I hoped I would be earning etc.
determine/be determined, plan could replace hope above with slight changes of meaning:
I promised to be waiting at the door when he came out. agree, arrange, decide, determine/be determined, plan, undertake could be used instead of promise above with slight changes of meaning. 4 After believe, consider, suppose, think etc. in the passive:
Be is believed to be living in Mexico. (See 3&6.)

255 The perfect infinitive

A Form
to have + past participle: to have worked, to have spoken
B Use with auxiliary verbs
1 With was/were to express an unfulfilled plan or arrangement (see 114):
The house was to have been ready today, (but it isn't)
2 With should, would, might and could to form the perfect conditional (see 223}:
/// had seen her ! should haw invited her.
3 With should or ought to express Unfulfilled obligation; or, in the negative, a wrong or foolish action (see 143):
He should have helped her. (but he didn't) / shouldn 't/oughtn 't to have lied to him. (but I did)
4 With should/would like to express an unfulfilled wish (see 296 D):
He would like to have seen it. (but it wasn't possible) or
He would have liked to see it.
i.e. we can put either verb into the perfect infinitive without changing the meaning,
5 With could to express past unused ability or past possibility:
/ could have made a lot of money, (but I didn't) He could/might have phoned her. (Perhaps he (has) phoned.) (See also 134,138.)
6 With might/could to indicate that the speaker feels upset or indignant at the non-performance of an action:
He might/could have told me! = I am annoyed that he didn't tell me. (See 285 D.)
7 With may/might in speculations about past actions:
He may/might have left =
It is possible that he (has) left. (See 133.)
You might/could have been killed'
8 With can't/couldn't to express negative deduction (see 159):
He can Vcouldn 't have moved the piano himself. We knew he couldn't have paid for it, because he had no money-
With must to express affirmative deduction (see 156):
He must have come this way: here are his footprints.
With needn't to express an unnecessary past action (see also 152-3):
You needn't have hurried. Now we are too early. You needn't have cooked it. We could have eaten it raw.
With certain other verbs With appear, happen, pretend, seem
Note the difference between present and perfect infinitives here:
Present infinitive:

He seems to be a great athlete = It seems that he is . . . He seemed to be a great athlete = It seemed that he was . . .
Perfect infinitive;
He seems to have been . . . = It seems that he was . . . He seemed to have been . . . = It seemed that he had been . . .
i.e. the action of the perfect infinitive is an earlier action; it happens
before the time of the main verb. Other examples:
/ happened to have driven that kind of car before = It happened that I had driven that kind of car before. He pretended to have read the book = He pretended that he had read it.
With the following verbs in the passive voice: acknowledge, believe, consider, find, know, report, say, suppose, think, understand:
He is understood to have left the country. (See 306.)
The perfect infinitive is possible but less usual with claim, expect, hope, promise:
He expects/hopes to have finished by June = He expects/hopes that he will have finished by June.

256 The perfect infinitive continuous

Form to have been + present participle:
He seems to have been spying/or both sides.
Use
It is used chiefly after auxiliary verbs and after appear and seem, but , it can also be used after happen, pretend and the passive of believe, know, report, say, understand:
He says he was talking to Tom. ~ He couldn 't have been talking to
Tom. Tom wasn't there.
I was following Peter closely. ~ You shouldn't have been following
him closely: you should have left a good space between the two cars.
He appears to have been waiting a Sang time =
It appears that he IMS been waiting a long time.
He pretended to have been studying =
He pretended that he had been studying.

24 The gerund

257 Form and use

The gerund has exactly the same form as the present participle:
running, speaking, working etc. It can be used in the following ways:
(a) as subject of a sentence: Dancing bored him. (see 258)
(b) as complement of a verb: Her hobby is painting.
(c) after prepositions: He was accused of smuggling. (259)
(d) after certain verbs (261, 266)
(e) in noun compounds: a 'diving board (a board for diving off). The gerund here carries the main stress, (See 16.)

258 The gerund as subject

As already seen in 240 E, either infinitive or gerund can be the subject of a sentence when an action is being considered in a general sense. We can say:
It is easier to read French than to speak it or
Reading French is easier than speaking if. The gerund, like the infinitive (see 240 F), can be the subject of a clause placed after believe, consider, discover, expect, find, think, wonder etc. After find we can omit that and the verb be, i.e. we can say:
He found that parking was difficult or
He found parking difficult. But it is safer not to omit be after the other verbs. Note the possible difference between gerund and infinitive here:
He found parking difficult would mean that he usually/always found it difficult. He found it difficult to park could refer to one particular occasion. It could also mean that he always found

it difficult, but it is more usual to express this idea by a gerund. The gerund is used in short prohibitions:
No smoking. No mailing. No fishing. But these cannot be followed by an object, so prohibitions involving an object are usually expressed by an imperative:
Do not touch these wires. Do not feed the limis. Gerunds are used in the saying Seeing is believing.

259 Gerunds after prepositions (see also 98)

When a verb is placed immediately after a preposition the gerund form must be used:
What can you do besides typing?
I have no objection to hearing your story again.
Touch your tws without bending your knees'.
He is good at diving. She is fond of climbing.
I'm not keen on gambling. I'm too afraid of losing,
He was fined for being drunk in charge of a car.
I'm against saying anything/I'm for saying nothing.
I'm tired of arguing. I'm fed up waiting, (colloquial)
This is a tool for opening tins. Do you feel like going out?
After swimming I felt cold.
She disapproves of jogging.
What about leaving it here and collecting it later?
He is thinking of emigrating.
I'm sorry for keeping you waiting.
They escaped by sliding down a rope.
We had difficulty in finding a parking place.
You should be ashamed of yourself for behaving so badly.
In spite of starting late he arrived in time.
Aren 't you interested in making money?
There's no point in waiting.
A number of verb + preposition/adverb combinations ('phrasal verbs') take the gerund. The most common of these are be for/against, care for, give up, keep on, leave off, look forward to, put off, see about, take to. (For go on, see 363.)

I don't care for standing in queues.
Eventually the dogs left off barking.
I am looking forward to meeting her.
He put off making a decision till he had more information.
He took to ringing us up in the middle of the night.

260 The word **to**

This word often causes confusion as it can be either (A) a part of an infinitive, or (B) a preposition.
to placed after the auxiliary verbs be, have, ought, used and after ' going (in expressions such as'the be going to form') is part of the infinitive of the following verb and is only added to remind students that the preceding verb takes the full infinitive, i.e. the infinitive with to. to is often placed after hate, hope, intend, would like/love, mean, plan, try, want and some others (see 247) to avoid repetition of an infinitive already mentioned:
Did you buy cheese? ~ No, I meant fo (buy some) hut the shop was
shut.
B Otherwise to placed after a verb will probably be a preposition and will be followed by noun/pronoun or gerund. Note these expressions: look forward to, take to, be accustomed to. be used to:
I am looking forward to my holidays/to next weekend/to it.
I am looking forward to seeing you.
I am used to heat/hard work/bad food/noise/dust.
! am used to standing in queues/to it. Be careful not to confuse I used to/he used to etc., which expresses a past habit or routine (They used to bum coal; now they bum fuel oil only), with I am used to/he is used to etc., which means '1 am/he is

accustomed to/familiar with':
/ am used to the cold. (It doesn't worry roe.)
He is used to working at night. (He doesn't mind it.) (See 162.) A good way of finding out whether a to is a preposition or a part of an infinitive is to see if it is possible to put a noun/pronoun after it. For example a noun/pronoun could be placed after I am accustomed to:
I am accustomed to it/the dark. This to therefore is a preposition, and verbs used after to must be gerunds.

261 Verbs followed by the gerund

A The most important of these are:
admit" keep(= continue) anticipate* loathe appreciate mean* (= involve) avoid mind(= object) consider* miss defer pardon delay postpone deny* practise detest prevent dislike propose* (= suggest) dread recollect* enjoy remember* (= recollect) escape resent excuse resist fancy* (= imagine) risk finish save (sb the trouble of) forgive stop(= cease) imagine' suggest* involve understand*
*See B.
The gerund is also used after the expressions can't stand (= endure), can't help (= prevent/avoid), it's no use/good and after the adjective worth.

Other constructions with the above verbs
Starred verbs can also take that-clauses (see 346).
For suggest and propose {= suggest), see 289.
mean/propose (= intend) take the infinitive (see 269).
For hate, like, love, prefer, see 295.
For other verbs taking gerund or infinitive, see chapter 25.
dread + infinitive is used in 'dread to think':
I dread to think what this will cost.
Examples of verb + gerund sentences:
He admitted taking the money. Avoid over-eating.
Would you consider selling the property?
He detests writing letters.
She dreads getting old. Do you enjoy teaching?
He narrowly escaped being run over.
Fancy meeting you':
Puffing in a new window will involve cutting away part of {he roof.
He kept complaining. He didn't want to risk getting wet.
If we buy plenty of food now it will save shopping later in the week.
I can't understand his/him leaving his wife.
I couldn't help laughing. It's no good/use arguing.
Is there anything here worth buying?

262 Verbs + possessive adjective/pronoun object + gerund

If the verb or verb + preposition is followed directly by the gerund, the gerund refers to the subject of the verb:
Tom insisted on reading the letter. (Tom read it.)
But if we put a possessive adjective or pronoun before the gerund, the gerund refers to the person denoted by the possessive adjective/pronoun:
He insisted on my/me reading it. (I had to read it.)
Useful verbs and expressions which can take either construction are:

dislike	*propose*	*understand*
dread	*recollect*	*approve/disapprove of*
fancy	*remember*	*insist on*
involve	*resent*	*it's no good/use*

like (negative) *save* *object to*
mean *stop* *there's no point in*
mind *suggest* *what's the point of*
He disliked working late.
He disliked me/my working late.
I object to Raying twice for the same thing.
I object to his/him making private calls on this phone.
He resented being passed aver for promotion.
He resented my/me being promoted before him.
(For mind, see 263; for suggest and propose, see 289.)

C excuse, forgive, pardon and prevent are not followed directly by the gerund but take either possessive adjective/pronoun + gerund or pronoun + preposition + gerund:
Forgive my/me ringing you up so early.
Forgive me/or ringingyou up so early.
You can't prevent his/him spending his own money.
You can't prevent him/row spending his own money.
appreciate usually requires a possessive adjective or passive gerund:
I appreciate your giving me so much o/your time. I appreciate being given this opportunity.

D Possessive adjective and pronoun object compared
In formal English the possessive adjective is used with the gerund. But in informal English we very often use the pronoun. The student therefore has a choice of forms, but is recommended to use the pronoun.
With stop meaning 'prevent' the pronoun is more usual than the possessive adjective:
I can 'I stop him writing to She papers.
E Nouns with gerunds
In very formal English the possessive case is used:
I do not remember my mother's complaining about it. But it is much more usual to omit the 's:
I don't remember my mother complaining.

263 The verb mind

A This verb is used chiefly in the interrogative and negative:
Would you mind waiting a moment? I dm't mind walking.

B It can be followed directly by a gerund, or by a noun/pronoun or possessive adjective + gerund;
I don't mind living here. (I live here and don't object to it.)
I don't mind his/him living here. (He lives here and I don't object to this./I don't object to his/him living here.)
He didn 't mind leaving home. (He left home quite happily.)
He didn't mind Ann leaving home. (Ann left home and he was quite happy about it. See 262 E for case of noun.)
C would you mind? is one of the most usual ways of making a request:
Would you mind not smoking? (Please don't smoke.)
Would you mind moving your car? (Please move it.) Note the change of meaning when a possessive adjective precedes the gerund:
Would you mind my moving your car? = Would you object if I moved your car? (This is not a request but a poiite query.)

Do you mind if I move it? is a possible alternative to Would you mind my moving U? but Do you mind my moving it? may mean that the action has already started.
mind can never be followed by an infinitive,
The personal pronoun object can be used with gerunds instead of a possessive adjective (see 262 D),
The perfect gerund (having worked, having spoken etc.)

This can be used instead of the present form of the gerund (working, speaking etc.) when we are referring to a past action:
He was accused of deserting his ship or
He was accused a/having deserted his ship. The perfect gerund is fairly usual after deny:
He denied having been there. Otherwise the present form is much the more usual.
The passive gerund
Present: being written Past: having been written
He was punished by being sent to bed without any supper.
I remember being taken to Paris as a small child.
The safe showed no signs of having been touched.

25 Infinitive and gerund constructions

266 Verbs which may take either infinitive or gerund

advise (see 267)	*need (267)*
agree (269)	*permit (267)*
allow (267)	*prefer (295)*
begin (267)	*propose (269)*
can/could bear (267)	*recommend (267)*
cease (267)	*regret (268)*
continue (267)	*remember (268)*
forget (268)	*require (267)*
hate (295)	*start (267)*
intend (267)	*stop (270 B)*
like (295)	*try (270 C)*
love (295)	*used to (270 D)*
mean (269)	*want (267)*

Note also *be ashamed (of)/afraid (of)/sorry (for),* 271; *care (for),* 294, 295; go on, 270.

267 Verbs taking infinitive or gerund without change of meaning

A ***begin, start, continue, cease***
B ***can't bear***
C ***intend***
D ***advise, allow, permit, recommend***
E ***it needs/requires/wants***

A *With begin, start, continue, cease either infinitive or gerund may be used without any difference in meaning, but the infinitive is more usual with verbs of knowing and understanding and the verb matter:*
I began working./I began So work. He continued living/to live above the shop. But:
/ am beginning to understand/see/realize why he acted as he did. It ceased to matter whether or not he sold his work. She never ceased complaining/to complain about prices.

After **can/could bear** (chiefly used in the negative) either gerund or infinitive can be used: *I can't bear waiting/to wait*; but when the infinitive refers to a deliberate action the expression implies that the subject's feelings prevent(ed) him from performing the action;
I couldn't bear to tell him. (so I didn't)
After intend, an infinitive:

I intend to sell it

is more usual than a gerund:
I intend selling it.
The infinitive is necessary when we have intend + object. This is found only in formal English:
I intend him to take over the department.
With **advise, allow, permit, recommend**
If the person concerned is mentioned we use the infinitive:
He advised me to apply at once.
She recommends housewives to buy the big tins.
They don't allow us to park here.
But if this person is not mentioned, the gerund is used:
He advised applying at once.
She recommends buying the big tins.
They don't allow parking.
The gerund after **allow** and **permit** cannot have an object, so if we want an **allow/permit** + verb + object construction, we must use the infinitive and mention the person concerned:
They allowed their tenants to use the garage.

E **it needs/requires/wants** can be followed either by the gerund or by the passive infinitive, the gerund being the more usual:

The grass wants cutting or *The grass needs to be cut.*

268 regret, remember, forget

A **regret, remember, forget** are used with a gerund when the action expressed by the gerund is the earlier action:

I regret spending so much money = I'm sorry I spent so much money. (spending is the first action, regret is the second.)

I remember reading about the earthquake in the papers. (*reading* is the first action, *remember* is the second.)

remember can be followed by possessive adjective/object + gerund:

I remember his/him telling me about if.

I remember my father's) telling me about it.

forget + gerund is possible only when **forget** is in the negative. It is often used after **will never forget**:

I'll never forget waiting/or bombs to/all = I'll always remember waiting for bombs to fall.

B When regret, remember, forget themselves express the earlier action they are followed by an infinitive;
/ regret to say that you have failed your exam. (regret is the first
action, to say is the second,)
regret here is normally followed by a verb such as say, inform, tell. It is normally used only in the present tense. remember can be used in any tense:
/';(remember to ring Bill. (remember is the earlier action.) forget is used similarly:
/ often forget to sign my cheifues.
I remembered to lock/I didn't forget to lock the door. (I locked it.) Conversely:
I didn't remember/I forgot to lock it. (I didn't lock it.)
C regret, remember, forget can also be followed by a noun/pronoun or a that-clause.
remember and forget can also be followed by noun clauses beginning how, why, when, where, who etc.:
/ can 'f remember when I saw him last.
I've forgotten where I Rut it.

269 agree/agree to, mean, propose

A agree and agree to (preposition)
agree takes the infinitive. It is the opposite of refuse + infinitive:
When I asked them to wail, Tom agreed to wait a week but Bill
refused to wait another day.
agree cannot take a noun/pronoun object. The opposite of refuse + object is accept + object:
He refused any reward. She accepted the post. agree to (preposition) can be followed by possessive adjective + gerund:
He agreed to my leaving early on Friday. (I asked if I could leave
early on Friday and he said that I could- The opposite here would
be He wouldn 't agree to my leaving early etc.) agree to can be followed by noun/pronoun object;
He agreed to the change of plan/to this/to that.
B mean meaning 'intend' takes the infinitive:
/ mean to get to the top by sunrise.
mean meaning 'involve' (used only with an impersonal subject) takes the gerund:
He is determined to get a seat even if it means standing in a queue
all night.

propose meaning 'intend' usually takes the infinitive:
{propose to start tomorrow. propose meaning 'suggest' takes the gerund:
I propose waiting till the police get here. (For propose + that. . . should, see 289.)
go on, stop, try, used (to)
go on = 'continue' and is normaUy followed by a gerund. But it is used with an infinitive, usually of a verb like explain, talk, tell, when the speaker continues talking about the same topic but introduces a new aspect of it:
He began by showing us where the island was and went on to tell us
about its climate.

Compare He went on talking about his accident, which implies that he had been talking about it before, with He went on to talk about his accident, which implies that he had been speaking perhaps about himself or his journey but that the accident was being introduced for the first time.
stop (= cease) is followed by the gerund: Stop talking. It can be followed by object + gerund: I can't stop him talking to the press.
A possessive adjective would be possible here but is very seldom used. stop (= halt) can be followed by an infinitive of purpose;
/ stopped to ask the way. (I stopped in order to ask the way.)
try usually means 'attempt' and is followed by the infinitive:
They tried to put wire netting all round the garden. (They attempted
to do this,)
The sentence doesn't tell us whether they succeeded or not. try can also mean 'make the experiment' and is then followed by the gerund:
They tried putting wire netting all round the garden. This means that they put wire netting round the garden to see if it would solve their problem (presumably they were trying to keep out rabbits and foxes). We know that they succeeded in performing the main action; what we don't know is whether this action had the desired effect, i.e. kept the foxes out.
Subject + used + infinitive expresses a past habit or routine:
/ used to swim all the year round. (At one time I swam all the year
round,) (See 162.)
But subject + be/become/get + used + to (preposition) is followed by noun or pronoun or gerund and means 'be/become/get accustomed (to)':
/ am used to heat/to living in a hot climate. (1 have lived in a hot
climate for some time so I don't mind it.) (See 163.)

271 be afraid (of), be sorry <for), be ashamed (of)
A be afraid of + gerund or gerund + noun/pronoun
Here the gerund usually expresses an action which the subject fears may happen. It is normally an involuntary action:
He never swam far out. He was afraid a/getting cramp.
She avoids lonely streets. She is afraid of being mugged.
She didn't tell him because she was afraid of upsetting him. be afraid + infinitive means that the subject is/was etc. too frightened to perform the action. This is obviously a deliberate action:
He was afraid to jump. (so he didn't jump)
She was afraid to protest, (so she kept quiet) be afraid can also be followed by a that-clause. This can express a fear:
I'm afraid (that) he'll blame me/or this. But, especially in the first person, it can express (usually fairly mild) regret:
I'm afraid (that) we haven't any tickets left. (For I'm afraid so/not, see 347.)
B be sorry for + gerund means 'apologize/regret'. The gerund usually refers to a previous action but can refer to an immediately following action;
I'm sorry for making such a noise last night.
I'm sony for disturbing you. (now) But I'm sorry to disturb you would be more usual here. be sorry + infinitive can express regret or sadness:
I'm sorry to hear that you've been ill. (See also 26 F.) When the action expressed by the infinitive is involuntary, the two actions are almost simultaneous:
/ was sorry to see him looking so ill. (When I saw him ... I was
sorry.)
When the infinitive refers to a deliberate action, be sorry is the earlier of the two actions and is then very similar to regret (see 268 B):
I'm sorry to inform you that there has been an accident. be sorry that... is also possible. Note that I'm sony that usually expresses genuine regret, but that with I'm sony to say that or I'm afraid that the regret may be very faint, even perfunctory.
C be ashamed of+ gerund or be ashamed of yourself etc. for +
gerund The gerund here refers to a previous action:
You should be ashamed of lying to him m
You should be ashamed of yourself for lying to him. In be ashamed + infinitive, the infinitive usually refers to a subsequent action:
I'm ashamed to tell you what this carpet cost. would be ashamed + infinitive often implies that the subject's feelings (will) prevent him from performing the action:

I'd be ashamed to ask for help. (so I won't/wouldn't ask)

The participles
The present (or active) participle
Form The infinitive + ing, e.g. working, loving, sifting.
Use
To form the continuous tenses (see 164, 178 etc.):
He is working. You 've been dreaming. As adjectives (see 17):
running water floating wreckage
dripping taps leaking pipes
Here there is equal stress on participle and noun. Compare with gerund + noun combinations (see 16).
After have + object (see 121):
He had me swimming in a week.
We have people standing on our steps al! day.
I won't have him cleaning his bike in the kitchen.
A present participle can sometimes replace a relative pronoun + verb (see 77):
a map that marks/marked political boundaries =
a map marking political boundaries
people who wish/wished to visit the caves =
people wishing to visit the caves
children who need/needed medical attention =
children needing medical attention
Present participles/participle phrases such as adding/pointing out/ reminding/warning can introduce statements in indirect speech;
He told me to start early, reminding me that the roads would be
crowded. (See 324 C.)
The above uses have already been dealt with. The present participle can also be used:
After verbs of sensation (see 273).
After catch/find/leave •+• object (see 274).
After go, come, spend, waste, be busy (see 275).
Present participles can sometimes replace subject + verb in other main or subordinate clauses other than those mentioned above (see 276-7).

273 Present participle after verbs of sensation
A The basic verbs of sensation see, hear, feel, smell, and the verbs listen (to), notice and watch can be followed by object + present participle:
/ see him passing my house every day.
Didn 't you hear the clock striking?
I felt the car skidding.
She smelt something burning and saw smoke rising.
I watched them rehearsing the play. The action in the present participle may be either complete or incomplete: / saw him changing the wheel could mean that I watched the whole action or that I saw only part of it.
B see, hear, feel and sometimes listen (to), notice and watch can
also be followed by object + bare infinitive:
We saw him leave the house.
I heard him make arrangements for his journey. The infinitive implies that the action is complete. I saw him change the wheel means that I saw the whole action.
C Comparison of the two forms
The participle is the more generally useful as it can express both complete and incomplete actions. But the infinitive is useful when we want to emphasize that the action is complete- It is also neater than the participle when there is a succession of actions:
/ saw him enter the roam, unlock a drawer, fake out a document, photograph it and put it back.
D In the passive the full infinitive is used after verbs of the senses:
He was heard to say that the minister had been bribed.
274 catch, find, leave + object + present participle
A catch/find:
/ caught them stealing my apples. (I found them doing this.)
If she catches you reading her diary, she'll be furious. The action expressed by the participle is always one which displeases the subject. With find there is no feeling of displeasure:
I found him standing at the door ==

/ saw him standing/He was standing at the door when I arrived. With find the object could be inanimate:
He found a tree lying across the road.
B leave can be used with a participle:
/ left him talking to Bob = He was talking to Bob when I left.

go, come, spend, waste, be busy
go and come
go and come can be followed by the participles of verbs of physical
activity and the verb shop:
They are going riding/skiing/sailing. Come dancing. I'm going shopping this afternoon.
(For go and come followed by infinitives of purpose, see 335.)
spend/waste + an expression of time or money + present participle:
He spends two hours (a day) travelling. He doesn't spend much time preparing his lessons. We wasted a whole afternoon trying to repair the car. He spent a lot of money modernizing the fwuse.
be busy + present participle; She is/was busy packing.
A present participle phrase replacing a main clause
The participle constructions in A and B below are chiefly used in written English.
When two actions by the same subject occur simultaneously it is usually possible to express one of them by a present participle. The participle can be before or after the finite verb:
He rode away. He whistled as he went. = He rode away whistling. He holds the rope with one hand and stretches out the other to the boy in the water = Holding the rope with one hand. he stretches etc.
When one action is immediately followed by another by the same subject the first action can often be expressed by a present participle-The participle must be placed first:
He opened the drawer and took out a revolver = Opening the drawer he took out a revolver. She raised the trapdoor and pointed to a/light of steps = Raising the trapdoor she pointed to a flight of steps. We lake off our shoes and creep cautiously along the passage = Taking off our shoes we creep cautiously along the passage. It would seem more logical here to use the perfect participle and say Having opened. Having raised. Having taken off, but this is not necessary except when the use of the present participle might lead to ambiguity. Eating his dinner he rushed out of the house would give the impression that he left the house with his plate in his hand. Here, therefore, it would be better to say Having eaten his dinner . . .
When the second action forms part of the first, or is a result of it, we can express the second action by a present participle:
She went out, slamming the door.
Hefired, wounding one of the bandits.
!fell. striking my head against the door and cutting it. (Here we
have three actions, the last two expressed by participles.)

The participle need not necessarily have the same subject as the first verb:
The plane crashed, its bombs exploding as it hit the ground.
277 A present participle phrase replacing a subordinate clause
These constructions are chiefly found in written English.
The present participle can replace as/since/because + subject +
verb, i.e. it can help to explain the action which follows:
Knowing that he wouldn't be able to buy food on his journey he took
large supplies with him = As he knew etc.
Fearing that the police would recognize him he never went out in
daylight = As he feared etc.
Note that being at the beginning of a sentence will normally mean 'as he is/as he was':
Being a student he was naturally interested in museums =
Because/As he was a student etc. It could not mean 'while he was a student'. The subject of the participle need not be the same as the subject of the following verb:
The day being fine, we decided to go swimming. In cases like this the participle must follow its noun/pronoun. Being fine the day, we decided ... is incorrect, but Being athletic, Tom found the climb quite easy is all right, as Tom is the sub)ect of both the participle and the following verb. It is possible to use two or more participles, one after the other:
Realizing that he hadn 't enough money and not wanting to borrow

from his father, he decided to pawn his watch.
Not knowing the language and having no friends in, the town., he
found it hard to get work.
278 The perfect participle (active)
A Form
having + past participle, e.g. having done. having seen.
B Use
The perfect participle can be used instead of the present participle in sentences of the type shown in 276 B (i.e. where one action is immediately followed by another with the same subject):
Tying one end of the rope to his bed, he threw the other end out of the
window =
Having tied one end of the rope to his bed, he threw the other end out
of the window.
The perfect participle emphasizes that the first action is complete before the second one starts, but is not normally necessary in combinations of this kind, except when the use of the present participle might lead to confusion. Reading the instructions, he snatched up the fire

extinguisher might give the impression that the two actions were simultaneous- Here, therefore, the perfect; participle would be better:
Having read the instructions, he snatched up the fire extinguisher. The perfect participle is, however, necessary when there is an interval of time between the two actions:
Having failed twice, he didn't want ta try again. It is also used when the first action covered a period of time:
Having been his own boss for such a long time, he found it hard to
accept orders from another.
The past participle (passive) and the perfect participle (passive)
Form
The past participle of regular verbs is formed by adding ed or d to the
infinitive, e.g. worked, loved.
For the past participle of irregular verbs, see chapter 39.
Use
As an adjective:
stolen money a written report fallen frees broken glass Hred drivers blocked roads.
To form the perfect tenses/infinitives and participles and the passive voice:
he has seen to have loved it was broken
The past participle can replace a subject + passive verb just as the present participle can replace subject + active verb:
She enters. She is accompanied by her mother. =
She enters, accompanied by her mother.
He was aroused by fhe crash and leapt to his feet =
Aroused by the crash, he leapt to his feet.
The bridge had been weakened by successive storms and was no
longer safe =
Weakened by successive storms, the bridge was no longer safe or
Having been weakened etc. (see below).
As he was convinced that they were trying to poison him, he refused to
eat anything =
Convinced that they were frying to poison him, he refused to eat
anything.
The perfect participle passive (having been •+• past participle) is used when it is necessary to emphasize that the action expressed by the participle happened before the action expressed by the next verb:
Having been warned about the bandits, he left his valuables at home.
{He had been warned etc,)
Having been bitten twice, the postman refused to deliver our letters
unless we chained our dog up. (He had been bitten etc.)

280 Misrelated participles

A participle is considered to belong to the noun/pronoun which precedes it:
Tom. horrified at what he had done, could at first say nothing. Romeo, believing that Juliet was dead. decided to kit! himself. A man carrying a large parcel got out of the bus. Note that the participle may be separated from its noun/pronoun by a main verb:
Jones and Smith came in. followed by their wises. She rushed past the policeman, hoping he wouldn 't ask what she had in her suitcase.
If there is no noun/pronoun in this position the participle is considered to belong to the subject of the following main verb:
Stunned by the blow. Peter fell heavily. (Peter had been stunned.) Believing that he is alone, the villain expresses his thoughts aloud. If this principle is disregarded confusion results.
Waiting for a bus a brick fell on my head makes it appear that the brick was waiting for a bus, which is nonsense. A participle linked in this way to the wrong noun/pronoun is said to be ' mis related'. The above sentence should be rewritten As I was waiting for a bus a brick fell on my head.
Other examples of misrelated participles:
When using this machine it must be remembered . . . Correct form:
When using this machine you must remember . . .
Believing that I was the only person who knew about this beach, the sight of someone else on it annoyed me very much. Correct form:
As / believed I was the only person etc. or
Believing that I was the only person on the beach, I was annoyed by
the sight of someone else.

Commands, requests, invitations, advice, suggestions
Commands expressed by the imperative The second person imperative
This has the same form as the bare infinitive:
Hurry! Wait! Stop! For the negative we put do not (don't) before the verb:
Don't hurry!
The person addressed is very often not mentioned, but can be expressed by a noun placed at the end of the phrase:
Eat your dinner, boys. Be quiet, Tom. These nouns can be placed before the verb, but this is much less usual.
The pronoun you is rarely used unless the speaker wishes to be rude, or wishes to make a distinction, as in:
You go on. I'll wait.
do can be placed before the affirmative imperative:
Do hurry. Do be quiet. This do could be persuasive, but could also express irritation.
The first person imperative
Form
let us (let's) + bare infinitive:
Let us stand together in this emergency. For the negative we normally put not before the infinitive:
Let us not be alarmed by rumours. But it is possible in colloquial English to put don't before let's:
Don't let's be alarmed by rumours. By let us (let's) the speaker can urge his hearers to act in a certain way, or express a decision which they are expected to accept, or express a suggestion (see 289).
The third person imperative
Form
let him/her/it/them + bare infinitive (see also 322):
Let them go by train.
This is not a very common construction in modern English. It would be more usual to say:
They are logo/must go by train.
The negative imperative, let him/her/them + negative infinitive, is not used in modem English. Instead, we would use must not or is/are not to:
They must not/are not to go by air.

282 Other ways of expressing commands

A Subject + shall for third person commands (in written English)

shall can be used in very formal written regulations which will normally remain in force for some time. These are very often in the passive (see also 234):
The Chairman, Secretary, ami Treasurer shall be elected annually.
(club regulations)
A record shall be kept of the number of students attending each class,
(college regulations)

B Subject + will, mainly for third person commands:
When the alarm rings passengers and crew will assemble at their boat stations, (notice on board ship)
This is a formal, impersonal, peremptory type of command, implying that the person giving the order is quite certain that he will be obeyed. It is used chiefly in written instructions by people who have some authority, e.g. captains of ships, officers of the services, headmasters of schools, trainers of sports teams etc.:
The team will report to the gymnasium for weight-lifting training. Note that if we move the will and place it before the subject, we turn the command into a request. It is possible to use you will for spoken commands:
You will not mention this meeting to anyone. But it is more usual and more polite to use must:
You must not mention this meeting to anyone.

C Commands are often expressed as obligations by must:
You must not smoke in the petrol store. Passengers must cross the line by the footbridge.
Dogs must be kept on leads in this area.

D Instructions or orders can be conveyed by the be + infinitive construction:
You are to report for duty immediately. The switchboard is to be manned at all times.

E Prohibitions may be expressed in written instructions by may not;
Candidates may not bring textbooks into the examination room.

283 Requests with can/could/may/might I/we

A can/could/may/might I/we + have + noun/pronoun
can is the most informal:
(a) 'Can I have a sweet?' said the little boy. can I/we, when used by adults, sounds more confident than could I/we. could I/we is the most generally useful form:
(b) Could I have a cup of tea? Could I have two tickets, please?

may and might are more formal than could, but possible in both spoken and written English:
(c) May/Might I have a copy of the letter? These requests are usually reported by ask (+ indirect object) •+• for + object:
The little boy asked (me) for a sweet.
He asked for a copy of the letter. But (c) above could also be reported;
He asked if he might have a copy of the letter.
B can/could/may/might I/we + verb
For the difference between them, see A above.
These could be requests for permission (see 131), but with certain verbs, e.g. see. speak (to), talk (to), they can be ordinary requests:
May/Could I see Mr Jones? = I would like to see Mr /ones. This type of request is reported by ask to see/to speak to etc.:
I asked to see Mr/ones.
Do not put a noun/pronoun after ask, as this would change the meaning (see 243 B).
In colloquial English ask for •+• name etc. would also be possible, especially when reporting a telephone conversation:
CALLER: Could I speak to the secretary, please? =
She asked/or the secretary/to speak to the secretary.
C could/might I/we requests can be preceded by do you think/
I wonder(ed)/was wondering if. These prefixes make the requests more diffident:
; wonder/was wondering if I could have tomorrow off?
Do you think I could speak to the secretary? Note the change from interrogative to affirmative verb (see 104).

284 Requests with could/will/would you etc.

For starred forms, see K below,

A **could you*** is a very useful request form:

Could you please show me the way?

possibly can be added to show that the speaker is asking for something extra:

Could you possibly lend me £500?

couldn't expresses the speaker's hopes for a more favorable answer than has just been indicated;

I can't wait. ~ Couldn't you wait five minutes?

you couldn't. . . could you? can be used to express a not very hopeful request;

You couldn't wait five minutes, could you?

You couldn't give me a hand with this, could you?

(The speaker doesn't really expect a favourable answer in either case.)

B will/would you* (please):

Will/Would you please count your change? would you (please) has the same meaning as could you. will you is more authoritative and therefore less polite. will/would you can be placed at the end of the phrase:

Shut the door, will you?

But this form can only be used in very friendly relaxed situations- Used otherwise, it would sound very rude. will/would can also be used for third person requests:

Would Mrs Jones, passenger to Leeds, please come to the Enquiry Desk?

Will anyone who saw the accident please phone this number . . . ?

(police announcement)

C you'll. . . won't you? is a persuasive type of request used mainly among friends:

You'll write to me. won't you?

D would you mind* + gerund (see 263):

Would you mind moving your car?

E perhaps you would implies confidence that the other person will perform this service. It would not be used at the beginning of a conversation or letter, but would be possible later on:

Perhaps you would let me know when your new stock arrives = Please let me know when your new stock arrives.

F if you would is a useful request form. It is used in spoken English for routine-type requests which the speaker is quite sure wi!l be obeyed:

If you'd fill up this form/take a seat/wait a few minutes, (in an office) If you'd sign the register/follow the porter, (in a hotel)

just can be added to show that the action required is very easy:

If you'd just put your address on the back of the cheque, (in a shop)

G would you like to . . . ? is also a possible request form:

Would you like to take a seat? = Please take a seat.

H I should/would be very grateful if you would is a formal request form found chiefly in letters but possible in speech:

I should be very grateful if you would let me know if you have any vacancies.

I Would you be good/kind enough to keep me informed? Would you be so hind as to keep me informed?

J I wish you would can be a request form. It sometimes implies that the other person should be helping or have offered to do it (see 301):

I wish you 'd give me a hand.

K Starred would and could forms may be introduced by phrases such as do you think? I wonder(ed) if, I was wondering if (see 104):

Do you think you could lend me £500?

285 Requests with might

A you might can express a very casual request;

You might post these/or me.

But it can only be used in friendly relaxed situations, otherwise it wouid sound rude.

B With a certain intonation and a strong stress on the important word might can express a reproachful request: You might ^help me with stress on help might imply 'Why aren't you helping me?/You should be helping me'.
C might can also be used with other persons to express this sort of irritation: He might 'pay us.' with stress on pay could mean 'We are annoyed that he doesn't pay/hasn't paid us'.
D might + perfect infinitive can express irritation at or reproach for the non-performance of an action in the past: You might have 'told us with stress on told could mean 'You should have told us',
6 Invitations
A will you have/would you tike + noun:
Will you have a drink? (sometimes shortened to Have a drink.)
Would you like a coffee? Note that do you want is not an invitation. (For want and would like. see 296.)
In indirect speech we use offer + indirect object (= person addressed) + noun:
She offered me a drink/a coffee.
B will/would/could you? would you like to?
Will you have lunch with me tomorrow?'is informal, but Would/Could you have lunch with me? or Would you like to have lunch with me? can be used in both informal and formal situations. These invitations would be reported by invite/ask + direct object + to + noun, or invite/ask 4- direct object + infinitive:
He invited me to lunch/to have lunch with him.
C Answers to invitations
Offers of a drink/a cigarette etc. are usually answered:
Yes, please or No, thank you.
Invitations with would you/could you/would you like are usually answered:
I'd like to very much/I'd love to or
I'd like to very much but I'm afraid I can't. wouldn't like, of course, would not be possible. An invitation and answer might be reported:
He invited us to dinner/to a party/to spend the weekend with him and
we accepted/but we refused/but we had to refuse because . . .

D When the speaker doesn't really expect: his offer/invitation to be accepted he can say:
You wouldn't like another drink, would you? (Perhaps the speaker would like another drink himself, and wants an excuse. He doesn't really expect that his friend will accept, though.)
You wouldn't like to come with me, would you? (Again he doesn't really expect an acceptance.)

287 Advice forms

A must, ought to and should can be used for advice:
You must read this book. It's marvellous.
You should grow your own vegetables.
You ought to plant some trees.
In indirect speech must, ought to and should here can remain unchanged or be reported by advise 4- object:
He advised me to plant trees.
B you had better + bare infinitive (see 120):
You'd better take off your wet shoes. You 'd better not wait any longer. had better can be used with the third person:
He'd better stop taking those pills.
C if I were you I should/would:
If I were you I 'd buy a car.
This is often shortened to I should/would with a slight stress on the I;
i/'d buy a car.
In indirect speech If I were you I should/would . . . is reported by advise + object:
He advised me to buy a car.
D I advise/would advise you + infinitive:
I (would) advise you to apply at once or I advise/would advise + gerund:
I('d) advise applying at once.
E why don't you . . . ? can be either advice or suggestion:

Why don't you learn to play your guitar? Why don't you take a holiday? When this is advice it is reported by advise + object:
He advised me to take a holiday.
F it is time you +- past tense:
/; ;s time you bought a new coat. (See 293.) This would be reported:
He said it was time I bought a new coat.

Advice with may/might as well + infinitive
This construction can express very unemphatic advice:
You may/might as veil ask him =
If would do no harm to ask him.
She said I might as well ask him. This form can be used with the third person:
He may as well come with me and the speaker may use it of himself:
As there isn 't anything more to do, I may as well go home early.
Suggestions First person suggestions with let's or shall I/we
let's + infinitive:
Let's paint it ourselves. shall we is sometimes added:
Let's get the paint today, shall we? shall I/we + infinitive:
Shall we invite Bill?
Suggestions with let's ur shall we can be answered affirmatively by yes, let's. let's not could be used jokingly as a negative answer:
Let's take the tent. ~ Let's not! Or it can introduce a negative suggestion:
Let's not start too early. don't let's could also be used here:
Don't let's start too early.
First and second person suggestions
why don't we/you + infinitive or why not + infinitive/expression of
time or place;
Why don't we meet and discuss it?
Why not meet and discuss it?
Where shall we meet? ~ Why not here?AVhy not at the hotel? In colloquial English what's wrong with/what's the matter with + noun could also be used:
What's wrong with the hotel? what/how about + gerund/noun:
Where shall we sleep?
What about renting a caravan?
What about a bed and breakfast place? suppose I/we/you + present or past tense:
Suppose you offer/offered to pay him?

C First, second or third person suggestions with suggest or propose
suggest (+ possessive adjective) + gerund, or suggest that •+• subject + present tense/should.
propose is used in exactly the same way but is slightly more formal than suggest.
In the active, suggest + should + infinitive is more forma] than suggest + a present or past tense.
/ suggest (your) selling it.
We suggest that you should sell it. (formal)
I propose that the secretary sends in/should send in a report, (formal)
I propose that a report (should) be sent in. (formal) that. . . should is necessary in the passive.
With should be it is possible in formal English to omit the should, leaving the be alone, as shown above.
D Suggestions in indirect speech
Suggestions can be reported by:
suggest/suggested (+ possessive adjective) + gerund, or suggest that + subject + present tense/should, or suggested that + subject + past tense/should, or suggest (any tense) + noun/pronoun:
Tom suggests/suggested (our) having a meeting.
Ann suggests that he sells/should sell his house.
Ann suggested that he sold/should sell it.
Mr Jones suggested a meeting. (For suggestions with let's, see also 322.)

The subjunctive
Form
The present subjunctive has exactly the same form as the infinitive;
therefore the present subjunctive of to be is be for all persons, and the present subjunctive of all other verbs is the same as their present tense except that s is not added for the third person singular:
The queen lives here. (simple present tense)
Long live the queen! (subjunctive)
(, The past subjunctive has exactly the same form as the simple past • except that with the verb be the past subjunctive form is either . I/he/she/it was or I/he/she/it were. In expressions of doubt or
unreality were is more usual than was:
He behaves as though he were the owner. (But he is not the owner.)
In conversation, however, was is often used instead of were
(see also 225).
Past subjunctives are often known as 'unreal pasts'.
Use of the present subjunctive
The present subjunctive is used in certain exclamations to express a wish or hope, very often involving supernatural powers:
(God) bless you! God save the queen!
Heaven help us! Curse this fog!
Come what may, we'll standby you! Notice also the phrase if need be, which means 'if it is necessary':
If need be we can always bring another car.
It is sometimes used in poetry, either to express a wish or in clauses of condition or concession:
STEVENSON: Fair the day shine as it shone in my childhood. (May
the day shine/I hope it will shine.)
SHAKESPEARE: If this be error, and upon me proved ... (if this is
error)
BYRON: Though the heart be still as loving . . . (though the heart is)
As seen in 235 certain verbs are followed by should + infinitive constructions. When the infinitive is be, the should is sometimes omitted:
He suggested that a petition {should) be drawn up. The infinitive thus left alone becomes a subjunctive.

292 as if/as though + past subjunctive

The past subjunctive can be used after as if/as though to indicate unreality or improbability or doubt in the present (there is no difference between as if and as though):
He behaves as if he owned the place. (But he doesn't own it or probably doesn't own it or we don't know whether he owns it
or not.)
He talks as though he knew where she was. (But he doesn't know or
he probably doesn't know or we don't know whether he knows
or not.)
He orders me about as if I were his wife. (but I am not) The verb preceding as if/though can be put into a past tense without changing the tense of the subjunctive:
He talks/talked as though he knew where she was. After as if/as though we use a past perfect when referring to a real or imaginary action in the past:
He talks about Rome as though he had been there himself. (But he
hasn't or probably hasn't or we don't know whether he has or not.) Again, the verb preceding as if/though can be put into a past tense without changing the tense of the subjunctive:
He looks/looked as though he hadn't had a decent meal fora month.

293 it is time + past subjunctive (unreal past)

it is time can be followed by the infinitive:
It's time to start or by for + object 4- infinitive:

/('s time for us to go or by subject + a past subjunctive:
/('s time we went. It's time we were leaving. There is a slight difference in meaning between the forms. it is time + infinitive merely states that the correct time has arrived;
it is time + subject + past subjunctive implies that it is a little late. high can be added to emphasize this idea:
/t's high time we left. it is time + I/he/she/it cannot be followed by were:
It's time I was going. (For past subjunctives/unreal pasts in conditional sentences, see 222; after would rather/sooner, see 297; after wish + subject, see 300; in indirect speech, see 310.)

care, like, love, hate, prefer,
wish
care and like care is chiefly used in the negative and interrogative.
care for + noun/gerund is very similar to like + noun/gerund. We can say:
(a) Does/Did Tom care for living in the country? or Does/Did Tom like living in the country?
(b) You don't care for science fiction, do you? or
You don't like science fiction, do you? (b) above could be answered:
/ don't care for it or / dan't like if much or Oh yes, I like it.
(care would not be possible here.) care in the interrogative sometimes carries a hint of doubt:
Does Ann care for horror movies? (The speaker thinks that she
probably doesn't, or is surprised that she apparently does.) The feeling of doubt is more noticeable with would you care (for). . . ?
would care and would like
would care for + noun and would care + infinitive are similar to would like + noun/infinitive. But would care (for) is not normally "used in the affirmative, and offers expressed by would you care (for), . , ? are less confident than would you like . . . ? offers:
(a) TOM: Would you care for a lift, Ann? (Perhaps his car is uncomfortable and she likes comfort.)
(b) TOM: Would you care to see my photos, Ann? (He isn't sure that
she'll want to see them.) A favourable answer to (b) above would be:
'•/ I'd like to see them very much.
'As in the affirmative, would like replaces would care.
'Similarly in negative statements:
I wouldn't care to live on the 35th floor ~ Oh, I'd rather like it. .would care for/would like can sometimes be used with gerunds. ,<See 295 B.)
would have cared (for) and would have liked
Both here refer to actions which didn't take place:
ANN: I'd have liked to go with Tom. 0 wanted to go but didn't get my wish. See also 296 D-care could not be used here.) BILL: But he walked all the way! You wouldn't have cared for/have liked that, would you? or Would you have cared for/have liked that?

D Do not connise care as used above with care for (= look after) and care (about):
1 care for (= look after) is used chiefly in the passive:
The old people were cared for by their families.
2 care (about) (= feel concerned) is used chiefly in the negative and interrogative.
I don't care (about) appears similar to I don't mind, which can often be used instead:
It will be very expensive. - I don't care/mind or
/ don't care about/mind the expense or
/ don't care/mind what it costs.
But note that I don't care (about) = 'I am indifferent (to)' while I don't mind = 'I don't object (to)', i.e. 'He/It doesn't worry/upset/ annoy me.'
I don't mind is much more polite than I don't care, which often sounds arrogant and selfish. In the negative interrogative either can be used:
Don't you care/mind what happens to him?
Didn 'tyou care/mind what happened? But in the ordinary interrogative there is more difference between the two;
Do you care? •= Are you concerned?'/Do you feel concern? while Do you mind? usually means Do you object? (See also 263.)

295 care, like, love, hate, prefer

A When used in the conditional, these verbs are usually followed by the infinitive:
Would you care/like to come with me? (Would it please you to come
with me?)
I'd like to (come) very much or I'd love to (come).
I'd hate to spend Christmas alone. Here we are thinking of a particular action in the future.
B But would care for, would like can be followed by gerunds when we are not thinking of a particular action but are considering the subject's tastes generally. Note also that here would care for/would like are replaceable by would enjoy:
She would like/would enjoy riding if she could ride better. I wonder if Tom would care for/would enjoy hang-gliding. hate and prefer can be used similarly but are less common.
C When used in the present or past tenses, care for, like (= enjoy), love, hate and prefer are usually followed by the gerund:
He doesn't/didn't care for dancing.
They love/loved wind-surfing.
He prefers/preferred walking to cycling.

But the infinitive is not impossible and is particularly common in American English:
They love/loved to run on the sands.
' Note however that like can also mean 'think wise or right', and is then always followed by the infinitive:
She likes them to play in the garden. (She thinks they are safe
there.)
/ like to go to the dentist twice a year. (I think this wise.) . Compare this with I like going to the dentist, which implies that I enjoy my visits. Similarly / don't like to go = 'I don't think it right to go' while I don't like going == 'I don't enjoy going'.
Notice also another difference between these two negative forms-1 don't like toga usually means 'I don't go' (because 1 don't think it right). / don't like going usually means 'I go. although I don't enjoy it'. Similarly / didn 't like to open the letter means 'I didn't open it because I didn't think it right to do so' but / didn't like opening the letter means •I opened it reluctantly'.
E enjoy and dislike are always followed by noun/pronoun or gerund.
i would like and want
{ Sometimes either would like or want can be used:
1 In requests and questions about requests (but would not like is not used here: see Bl below):
CUSTOMER: I'd tike some raspberries, please or
/ want some raspberries, please.
GREENGROCER: I'm afraid I haven't any. Would you like some
strawberries?
CUSTOMER: No, I don't want any strawberries, thanks, (wouldn 'I
like is not possible.) I would like is usually more polite than I want.
would you like? is much more polite and helpful than do you want? would you like? can imply a willingness to satisfy the other person's wishes, do you want? doesn't imply this. Someone dealing with a customer or client, therefore, will normally use would you like?:
CALLER: I'd like to/I want to speak to Mr X, please. TELEPHONIST: Mr X is out. Would you like to speak to Mr Y?
2 When we are not making requests, but merely talking about our wishes, we can use either would like or want in affirmative, interrogative or negative. There is no difference in meaning, though / want usually sounds more confident than / would like and / want is not normally used for unrealizable wishes:
/ would like to live on Mars.

B would like and want are not interchangeable in the following uses:
1 In invitations we use would you like? not do you want?
Would you like a cup of coffee? Would you like to come to the theatre? do you want? used here would be a question only. not an invitation.
2 wouldn't like and don't want are different.
don't want = 'have no wish for', but wouldn't like = 'would dislike'.
wouldn't like cannot therefore be used in answer to invitations or offers, as it would be impolite. Instead we use don't want or some other form:
Would you like some more coffee? - No. I don't want any more,

thanks or No, thanks.
C In the past the two forms behave differently. In indirect speech want becomes wanted, but would like remains unchanged:
Tom said, 'I would like/want to see it' =
Tom said he would like/wanted to see it. But if we don't use a reported speech construction we have to say Turn wanted to see it. (We cannot use would like here, as Tom would like to see it has a present or future meaning.)
D would like has two past forms: would like + perfect infinitive or would have liked + infinitive/noun/pronoun. These forms express unrealized wishes only:
I'd like to have gone skiing or
I'd have liked a day's skiing. (But I didn't get my wish.)

297 would rather/sooner and prefer/would prefer

There is no difference between would rather and would sooner, but would rather is more often heard.
A would rather/sooner is followed by the bare infinitive when the subject of would rather/sooner is the same as the subject of the following action:
Tom would rather read than talk.
1 would rather/sooner + infinitive can be used instead of prefer + gerund for present actions:
Tom prefers reading to talking.
Note: would rather + infinitive •+• than + infinitive, but prefer + gerund + to + gerund, prefer can also be followed by a noun, but would rather always requires a verb;
He prefers wine to beer =
He would rather drink wine than beer.
I prefer tennis to golf =
I'd rather play tennis than golf.

Some statements with prefer + noun have no exact would rather equivalent: He prefers dogs to cats and He would rather have dogs than cats are not exactly the same.
would rather + infinitive cannot express preferences in the past, so the past equivalent of Tom would rather read than talk would be Tom preferred reading to talking/liked reading better than talking. But see 4 below.
would rather + infinitive can also be used instead of would prefer + infinitive:
I'd rather fly than go by sea/I'd prefer to fly. Note that with would prefer, only the preferred action is mentioned;
see above. If, therefore, we want to mention both actions we must used would rather.
Similarly with nouns:
Would you like some gin? — I'd prefer a coffee or
I'd rather have coffee than gin.
Both would rather/sooner and would prefer can be followed by the perfect infinitive:
We went by sea but I'd rather have gone by air/I'd prefer to have gone by air. (I wanted to go by air, but didn't get my wish.)
This is somewhat similar to would like + perfect infinitive, which expresses an unfulfilled wish. (See 296 D.)
Subject + would rather/sooner is followed by subject + past tense (subjunctive) when the two subjects are different:
Shall I give you a cheque? ~ I'd rather you paid cash. Note the use of would rather + subject + didn't for a negative preference:

Would you like him to paint it? - No, I'd rather he didn't (paint it).
Ann wants to tell Tom, but I'd rather she didn't (tell him).

prefer, however, like **like**, can take object + infinitive:

I'd prefer you to pay cash.
I'd prefer him not to paint it.
I'd prefer her not to tell Tom.

298 More examples of preference

I like hot weather better than cold = I prefer hot weather to cold = I'd rather/sooner have hot weather than cold.
I like skiing better than skating = I prefer skiing to skating = I'd rather/sooner ski than skate.
I liked playing in matches better than watching them = I preferred playing matches to watching them.

(**would rather/sooner** could not be used here.)

C *Would you like to start today or would you rather wait/would you prefer to wait till tomorrow? ~ I'd rather go today (than wait till tomorrow). I'd rather not wait.* Or
I'd prefer to start today. I'd prefer not to wait. I'd rather deliver it by hand than post it.
He says he'd rather go to prison than pay the fine.
I'd rather pay his fine for him than let him go to prison.

rather than . . . **would** + infinitive is possible in formal English:
Rather than let him go to prison I would pay his fine myself.

D *Do you want Ann to repair it herself ~ I'd prefer her to ring/I'd rather she rang the electrician or I'd rather she didn't try to repair it herself.*
They want to camp in my garden but I'd rather they didn't. I'd rather they camped by the river.
He usually has a pub lunch, but she 'd prefer him to come home for a meal/she 'd rather he came home for lunch. She 'd rather he didn't spend money in pubs.

299 wish, want and would like

wish, want and **would like** all mean 'desire'.
wish is the most formal. For **want** and **would like**, see 296.

A **wish** can be followed directly by an infinitive or by object + infinitive:
Why do/did you wish to see the manager? ~ I wish/wished to make a complaint.
The government does not wish Dr Jekyll Hyde to accept a professorship at a foreign university.

In less formal language we would use **want** or **would like**:
I would like/want to speak to Ann.
I wanted to speak to Ann.
She doesn't/didn't want the children to stay up late. (If we used **like** here instead of **want**, it would mean that she doesn't/didn't approve of the children staying up late.)

B **want** and **would like** can be followed directly by nouns:
I want/would like a single room.
He wanted a single room.

wish has a more restricted use:
We can wish someone luck/success/a happy Christmas etc.;
He said, 'Good luck!' = He wished me luck.
We can also send someone 'good/best wishes':
With all good wishes, yours, Bill (at the end of a letter)
Best wishes/or the New Year (on a New Year card)
Except in greetings of this kind, **wish** is not normally followed by a noun object.
wish + for can be followed by a noun/pronoun, but usually implies that
the subject has little hope of obtaining his wish. It is chiefly used in exclamations:
How he wished for a drink! *(Presumably he had no hope of getting one.)*
What he chiefly wished for was a chance to explain. (It seems unlikely that he was going to get this chance.)

300 wish + subject + unreal past

wish (that) *+ subject + a past tense (subjunctive; see 290 B) expresses regret about a present situation:*
I wish I knew his address = I'm sorry I don't know his address.
I wish you could drive a car = I 'm sorry you can't drive a car.
I wish he was coming with us = I'm sorry he isn't coming with us.

wish can be put into the past without changing the subjunctive:

He wished he knew the address = He was sorry he didn't know the address.

Unreal past tenses do not change in indirect speech:

'I wish I lived nearer my work,' he said = He said he wished he lived nearer his work.

B ***wish (that)*** *+ subject + past perfect (subjunctive) expresses regret about a past situation:*

I wish (that) I hadn't spent so much money = I'm sorry I spent so much money.

I wish you had written to him = I'm sorry you didn't write to him.

wished can replace wish without changing the subjunctive:

I wished I hadn't spent so much money = I was sorry I had spent so much money.

These verbs will be reported unchanged:

'I wished I had taken his advice,' she said = She (said she) wished she had taken his advice.

C **if only** can be used in exactly the same way. It has the same meaning as **wish** but is more dramatic:

If only we knew where to look for him!

If only she had asked someone's advice!

301 **wish (that)** + subject + **would**

A **wish** + subject + past tense can express regret for a present situation, as shown in 300 above:

I wish that he wrote more regularly = I'm sorry he doesn't write more regularly.

B **wish** + subject + **would** can be used similarly, but only with actions which the subject can control, i.e. actions he could change if he wished.

wish + would here can express interest in the subject's willingness/unwillingness to perform an action in the present. This is usually a habitual action.

/ wish he would write more often =-

I'm sorry he isn't willing to write more often.

I wish he would wear a coal = I'm sorry he refuses to wear a coat. The subject of wish cannot be the same as the subject of would, as this would be illogical- We cannot therefore have I wish +- I would.

C wish + subject + would can also be used to express dissatisfaction with the present and a wish for change in the future:

/ wish he would answer my Utter. (I have been waiting for an answer for a long time.)

/ wish they would change the menu. (I'm tired of eating sausages.)

I wish they would stop making bombs. But the speaker is normally not very hopeful that the change will take place, and often, as in the third example above, has no hope at all. As in B above, wish + subject + would here is restricted to actions where change is possible, and wish and would cannot have the same subject.

When there is a personal subject, the action is in the subject's control and the idea of wiilingness/unwillingness is still present, but wish + subject + would here can sometimes be used with inanimate subjects:

/ wish it would stop raining. I wish the sun would come out.

I wish prices would come down. I wish the train would came. wish + subject + would here is rather like would like, but would like is not restricted to actions where change is possible and does not imply dissatisfaction with the present situation. Also the would like construction does not imply any lack of hope:

/ would like jack to study art. (i want him to study art/I hope he will study art.)

/ tvish Peter would study art. (Peter has presumably refused to do this.)

D I wish you would is a possible request form. Here there is no feeling that the person addressed will refuse to perform the request, but there is often a feeling that this person is annoying or disappointing the speaker in some way: I wish you would help me often implies 'You should have offered to help me', and I wish you would stop huwmifig/interrupting/asking silly questions would imply that the speaker was irritated by the noise/the interruptions/the

silly questions. However, the expression I wish you would can be used in answer to an offer of help, and does not then imply any dissatisfaction:
Shall I help you check the accounts? ~ I wish you would. (I'd be glad of your help.)
E if only + would can replace wish + would in B and C above. It cannot be used for requests as in D. if only ia more dramatic than wish: If only he would join our party!

30 The passive voice

302 Form

A The passive of an active tense is formed by putting the verb to be into the same tense as the active verb and adding the past participle of the active verb. The subject of the active verb becomes the 'agent' of the passive verb. The agent is very often not mentioned. When it is mentioned it is preceded by by and placed at the end of the clause:
This free was planted by my grandfather.

B Examples of present, past and perfect passive tenses:
Active We keep the butter here.
Passive The butter is kept here.
Active They broke the window.
Passive The window was broken.
Active People have seen wolves in She streets.
Passive Wolves have been seen in the streets.

C The passive of continuous tenses requires the present continuous forms of to be, which are not otherwise much used:
Active They are repairing the bridge.
Passive The bridge is being repaired.
Active They were carrying the injured player off the field.
Passive The injured player was being carried off the field.
Other continuous tenses are exceedingly rarely used in the passive, so that sentences such as:
They have/had been repairing the road and
They will/would be repairing the road are not normally put into the passive,

D Auxiliary + infinitive combinations are made passive by using a passive infinitive:
Active You must/should shut these doors.
Passive These doors must/should be shut.
Active They should/ought fo have told him.
(perfect infinitive active)
Passive He should/ought to have been told.
(perfect infinitive passive)

E Other infinitive combinations
Verbs of liking/loving/wanting/wishing etc. + object + infinitive form their passive with the passive infinitive:
Active *He wants someone to take photographs.*
Passive *He wants photographs to be taken.*
With verbs of command/request/advice/invitation + indirect object + infinitive we form the passive by using the passive form of the main verb:
Active *He invited me to go.*
Passive *I was invited to go.*
But with advise/beg/order/recommend/urge + indirect object + infinitive + object we can form the passive in two ways: by making the main verb passive, as above, or by advise etc. + that, should + passive infinitive:
Active *He urged the Council to reduce the rates.*
Passive *The Council was/were urged to reduce the rates* or
He urged that the rates should be reduced.
agree/be anxious/arrange/be determined/determine/decide/demand + infinitive + object are usually expressed in the passive by that. . . should, as above:
Active *He decided to sell the house.*
Passive *He decided that the house should lie sold.*
(See also 235.)

F Gerund combinations
advise/insist/propose/recommend/suggest + gerund + object are usually expressed in the passive by that. . . should, as above:
Active *He recommended using bullet-proof glass.*
Passive *He recommended that bullet-proof glass should be used.*
(See 235.)

it/they + need + gerund can also be expressed by it/they + need + passive infinitive. Both forms are passive in meaning.
Other gerund combinations are expressed in the passive by the passive gerund:
Active I remember them taking me to the Zoo.
Passive / remember being taken to the Zoo.

303 Active tenses and their passive equivalents

Tense/Verb form	Active voice	Passive voice
Simple present	keeps	is kept
Present continuous	is keeping	is being kept
Simple past	kept	was kept
Past continuous	was keeping	was being kept
Present perfect	has kept	has been kept
Past perfect	had kept	had been kept
Future	wilt keep	will be kept
Conditional	would keep	would be kept
Perfect conditional	would have kept	would have been kept
Present infinitive	to keep	to be kept
Perfect infinitive	In have kept	to hare been kept
Present participle/gerund	keeping	being kept
Perfect participle	having kept	having been kept

B In colloquial speech get is sometimes used instead of be:
The eggs got (= were) broken. You 'II get (= be) sacked if you take any more time off.

C Note that in theory a sentence containing a direct and an indirect object, such as *Someone gave her a bulldog*, could have two passive forms:
She was given a bulldog. *A bulldog was given to her.*
The first of these is much the more usual, i.e. the indirect object usually becomes the subject of the passive verb. (See also 302 E,F.)

D Questions about the identity of the subject of an active verb are usually expressed by an affirmative (see 55);

What delayed you? Which leant won?

Questions about the subject of a passive verb are also expressed by an affirmative:
Something was done. ~ What was dime?
One of them was sold. ~ Which of them was sold?
Interrogative verbs in active questions may become affirmative verbs in passive questions:
What did they steal? (interrogative)
What was stolen? (affirmative)
Note, however that, when the question refers to the agent, an interrogative verb is necessary:
Who painted it? (affirmative)
Who was it painted by? (interrogative)

304 Uses of the passive

The passive is used:

A When it is not necessary to mention the doer of the action as it is obvious who he is/was/will be:
The rubbish hasn 't been collected. The streets are swept every day. Your hand will be X-rayed.

B When we don't know, or don't know exactly, or have forgotten who did the action:
The minister was murdered. My cay has been moved! You'll be met at the station. I've been Sold that. . .

C When the subject of the active verb would be 'people':
He is suspected of receiving stolen goods. (People suspect him of . . ,) They are supposed to be living in New York. (People suppose that they are living . . .) (See 245, 306 for infinitive constructions with passive verbs.)

D When the subject of the active sentence would be the indefinite pronoun one: One sees this sort of advertisement everywhere would usually be expressed:

This sort of advertisement is seen everywhere. In colloquial speech we can use the indefinite pronoun you (see 68) and an active verb:
You see this sort of advertisement everywhere. But more formal English requires one + active verb or the more usual passive form.

E When we are more interested in the action than the person who does it:
The house next door has been bought (by a M-r Jones). If, however, we know Mr Jones, we would use the active;
Your/other's friend, Mr Jones, has bought the house next door. Similarly:
A new public library is being built (by our local council) though in more informal English we could use the indefinite pronoun they (see 68) and an active verb:
They are building a new public library while a member of the Council will of course say:
We are/The council is building etc.

F The passive may be used to avoid an awkward or ungrammatical sentence. This is usually done by avoiding a change of subject:
When he arrived home a detective arrested him would be better expressed:
When he arrived home he was arrested (by a detective).
When their mother was ill neighbours looked after the children would be better expressed:
When their mother was ill the children were looked after by
neighbours.

The passive is sometimes preferred for psychological reasons. A speaker may use it to disclaim responsibility for disagreeable announcements:
EMPLOYER: Overtime rates are being rednced/wili have to be reduced. The active wili. of course, be used for agreeable announcements:
I/We are going to increase overtime rates. The speaker may know who performed the action but wish to avoid giving the name. Tom, who suspects Bill of opening his letters, may say tactfully:
This letter has been opened!, instead of *You've opened this letter!*
For the **have** + object + past participle construction, *I had the car resprayed*, see 119.

305 Prepositions with passive verbs

As already noted, the agent, when mentioned, is preceded by by;
Active Dufy painted this picture. Passive This picture was painted by Dufy. Active What makes these holes? Passive What are these holes made by?
Note, however, that the passive form of such sentences as:
Smoke filled the room. Paint covered the lock. will be:
The room was filled with smoke. The lock was covered with paint. We are dealing here with materials used, not with the agents.
, When a verb + preposition 4- object combination is put into the passive, the preposition will remain immediately after the verb;
Active We must write to him.
Passive He must be written to.
Active You can play with these cubs quite safely.
Passive These cubs can be played with quite safely.
Similarly with verb + preposition/adverb combinations:
Active They threw away the old newspapers.
Passive The old newspapers were thrown away.
Active He looked after the children well.
Passive The children were well looked after.

306 Infinitive constructions after passive verbs

After acknowledge, assume, believe, claim, consider, estimate, feel, find, know, presume, report, say, think, understand etc. (see also 245)
Sentences of the type People consider/know/think etc. that he is . . . have two possible passive forms:
It is considered/known/thought etc. that he is . . .
He is considered/known/thought etc. to be . . . Similarly:

People said that he was jealous of her =
It was said that he was or He was said to he jealous of her. The infinitive construction is the neater of the two. It is chiefly used with to be though other infinitives can sometimes be used: He is thought to have information which will be useful to the police. When the thought concerns a previous action we use the perfect infinitive so that:
People believed that he was ==
It was believed that he was or He was believed to have been . . .
People know that he was =
It is known that he was or He is known to have been . . . This construction can be used with the perfect infinitive of any verb.

B After suppose

1 suppose in the passive can be followed by the present infinitive of any verb but this construction usually conveys an idea of duty and is not therefore the normal equivalent of suppose in the active:
You are supposed to know how to drive = It is your duty to know/Vim should know how to drive though He is supposed to be in Paris could mean either 'He ought to be there' or 'People suppose he is there'-

2 suppose in the passive can similarly be followed by the perfect infinitive of any verb. This construction may convey an idea of duty but very often does not:
You are supposed to have finished = You should have finished but He is supposed to have escaped disguised as a woman = People suppose that he escaped etc.

C Infinitives placed after passive verbs are normally full infinitives:
Active We saw them go out. He made us work. Passive They were seen to go out. We were made to work.
let, however, is used without to:
Active They let us go. Passive We were let go.

D The continuous infinitive can be used after the passive of believe, know, report, say, suppose, think, understand:
He is believed/known/said/supposed/thought to be living abroad = People believe/know/say/suppose/think that he is living abroad. You are supposed to he working = You should be working. The perfect form of the continuous infinitive is also possible:
He is believed to have been waiting for a message = People believed that he was waiting for a message. You are supposed to have been working = You should have been working.

31 Indirect speech

307 Direct and indirect (or reported) speech

There are two ways of relating what a person has said: direct and indirect.
In direct speech we repeat the original speaker's exact words:

He said, 'I have lost my umbrella.'

Remarks thus repeated are placed between inverted commas, and a ' comma or colon is placed immediately before the remark. Direct speech is found in conversations in books, in plays, and in quotations.
In indirect speech we give the exact meaning of a remark or a speech, without necessarily using the speaker's exact words:

He said (that) he had lost his umbrella.

There is no comma after **say** in indirect speech. **that** can usually be omitted after say and tell + object. But it should be kept after other verbs: **complain, explain, object, point out, protest** etc. Indirect speech is normally used when conversation is reported verbally, though direct speech is sometimes employed here to give a more dramatic effect.
When we turn direct speech into indirect, some changes are usually necessary. These are most easily studied by considering statements, questions, and commands separately.

308 Statements in indirect speech: tense changes necessary

A Indirect speech can be introduced by a verb in a present tense: He says that. . . This is usual when we are:

(a) reporting a conversation that is still going on
(b) reading a letter and reporting what it says
(c) reading instructions and reporting them
(d) reporting a statement that someone makes very often, e.g. Tom says that he'll never get married.

When the introductory verb is in a present, present perfect or future tense we can report the direct speech without any change of tense:

PAUL (phoning from the station): I'm trying to get a taxi.
ANN (to Mary, who is standing beside her): Paul says he is trying to get a taxi.

B But indirect speech is usually introduced by a verb in the past tense. Verbs in the direct speech have then to be changed into a corresponding past tense. The changes are shown in the following table. (The that has been omitted in the last five examples.)

Direct speech	Indirect speech
Simple present	Simple past
‘I never ml meat.' he explained	= He explained that he never ate meat.
Present continuous	Past continuous
'I'm waiting/or Ann.' he said	= He said (thai) he was waiting for Ann.
Present perfect	Past perfect
I have found a flat,' he said	= He said (that) he had found a flat.
Present perfect continuous	Past perfect continuous
Hesaid, 'I've been waiting forages'	= He said he had been waiting for ages.
Simple past	Past perfect
I took it home with me,' she said	= She said she had taken it home with her.
Future	Conditional
He said, I will/shall be in Paris m Monday'	= He said he would be in Paris cm Monday.
Future continuous	Conditional continuous
'I will/shall be using the car myself on the 24th,' she said	= She said she'd be using the car herself on the 24th.
But note,	
Conditional	Conditional
I said, 7 would/should like to see it'	= I said I would/should like to see it. (No tense change. See also 227.)

C Note on I/we shall/should

'I/we shall' normally becomes he/she/they would in indirect speech:

I shall be 21 tomorrow,' said Bill = Bill said he would be 21 the following day. But if the sentence is reported by the original speaker, 'I/we shall' can become either I/we should or I/we would, would is the more common.

Similarly 'I/we should' usually becomes he/she/they would in indirect speech:

'If I had the instruction manual I should/would know what to do,'
said Bill =
Bill said that if he had the instructions he would know what to do. But if the sentence is reported by the original speaker 'I/we should' can either remain unchanged or be reported by would- See last example in B above.

309 Past tenses sometimes remain unchanged

A In theory the past tense changes to the past perfect, but in spoken English it is often left unchanged, provided this can be done without causing confusion about the relative times of the actions. For example, He said. 'I loved her' must become He said he had loved her as otherwise there would be a change of meaning. But He said, 'Ann arrived on Monday' could be reported He said Ann arrived/had arrived on Monday.

B The past continuous tense in theory changes to the past perfect continuous but in practice usually remains unchanged except when it refers to a completed action:

She said, 'We were thinking of selling the house but we have decided

not to' =
She said that they had been thinking of selling the house but had
decided not to. But He said, 'When I saw them they were playing tennis' =
He said that when he saw them they were playing tennis.

C In written English past tenses usually do change to past perfect but there are the following exceptions:

1 Past/Past continuous tenses in time clauses do not normally change:
He said, 'When we were living/lived in Paris . . .' =
He said that when they were living in Paris . . . The main verb of such sentences can either remain unchanged or become the past perfect:
He said, 'When we were living/lived in Paris we often saw Paul' =
fie said that when they were living/lived in Paris they often saw/had
often seen Paul.

2 A past tense used to describe a state of affairs which still exists when the speech is reported remains unchanged:
She said, 'I decided not to buy the house because it was on a main road' = She said that she had decided not to buy the house because it was on a main road.

310 Unreal past tenses (subjunctives) in indirect speech

A Unreal past tenses after wish, would rather/sooner and it is time do not change:

'We wish we didn't have to take exams.' said the children = The children said they wished they didn't have to take exams.
'Bill wants to go alone,' said Ann, 'but I'd rather he went with a group' = Ann said that Bill wanted to go alone but that she 'd rather he went with a group.
'It's time we began planning our holidays,' he said = He said that it was time they began planning their holidays.

B **I/he/she/we/they had better** remains unchanged, **you had better** can remain unchanged or be reported by advise + object + infinitive (see 120):

'The children had better go to bed early,' said Tom = Tom said that the children had better go to bed early.

'You'd better not drink the water,' she said = She advised/warned us not to drink the water.

C Conditional sentences types 2 and 3 remain unchanged (see 229):

'If my children were older I would emigrate,' he said = He said that if his children were older he would emigrate.

311 **might, ought to, should, would, used** to in indirect statements

A might remains unchanged except when used as a request form:
He said, 'Ann might ring today' = He said that Ann might ring (that day).
But 'You might post these for me' he said = He asked me to post them for him. (See 285 for requests.)
B ought to/should for obligation or assumption remains unchanged:
'They ought to/should widen this road,' I said = I said that they ought to/should widen the road. I said,
'I should be back by six' (I assume I will be) = I said I should be back by six.

C But you ought to/you should, if used to express advice rather than obligation, can be reported by advise + object + infinitive, you must can also express advice and be reported similarly.
'You ought to/should/must read the instructions,' said Ann = Ann advised/urged/warned me to read the instructions.

D The advice form 'Ifl were you I should/would . . .' is normally reported by advise + object + infinitive:
'If I were you I'd wait,'I said = I advised him to waif,

E The request form 'I should/would be (very) grateful if you would . . .' is normally reported by ask + object + infinitive:
'I'd be very grateful if you 'd keep me informed,' he said = He asked me to keep him informed.

F **would** in statements doesn't change. But see 284 for **would** in requests etc.

G **used to** doesn't change:
'I know the place well because I used to live here,' he explained = He explained thai he knew the place well because he used to live there.
(For could, see 312; for must, see 325.)

312 could in indirect statements

(For could interrogative, see 283-4.)

A **could** for ability

1 **could** for present ability does not change:
'I can't/couldn't stand on my head.' he said = He said he couldn't stand on his head.

2 **could** for future ability can remain unchanged or be reported by would be able:
He said, 'I could do it tomorrow' = He said he could do it/would be able to do it the next day.

could in type 2 conditional sentences is reported similarly:
'If I had the tools I could mend it,' he said = He said that if he had the tools he could/would be able to mend it. would be able here implies that the supposition may be fulfilled. (Perhaps he'll be able to borrow tools.)

could in type 3 conditional sentences is reported unchanged.

could for past ability can remain unchanged or be reported by had been able:
'I could read when I was three.' she boasted = She boasted that she could/had been able to read when she was three.

B **could** for permission

In type 2 conditional sentences **could** can remain unchanged or be reported by **would be allowed to**:
'If I paid my fine I could walk out of prison today,' he said = He said that if he paid his fine he could/would be allowed to walk etc.
could in the past can remain unchanged or be reported by was/were allowed to or had been allowed to:
He said, 'When I was a boy I could stay up as long as I liked' = He said that when he was a boy he could/was allowed to stay up or He said that as a boy he was/had been allowed etc.

313 Indirect speech: pronoun and adjective

Pronouns and possessive adjectives usually change from first or second to third person except when the speaker is reporting his own words:
He said, 'I've forgotten the combination of my safe' = He said that he had forgotten the combination of his safe.
I said, 'I like my new house' = I said that I liked my new house, (speaker reporting his own words)

Sometimes a noun must be inserted to avoid ambiguity: Tom said. 'He cane in through the window' would not normally be reported Tom said he had come in through the window as this might imply that Tom himself had come in this way; but if we use a noun there can be no confusion:
Tom said that the man/burglar/cat etc, had come in . . .
Pronoun changes may affect the verb:
He says. 'I know her' = He says he knows her.
He says, '! shall be there' = He says that he will be there.
B this and these
this used in time expressions usually becomes that:
He said, 'She is coming this week' =
He said that she was coming that week. Otherwise this and that used as adjectives usually change to the:
He said, 'I bought this pearl/these pearls for my mother' =
He said that he had bought the peart/pearls for his mother. this, these used as pronouns can become it, they/them:
He showed me two bullets. 'I found these embedded in the panelling,'

he said =
He said he had found them embedded in the panelling.

He said, 'We will discuss this tomorrow' = He said that they would discuss it/the waiter the next day. this, these (adjectives or pronouns), used to indicate choice or to distinguish some things from others, can become the one(s) near him etc., or the statement can be reworded:

'I'll have this (one),' he said to me = He said he would have the one near him or
He pointed to/touched/showed me the one he wanted.

314 Expressions of time and place in indirect speech

A Adverbs and adverbial phrases of time change as follows:

Direct	Indirect
today	*that day*
yesterday	*the day before*
the day before yesterday	*two days before*
tomorrow	*the next day/the following day*
the day after tomorrow	*in two days' time*
next week/year etc.	*the following week/year etc.*
last week/year etc.	*the previous week/year etc.*
a year etc. ago	*a year before/the previous year*

'I saw her the day before yesterday,' he said = He said he'd seen her two days before.
'I'll do it tomorrow,' he promised = He promised that he would do it the next day.
'I'm starting the day after tomorrow, mother.' he said = He told his mother that he was starting in two days' time.

She said, 'My father died a year ago' = She said that her father had died a year before/the previous year.

B But if the speech is made and reported on the same day these time changes are not necessary:

At breakfast this morning he said. 'I'll be very busy today' = At breakfast this morning he said that he would be very busy today.

C Logical adjustments are of course necessary if a speech is reported one/two days after it is made. On Monday Jack said to Tom:

I'm leaving the day after tomorrow.

If Tom reports this speech on the next day (Tuesday) he will probably say:

Jack said he was leaving tomorrow.

If he reports it on Wednesday, he will probably say:

Jack said he was leaving today.

D **here** can become **there** but only when it is clear what place is meant:

At the station he said, 'I'll be here again tomorrow' = He said that he 'd be there again the next day.
*Usually **here** has to be replaced by some phrase:*
She said, 'You can sit here, Tom' = She told Tom that he could sit beside her etc. But He said, 'Come here, boys' would normally be reported:

He called the boys.

315 Infinitive and gerund constructions in indirect speech

A **agree/refuse/offer/promise/threaten** + infinitive can sometimes be used instead of say (that):

ANN: Would you wait half an hour? TOM: All right = Tom agreed to wait or Tom said he would wait.
ANN: Would you lend me another £50?
TOM: No. I won't lend you any more money = Tom refused to lend her any more money or Tom said thai he wouldn't lend etc.
PAUL: I'll help you if you like, Ann = Paul offered to help her or

Paul said that he'd help her. (See also shall I?, 318.)
ANN: I'll pay you back next week. Really I will. = Ann promised to pay him back the following week or
Ann said that she would pay him back or
Ann assured him that she would pay him back.
KIDNAPPERS: If you don't pay the ransom at once we'll kill your daughter = The kidnappers threatened to kill his daughter if he didn 't Ray the ransom at once or The kidnappers said that they would kill etc:
(For object + infinitive constructions, see 320.)

B **accuse** . . . **of/admit/apologize for/deny/insist on** + gerund can sometimes be used instead of say (that):
TOM took the money!' might be reported
He accused me of taking the money.
'I stole/didn't steal it' might be reported
I admitted/denied stealing it.
'I'm sorry I'm late,' he said might be reported
He apologized for being late or
He said,he was sorry he was tale.
BILL: Let me pay/or myself.
TOM: Certainly not! I'll pay! might be reported
Tom insisted on paying.

316 **say, tell** and alternative introductory verbs

A say and tell with direct speech
1 say can introduce a statement or follow it:
Tom said, 'I've just heard the news' or 'I've just heard the news,' Tom said. Inversion of say and noun subject is possible when say follows the
statement:
'I've just heard the news,' said Tom. say + to + person addressed is possible, but this phrase must follow the direct statement; it cannot introduce it:
'I'm leaving at once,' Tom said to me. Inversion is not possible here.
2 tell requires the person addressed:
Tell me. He told us. I'll tell Tom. except with tell lies/stories/the truth, when the person addressed need not be mentioned:
He told (me) lies. I'll tell (you) a story. tell used with direct speech must be placed after the direct statement:
'I'm leaving at once,' Tom told me.
Inversion is not possible with tell.

B **say** and **tell** with indirect speech
Indirect statements are normally introduced by say, or tell + object. say 4- to + object is possible but much less usual than tell + object:
He said he'd just heard the news.
He told me that he'd just heard the news.
Note also **tell . . . how/about**:
He told us how he had crossed the mountains.
He told us about crossing the mountains.
He told us about his journeys.
(For say and tell with indirect commands, see 320-1.)

Other useful verbs are:

add*	complain*	point out
admit*	deny*	promise*
answer*	explain*	protest*
argue*	grumble*	remark*
assure + object	object*	remind + object
boast*	observe*	reply*

These can be used with direct or indirect speech. With direct speech they follow direct statements;
'It won't cost more,' Tom assured us.
Starred verbs can be inverted, provided the subject is a noun:
'But it will take longer,' Bill objected/objected Bill.
'It'll cost too much,' Jack grumbled/grumbled Jack. They can all introduce indirect statements. that should be placed after the verb:
Tom assured us that it wauldn 't cost more. But Bill objected/pointed
out that it would take longer.

D **murmur, mutter, shout, stammer, whisper** can precede or follow direct statements or questions. With noun subjects the verb can be inverted as shown above:
'You're late,' whispered Tom/Tom whispered.
They can introduce indirect statements, that is usually necessary:
Tom whispered that we were late.
There are, of course, a lot of other verbs describing the voice or the tone of voice, e.g. *bark, growl, roar, scream, shriek, snarl, sneer, yell*. But these are more common with direct than indirect speech.

317 Questions in indirect speech

Direct question: *He said, 'Where is she going?'*
Indirect question: *He asked where she was going.*
When we turn direct questions into indirect speech, the following changes are necessary. Tenses, pronouns and possessive adjectives, and adverbs of time and place change as in statements.
The interrogative form of the verb changes to the affirmative form. The question mark (?) is therefore omitted in indirect questions:
He said, 'Where does she live?' = He asked where she lived.
With affirmative verb questions (see 55) this change is obviously not necessary:
'Who lives next door?' he said = He asked who lived next door.
'What happened?' she said = She asked what had happened.
If the introductory verb is .say, it must be changed to avert of inquiry, e.g. ask, inquire, wonder, want to know etc.:
He said, 'Where is the station?' = He asked where the station was.

ask, inquire, wonder can also be used in direct speech. They are then usually placed at the end of the sentence:
'Where is the station?' he inquired.
C ask can be followed by the person addressed (indirect object):
Heasked, 'What have you got in your bag?' =
He asked (me) what I had got in my bag. But inquire, wonder, want to know cannot take an indirect object, so if we wish to report a question where the person addressed is mentioned, we must use ask:
He said. 'Mary, when is the next train?' =
He asked Mary when the next train was. If we use inquire, wonder or want to know we must omit Mary.
D If the direct question begins with a question word (when, where, who, how, why etc.) the question word is repeated in the indirect question:
Hesaid, 'Why didn't you put on the brake?' =
He asked (her) why she hadn 'f put on the brake.
She said, 'What do you want?' =
She asked (them) what they wanted.
E If there is no question word, if or whether must be used:
7s anyone there?' he asked = He asked if/whether anyone was there.
1 Normally we can use either if and whether, if is the more usual:
'Do you know Bill?' he said =
He asked if/whether I knew Bill.
'Did you see the accident?' the policeman asked =
The policeman asked if/whether I had seen the accident.
2 whether can emphasize that a choice has to be made:

'Do you want to go by air or sea?' the travel agent asked = The travel agent asked whether I wanted to go by air or by sea. Note whether or not:
'Do you want to insure your luggage or not?' he asked == He asked whether or not I wanted to insure my luggage or He asked if I wanted to insure my luggage or not.
3 whether + infinitive is possible after wonder, want to know:
'Shall/Should 1wait for them or go on?' he wondered =
He wondered whether to wait for them or go on or
He wondered whether he should wait for them or go on.
inquire + whether + infinitive is possible but less usual.
(For whether + infinitive, see also 242 B.)
4 whether is neater if the question contains a conditional clause as otherwise there would be two ifs:
'If you get the job will you move to York?' Bill asked = Bill asked whether, if I got the job, I'd move to York.
Questions beginning shall I/we? in indirect speech Questions beginning shall I/we? can be of four kinds.
Speculations or requests for information about a future event:
'Shall I ever see them again?' he wondered. 'When shall I know the result of the test?' she asked.
These follow the ordinary rule about shall/will. Speculations are
usually introduced by wonder:
He wondered if he would ever see them again. She asked when she would know the result of the test.
Requests for instructions or advice:
'What shall I do with it?' = 'Tell me what to do with it.' These are expressed in indirect speech by ask, inquire etc., with should or the be + infinitive construction. Requests for advice are normally reported by should:
'Shall we post it. sir?' he said =
He asked the customer if they were to post/if they should post if.
'What shall I say, mother?' she said =
She asked her mother what she should say. (request for advice) When a choice is required we normally use whether in indirect speech. whether + infinitive is sometimes possible (see also 317 E):
'Shall I lock the car or leave it unlocked?' he said =
He asked whether he should/was to lock the car or leave it
unlocked or He asked whether to lock the car etc.
Offers:
'Shall I bring you some tea?' could be reported
He offered to bring me some tea.
Note that 'Wouldyou like me to bring you some tea?' and 'I'll bnngyou some tea if you like' could also be reported by offer.
Suggestions:
'Shall we meet at the theatre?' could be reported He suggested meeting at the theatre.
Questions beginning will you/would you/could you?
These may be ordinary questions, but may also be requests, invitations, or, very occasionally, commands (see 284. 286, 320):
He said. 'Will you be there tomorrow?' (ordinary question) =
He asked if she would be there the next day.
'Will you stand still!'he shouted = He shouted at me to standstill"^!
He told/ordered me to stand still.
'Wouldyou like to live in New York?' he asked =
He asked if I would tike to live in New York.
'Wilt/Would you file these letters, please?' he said =
He asked/told me to/lie the Setters.
'Would you like a lift?' said Ann = Ann offered me a lift. 'Would you like to come round/Could yw come round for a drink?'
he said =
He invited me (to come) round for a drink.
'Could you live on £25 a week?' he asked =
He asked if I could live on £25 a week.
'Could/Would you give me a hand?' she said =

She asked us to give her a hand.
'Could/Would you show me the photos?' she said =
She asked me to show her the photos or She asked to see the photos. (For can/could/may/might + I/we?, see 283. For requests for permission, see 131.)
320 Commands, requests, advice in indirect speech
Direct command: He said, 'Lie down, Tom.'
Indirect command: He told Tom to He down.
Indirect commands, requests, advice are usually expressed by a verb of comraand/request/advice + object + infinitive (== the object -i- infinitive construction).
A The following verbs can be used: advise, ask, beg, command, encourage, entreat, forbid, implore, invite, order, recommend, remind, request, tell, urge, warn.
(Note that say is not included in this list. For indirect commands/ requests reported by say, see 321.)
Hesaid. 'Get your coat, Tom!' = He told Tom to get his coat. 'You had better hurry, Bill!' she said = She advised Bill to hurry.
B Negative commands, requests etc. are usually reported by not •+• infinitive:
'Don't swim out too far, boys,' I said =
I warned/told the boys not to swim out too far. forbid can also be used for prohibitions, but is more common in the passive than in the active.
C Verbs in A above require object + infinitive, i.e. they must be followed directly by the person addressed without preposition (see also 89). The person addressed is often not mentioned in direct commands, requests
etc.: He said, 'Go away!' When reporting such commands/requests therefore we must add a noun
or pronoun:
He told me/him/her/us/them/the children to go away. ask diners from the other verbs in A in that it can also be followed directly by the infinitive of certain verbs, e.g. see, speak to, talk to:
He said. 'Could I see Tom, please?' =
He asked to see Tom. (See also 283.) But this is quite different from the ask + object + infinitive type of request.
Both ask and beg can be followed by the passive infinitive:
'Do. please, send me to a warm climate,' he asked/begged = He asked/begged us to send him to a warm climate or He asked/begged to be sent to a warm climate.
Examples of indirect commands, requests, advice Note that direct commands are usually expressed by the imperative, but that requests and advice can be expressed in a variety of ways (see 283-7):
'If I were you, I'd slop taking tranquillizers,' I said =
I advised him to stop taking tranquillizers. (See 311 D.)
'Why don't you take off your coat?'he said =
He advised me to take off my coat. (See also 287.)
' Would/Could you show me your passport, please?' he said =
He asked me to show him my passport or
He asked me for/He asked to see my passport.
'You might post some letters for me,' said my boss =
My boss asked me to post some letters for him.
'If you 'd just sign the register,' said the receptionist =
The receptionist asked him to sign the register.
'Do sit down.' said my hostess =-
My hostess asked/invited me to sit down.
'Please, please don't take any risks,' said his wife =
His wife begged/implored him not to take any risks.
'Forget all about this you »g man,' said her parents: 'don't see him ' again or answer his letters' =
Her parents ordered her to forget all about the young man and told her not to see him again or answer his letters or
She was ordered to forget all about the young man and forbidden to ._ see him again or answer his tetters, (passive construction)
'Don't forget to order the wine.' said Mrs Pitt =
Mrs Pitt reminded her husband to order the wine.

'Try again,' said Ann's friends encouragingly =
Ann's friends encouraged her to fry again.
'Go on, apply for the job,'said Jack =
Jack urged/encouraged me to apply for the job.
' You had better not leave your car unlocked,' said my friends;
'there's been a lot of stealing from cars' = ' My friends warned me not to leave my car unlocked as there had been a lot of stealing from cars.
will you . . . sentences are normally treated as requests and reported by ask:

'Will all persons not travelling please go ashore,' he said = He asked at! persons not travelling to go ashore. But if a will you sentence is spoken sharply or irritably, and the ' please is omitted, it might be reported by tell or order;
'Will you be quiet!/Be quiet, will you!' he said = He told/ordered us to be quiet.

321 Other ways of expressing indirect commands

A say/tell + subject + be + infinitive:
He said/told me that I was to wait. This is a possible alternative to the tell + infinitive construction, so that:
He said, 'Don't open the door' could be reported
He told me not to open the door or
fie said that I wasn 't to open the door. The be + infinitive construction is particularly useful in the following cases:
1 When the command is introduced by a verb in the present tense:
He says, 'Meet me at the station' = He says that we are to meet him at the station. (He tells us to meet him would be much less likely.)
2 When the command is preceded by a clause (usually of time or condition):
He said, 'If she leaves the house follow her' could be reported He said that if she left the house I was to follow her. He told me to follow her if she left the house would be equally possible here but note that if we use the tell + infinitive construction we must change the order of the sentence so as to put the command first. Sometimes this would result in a rather confusing sentence. For example, the request If you see Ann tell her to ring me would become He told me to tell Ann to ring him if I saw her. Such requests can only be reported by the be + infinitive construction:
He said that if I saw Ann I was to tell her to ring him.
B say/tell (+ that) + subject + should
1 say or tell with a should construction normally indicates advice rather than command:
He said, 'If your brakes are bad don't drive so fast' =
He said/told me that if my brakes were bad I shouldn 't drive so fast
or
He advised me not to drive so fast if my brakes were bad. (Note
change of order here, as with tell + infinitive above.)
2 Advice can also be expressed by advise, recommend and urge + that. . . should. This is particularly useful in the passive (see 302 E):
'! advise cancelling the meeting.' he said s He advised that the meeting should be cancelled.
3 command and order can also be used with should or a passive infinitive;
'Evacuate the area!' ordered the superintendent =
The superintendent ordered that everyone should lease the area or
ordered that the area should be evacuated or
ordered the area to be evacuated.
4 Note that when an indirect command is expressed by an object + infinitive construction, as in 320, there is normally the idea that the
person who is to obey the command is addressed directly. But when the command is expressed by the be + infinitive construction (A above) or by a should construction (B3 above) the recipient of the command need not necessarily be addressed directly. The command may be conveyed to him by a third person.

322 let's, let us, let him/them in indirect speech

let's
let's usually expresses a suggestion and is reported by suggest in

indirect speech:
He said, 'Let's leave the case at the station'
would be reported:
He suggested leaving the case at the station or He suggested that they/we should leave the case at the station.
(See 289 for constructions with suggest.) He said, 'Let's stop now and finish it later'
would be reported:
He suggested stopping then and finishing it later or He suggested that they/we should stop then and finish it later.
Similarly in the negative:
He said, 'Let's not say anything about it till we hear the facts' = He suggested not saying anything/saying nothing about it till they heard the facts or He suggested that they shouldn 't say anything till they heard the facts.
But let's not used alone in answer to an affirmative suggestion is often
reported by some phrase such as opposed the idea/was against
it/objected. So that we could report:
'Let's sell the house,' said Tom. 'Lei's not,' said Ann by Tom suggested selling the house hut Ann was against it.
(For other suggestion forms, see 289.) ;. let's/let us sometimes expresses a call to action. It is then usually
reported by urge/advise + object + infinitive (see also 320):
The strike leader said, 'Let's show the bosses that we are united' = The strike leader urged the workers to show the bosses that they were united.

323 let him/them

In theory let him/them expresses a command. But very often the speaker has no authority over the person who is to obey the command;
7('s not my business,' said the postman. 'Let the government do
something about it.'
Here, the speaker is not issuing a command but expressing an obligation. Sentences of this type are therefore normally reported by ought/should:
He said that if wasn 't his business and that the government ought
to/should do something about it.
2 Sometimes, however, let him/them does express a command. It is then usually reported by say + be + infinitive (see 321):
'Let the boys clear up this mess,' said the headmaster -= The headmaster said that the boys were to clear up the mess. 'Let the guards'be armed,' he ordered = He ordered that the guards should be armed.
3 Sometimes let him/them is more a suggestion than a command. In such cases it is usually reported by suggest, or say + should (see 289):
She said, 'Let them go to their consul. He 'll be able to help them' = She suggested their/them going to their consul etc. or She suggested that they should go to their consul or She said that they should go to their consul.
4 let him/them can also indicate the speaker's indifference:
'The neighbours will complain,' said Ann.
'Let them (complain),' said Tom = Tom expressed indifference or
Tom said he didn't mind (if they complained).
C let there be
Here the speaker could be ordering, advising, urging or begging:
'Let there be no reprisals,' said the widow of the murdered man = The widow urged/begged that there should be no reprisals.
D let is also an ordinary verb meaning allow/permit:
'Let him come with us, mother; I'll take care of him,' I said =
I asked my mother to let him come with us and promised to take care
of him.

323 Exclamations and yes and no

A Exclamations usually become statements in indirect speech. The exclamation mark disappears.
1 Exclamations beginning What <a). . . or How ... can be reported
(a) by exclaim/say that:
He said, 'What a dreadful idea!' or 'How dreadful." = He exclaimed that it was a dreadful idea/was dreadful
or (b) by give an exclamation of delight/disgust/horror/relief/
surprise etc-
Alternatively, if the exclamation is followed by an action we can use the
construction (c) with an exclamation of delight/disgust etc. +
he/she etc. + verb.
2 Other types of exclamation, such as Good! Marvellous! Splendid! Heavens! Oh! Ugh! etc. can be reported as in (b) or (c) above:
'Good!' he exclaimed =
He gave an exclamation of pleasure/satisfaction.
' Ugh!' she exclaimed, and turned the programme off =
With an exclamation of disgust she turned the programme off.

Note also:
He said, 'Thank you!' = He thanked me. ;' He said. 'Curse this fog." = He cursed the fog.
He said. 'Good luck!' = He wished me luck.
He said. 'Happy Christmas'.' = He wished me a happy Christmas.
He said, 'Congratulations[9]' = He congratulated me.
He said, 'Liar!' = He called me a liar.
He said, 'Damn!'etc. = He swore.
The notice said: WELCOME TO WALES.' = '• The notice welcomed visitors to Wales.
ri
yes and no are expressed in indirect speech by subject + appropriate ' auxiliary verb:
He said, 'Can you swim?'and I said'No' = He asked (me) if I could swim and I said I couldn't.
Hesaid, 'Will you have time to do it?' and I said 'Yes' = He asked if I would have time to do it and I said that I would.

324 Indirect speech: mixed types

Direct speech may consist of statement + question, question + command, command + statement, or all three together.
Normally each requires its own introductory verb:
'I don't know the way. Do you?' he asked .= ; He said he didn't know the way and asked her if she did/if she knew it.
'Someone's coming,' he said. 'Get behind the screen' =
He said that someone was coming and told me to get behind the
screen.
'I'm going shopping. Can I get you anything?' she said = " She said she was going shopping and asked if she could get me ; anything.
'I can hardly hear the radio,' he said. 'Could you turn it up?' =
He said he could hardly hear the radio and asked her to turn it up.
But sometimes, when the iast clause is a statement which helps to explain the first, we can use as instead of a second introductory verb:
'You'd better wear a coat. it's very cold out.'he said =. He advised me to wear a coat as it was very cold out. 'You'd better not walk across the park alone. People have been
mugged there,' he said =
He warned her not to walk across the park alone as people had been mugged there.
Sometimes the second introductory verb can be a participle:
'Please, please, don't drink too much! Remember thatyou'U have to drive home,' she said =
She begged him not to drink too much, reminding him that he 'd have to drive home.

'Let's shop on Friday. The supermarket will be very crowded on Saturday,' she said =
She suggested shopping on Friday, pointing out that the supermarket would be very crowded on Saturday. (as could be used in both these examples.)

325 must and needn't

A must used for deductions, permanent commands/prohibitions and to express intention remains unchanged. (For must, expressing advice, see 287 A.)

1 Deductions:

She said, 'I'm always running into him; he must live near here!' a She said that. . . he must live in the area.

2 Permanent command:

He said, 'This door must be kept locked' =-He said that the door must be kept locked.

3 must used casually to express intention:

He said, ' We must have a party to celebrate this' = He said that they must have a party to celebrate it.

B must used for obligation can remain unchanged. Alternatively it can be reported by would have to or had to.

1 I/we must reported by would have to

would have to is used when the obligation depends on some future action, or when the fulfilment of the obligation appears remote or uncertain, i.e. when must is clearly replaceable by will have to:

'If the floods get worse we must (will have to) leave the house,' he said =

If e said that if the floods got worse they would have to leave the house.

'When it stops snowing we must start digging ourselves out,' I said =

I said that when it stopped snowing we would have to start digging ourselves out.

'We must mend the roof properly next year,' he said =

He said that they would have to mend the roof properly the following year.

7 have just received a letter,' he said. 'I must go home' =

He said that he had just received a letter and would have to go home-

(But had to would be more usual here if he went at once, i.e. had to'would imply that he went at once.)

2 I/we must reported by had to

had to is the usual form for obligations where times for fulfilment have been fixed, or plans made, or when the obligation is fulfilled fairly promptly, or at least by the time the speech is reported:

He said, 'I must wash my hands' (and presumably did so) =

He said that he had to wash his hands.

Tom said, 'I must be there by nine tomorrow' = { Tom said that he had to be there by nine the next day. ^would have to would be possible here also but would imply that the ^obligation was self-imposed and that no outside authority was involved, ; had to could express either an outside authority (i.e. that someone had ; told him to be there) or a self-imposed obligation. HAH difficulties about had to/would have to can of course be avoided ,:jby keeping must unchanged. In both the above examples must could "'have been used instead of had to/would have to.

you/he/they must is reported similarly:

He said. 'You must start at once' =

He said that she must/had to/would have to start at once. But note that would have to removes the idea of the speaker's authority:

Tom said. 'I/you want to stay on here you must work harder' =

Twn said that if she wanted to stay on she must/would have to work harder.

must implies that Tom himself insists on her working harder, would have to merely implies that this will be necessary.

must I/you/he? can change similarly but as must in the interrogative usually concerns the present or immediate future it usually becomes had to:

'Must you go so soon?' I said = I asked him if he had to go so soon.

gfaust not

must not usually remains unchanged, you/he must not remains

.pichanged or is expressed as a negative command (see 320-1):

He said, 'You mustn't tell anyone' = f:- He said that she mustn 't ell/wasn 't to tell anyone or

He told her not to tell anyone. ',,

needn't

needn't can remain unchanged and usually does. Alternatively it can i,change to didn't have to/wouldn't have to just as must changes to

•had to/would have to:

He said. 'You needn't wait' = He said that I needn't wait.

I said, 'If you can lend me the money I needn 't go to the bank = i; / said that if he could lend me the money I needn 't/wouldn 't have to

go to the bank.

He said, '1 needn't be in the office till ten tomorrow morning' •=

He said that he needn't/didn't have to be in the office till ten the next ! morning.

"need I/you/he? behaves exactly in the same ways as must I/you/he? ; i.e. it normally becomes had to:

'Need I finish my pudding?' asked the small boy = ^ The small boy asked if he had to finish his pudding.

32 Conjunctions

326 Co-ordinating conjunctions: and, but, both . . . and, or, either ... or, neither . . . nor, not only . . . but also

These join pairs of nouns/adjectives/adverbs/verbs/phrases/clauses:
He plays squash and rugby.
I make the payments and keep the accounts.
He works quickly and/but accurately.
He is small but strong. She is intelligent but lazy.
We came in first but (we) didn't win the race.
Both men and women were drafted into the army.
Ring Tom or Bill. She doesn 't smoke or drink.
He can't (either) read or write.
You can (either) walk up or take the cable car.
He can neither read nor write.
Not only men but also women were chosen.

327 besides, however, nevertheless, otherwise, so, therefore, still, yet, though

These adverbs/conjunctions can join clauses or sentences and are then often known as 'conjuncts'. But they can also, with the exception of nevertheless and therefore (conjunctions), be used in other ways and sometimes as other parts of speech. Their position will vary according to how they are used-
A besides (preposition) means 'in addition to'. It precedes a noun/pronoun/gerund:
Besides doing the cooking I look after the garden. besides (adverb) means 'in addition'. It usually precedes the clause it introduces, but can follow it:
I can't go now; I'm too busy. Besides, my passport is out of date. moreover could replace besides here in more formal English. anyway or in any case could be used here in more informal English:
Anyway, my passport's out of date.
B however (adverb of degree, see 41) precedes its adjective/adverb:
You couldn't earn much, however hard you worked. however (conjunction) usually means 'but'. It can precede or follow its clause or come after the first word or phrase:
I'll offer it to Tom. However, he may not want it or
He may 'not want it however or Tom, however, may not want it or
If, however, he doesn't want it. . .

' But when two contrasting statements are mentioned, however can
t; mean'but/nevertheless/all the same':
They hadn 't trained hard, but/however/nevertheless/all the same they won or they won, however/nevertheless/all the same, (See also 329.)
.• otherwise (adverb) usually comes after the verb:
It must be used in a well-ventilated room. Used otherwise it could be
harmful. otherwise (conjunction) means 'if not/or else':
We must be early; otherwise we won't get a seat. or could also be used here in colloquial English;
We must be early or (else) see won't get a seat.
so (adverb of degree) precedes its adjective/adverb:
I was so hot that. . . They ran so fast that. . . so (conjunction) precedes its clause:
Our cases were heavy, so we look a taxi.
therefore (conjunction) can be used instead of so in formal English. It can come at the beginning of the clause or after the first word or phrase; or before the main verb:
There is fog at Heathrow; the plane, therefore, has been diverted/the plane has therefore been diverted/therefore the plane has been diverted.
••• still and yet can be adverbs of time (see 37):
The children are still up. They haven't had supper yet. '•' still and yet (conjunctions) come at the beginning of the clauses they introduce.

still (conjunction) means 'admitting that/nevertheless'. yet (conjunction) means 'in spite of that/all the same/nevertheless'. You aren 't rich; still, you could do something to help him. They are ugly and expensive; yet people buy them.
though/although normally introduce clauses of concession (see 340):
Though/Although they're expensive, people buy them. though (but not although) can also be used to link two main clauses. though used in this way means 'but' or 'yet' and is placed sometimes at the beginning but more often at the end of its clause:
He says he 'II pay, though I don't think he will or
He says he 'II pay; I don 'f think he will, though.

328 Subordinating conjunctions: **if, that, though/although, unless, when** etc.

Subordinating conjunctions introduce subordinate adverb or noun clauses and are dealt with in the chapters on the different types of clause.

See chapter 21 for conditional clauses, chapter 33 for purpose clauses
chapter 34 for adverb clauses of reason, result, concession, comparison
and time, and chapter 35 for noun clauses.
Some conjunctions have more than one meaning and may introduce
more than one type of clause.
Pairs and groups of conjunctions which are sometimes confused with
each other or with other parts of speech are dealt with below.
329 though/although and in spite of (preposition phrase), despite (preposition)
Two opposing or contrasting statements, such as He had no qualifications and He got the job, could be combined as follows:
A With but, however or nevertheless as shown in 327 above:
He had no qualifications but he got the job.
He had no qualifications; however he got the Job/he got the job,
however.
He had no qualifications; nevertheless he got the job.
B With though/although:
He got the job although he had no qualifications. Although he had no qualifications he got the job.
C With in spite of/despite + noun/pronoun/gerund:
In spite of'having no qualifications he got the job. He got the job in
spite of having no qualifications.
despite = in spite of. It is chiefly used in newspapers and in formal English:
Despite the severe weather conditions all the cars completed the
course.
D Note that though/although requires subject + verb:
Although it was windy . . .
and that in spite of/despite requires noun/pronoun or gerund:
In spite a/the wind . . .
Some more examples:
Although it smelt horrible . . . = In spite of the horrible smell. . . Although it was dangerous . . . = In spite of the danger . . . Though he was inexperienced . . . = In spite of his inexperience/his being inexperienced . . .

330 **for** and **because**

These conjunctions have nearly the same meaning and very often either can be used. It is, however, safer to use **because**, as a clause introduced by **for** (which we will call a 'for-clause') has a more restricted use than a clause introduced by **because**:

1 A for-clause cannot precede the verb which it explains:
Because it was wet he took a taxi. (for is not possible.)

2 A for-clause cannot be preceded by not, but or any conjunction:
He stole, not because he wanted the money but because he liked stealing. (for not possible)

3 A for-clause cannot be used in answer to a question:
Why did you do it? ~ I did it because I was angry. (for not possible)

4 A for-clause cannot be a mere repetition of what has been already stated, but always includes some new piece of information:

He spoke in French. She was angry because he had spoken in French, (for is not possible.) But She was angry, for she didn 't know French. (Here for is correct; because is also possible.)

The reason for these restrictions is that a for-clause does not tell us why a certain action was performed, buE merely presents a piece of additional information which helps to explain it. Some examples of for-clauses:

The days were- short, for it was now December. He took the food eagerly, for he had eaten nothing since dawn. When I saw her in the river I was frightened- For at that point the currents were dangerous.

In speech a short pause is usually made before a for-clause and in written English this place is usually marked by a comma, and sometimes, as in the last example above, by a full stop. because could be used in the above sentences also, though for is better.

331 **when, while, as** used to express time

A **when** is used, with simple tenses:

1 When one action occurs at the same time as another or in the span of another:

When it is wet the buses are crowded.

When we lived in town we often went to the theatre.

2 When one action follows another:

When she pressed the button the lift stopped.

B **as** is used:

When the second action occurs before the first is finished:

As / left the house I remembered the key.

This implies that I remembered the key before I had completed the action of leaving the house; I was probabiy still in the doorway. *While I was leaving* would have the same meaning here, but *When I left* would give the impression that the act of leaving was complete and the door shut behind me.

2 For parallel actions: *He sang as he worked.*

3 For parallel development:

As the sun rose the fog dispersed.

As it grew darker if became colder = The darker it grew, the colder it became.

As she came to know him better she relied on him more.

As he became more competent he was given more interesting work.

If we used **when** here we would lose all idea of simultaneous progression or development.

4 To mean **while** (= during the time that):

As he stood there he saw two men enter the bar.

But there is no particular advantage in using **as** here, and **while** is safer.

332 as meaning when/while or because/since

A Restricted use of **as** (= **when/while**)

as here is chiefly used with verbs indicating action or development. It is not normally used with the type of verb listed in 168, except when there is an idea of development, as in B3 above. Nor is it normally used with verbs such as *live, stay, remain*.

B as used with the above verbs/types of verb normally means because/since;

As he was tired . . . = Because he was tired . . .

As he knew her well. . . = Because he knew her well. . .

As it contains alcohol. . . = Since/Because it contains alcohol. . .

As he lives near here . . . = Since/Because he lives . . .

C With most verbs, **as** can be used with either meaning:

As/While he shaved he thought about the coming interview.

As/Because he shaved with a blunt razor he didn't make a very good job of it.

If in doubt here, students should use **while** or **because**.

D **as** + noun can mean either **when/while** or **because/since**:

As a student he had known great poverty = When he was a student he had known great poverty.
As a student he gets/got in for half price = Because he is/was a student he gets/got in . . .
As a married man, he has to think of his family = Because/Since he is a married man . . .

as meaning **when/while** here is usually followed by a perfect tense.
as meaning **because/since** can be followed by any tense.
as, when, while used to mean **although, but, seeing that**
as can mean **though/although** but only in the combination adjective + **as** + subject + **to be/to seem/to appear**:

Tired as he was he offered to carry her = Though he was tired he offered to carry her.
Strong as he was, he couldn't lift it.

while can mean **but** and is used to emphasize a contrast:

'At sea' means 'on a ship', while 'at the sea' means 'at the seaside'.
Some people waste food while others haven't enough.

while can also mean **although** and is then usually placed at the beginning of a sentence:

While I sympathize with your point of view I cannot accept it.

when can mean seeing **that/although**. It is therefore very similar to **while**, but is chiefly used to introduce a statement which makes another action seem unreasonable. It is often, though not necessarily, used with a question:

How can you expect your children to be truthful when you yourself tell lies?
It's not fair to expect her to do all the cooking when she has had no training or experience.

Do not confuse **when** and **if**
When he comes implies that we are sure he will come. *If he comes* implies that we don't know whether he will come or not. (For **if** in conditional sentences, see chapter 21.)

33 Purpose

334 Purpose is normally expressed by the infinitive

Purpose can be expressed by:
A The infinitive alone:
He went to France to learn French. They stopped to ask the way. When there is a personal object of the main verb, the infinitive may refer to this and not to the subject:
He sen! Tom to the shop Co buy bread. (Tom was to buy the bread.)
E in order or so as + infinitive
in order + infinitive can imply either that the subject wants to perform the action or that he wants it to happen.
so as + infinitive implies only that the subject wants the action to happen, in order is, therefore, the more generally useful,
in order or so as are used:
1 With a negative infinitive to express a negative purpose:
He left his gun outside in order/so as not to frighten us.
2 With to be and to have:
She left work early in order/so as to be at home when he arrived. She gave up work in order/so as to have more time with the children.
3 When the purpose is less immediate:
He is studying mathematics in order/so as to qualify/or a better job. She learnt typing in order to help her husband with his work.
4 Sometimes in longer sentences, to emphasize that the infinitive indicates purpose:
He was accused of misrepresenting the facts in order/so as to make the scheme seem feasible.
He took much more trouble over the figures than he usually did in order/so as to show his new boss what a careful worker he was. (But in order/so as is not essential and is often omitted.) When the infinitive of purpose precedes the main verb, in order/so as may be placed first:
In order/So as to show his boss what a careful worker he was, he took extra trouble over the figures. (But here also in order/so as may be omitted.)
5 When there is a personal object but we want the infinitive to refer unambiguously to the subject:
He sent his sons to a boarding school in order/so as to have some peace. (He, not his sons, was going to have some peace.) Compare with:

He sent his sons to a boarding school to team to live in a community.
(Not he but his sons were to learn to live in a community.) But this in order/so as construction is not very common. It is more usual to say:
He sent his sons to a boarding school because he wanted to have some peace.
in order (but not so as), used to emphasize that the subject really had this purpose in mind:
He bought diamonds when he was in Amsterdam! ~ That wasn't surprising. He went to Amsterdam in order to buy diamonds, (not for any other purpose)
We could also, however, express^this idea by stressing the first verb and omitting in order: He 'went to Amsterdam to buy diamonds.
Infinitive + noun + preposition:
/ want a case to keep my records in.
I need a corkscrew to open this bottle with. Note that here we are talking about a particular purpose. For a general purpose we use for + gerund:
This is a case for keeping records in.
A corkscrew is a tool for opening bottles.

335 Infinitives of purpose after **go** and **come**

It is not normal to use an infinitive of purpose after the imperative or infinitive of go and come. Instead of Go to find Bill we normally say Go and find Bill; and instead of Come to talk to Ann

we say Come and talk to Ann; i.e. instead of an imperative + an infinitive of purpose we use two imperatives Joined by and. And instead of:
I must go to help my mother and I'll come to check the accounts we normally say:
I must go and help my mother and I'll come and check the accounts. i.e. instead of an infinitive + an infinitive of purpose we use two infinitives joined by and (see 246 I).
But when go and come are used as gerunds or in any present or past tense they take the ordinary infinitive of purpose:
I'm thinking of going to look for mushrooms.
I went to help my mother.
I've come to check the accounts.
I didn 't come to talk to Bill; I came to talk to you.

336 Clauses of purpose

Clauses are necessary when the person to whom the purpose refers is different from the subject of the main clause, or when the original subject is stated again:
Ships carry lifeboats so that the crew can escape if the ship sinks. This knife has a cork handle so that if will float if it falls overboard.

A Purpose clauses are usually expressed by so that + will/would or can/could + infinitive. can/could is used here to mean will/would be able to:
They make £10 notes a different size from £5 notes so that blind people can (= wil! be able to) tell the difference between them. They wrote the notices in several languages so that foreign tourists could (= would be able to) understand them. can and will are used when the main verb is in a present, present perfect or future tense; could and would are used when the main verb is in a past tense. See the examples above and also:
/ light/am lighting/have lit/will light the fire so that the house will be warm when they return.
I have given/will give him a key so that he can get into the house whenever he likes.
I pinned the note to his pillow so that he would be sure to see it. There were telephone points every kilometre so that drivers whose cars had broken down would be able to/could summon help. If that is omitted from purpose clauses with can/could, the idea of purpose may disappear. The sentence He took my shoes so that I couldn't leave the house would normally mean 'He took my shoes to prevent my leaving etc.' but He took my shoes, so I couldn 't leave the house would normally mean 'He took my shoes; therefore I wasn't able to leave'.
B Purpose clauses can also be formed by so that/in order that/that + may/might or shall/should + infinitive. These are merely more formal constructions than those shown in A above. There is no difference in meaning.
Note that so that can be followed by will/can/may/shall or their past forms, while in order that or that are limited to may/shall or their past forms.
that used alone is rarely found except in very dramatic speech or writing, or in poetry.
The rules about sequences of tenses are the same as those shown above. The following are very formal:
We carved their names on the stone so that/in order that future generations should/might know what they had done. These men risk their lives so that/in order that we may live more safely.
may in the present tense is much more comman than shall, which is rarely used. In the past tense either might or should can be used. The student should know the above forms but should not normally need to use them, as for all ordinary purposes so that + can/could or will/would should be quite sufficient.
C Negative purpose clauses are made by putting the auxiliary verb (usually will/would or should) into the negative:
He wrote his diary in code so that his wife wouldn 't be able to read it-He changed his name so that his new friends wouldn Vshouidn 't know that he had once been accused of murder.

Criminals usually telephone from public telephone boxes so that the police won't be able to trace the call.
Negative purpose clauses can, however, usually be replaced bv to prevent + noun/pronoun + gerund, or to avoid + gerund-
He dyed his beard so that we shouldn 't recognize him/to prevent us recognizing him/to avoid being recognized, (passive gerund) She always shopped in another village so that she

wouldn 'i meet her own neighbours/to avoid meeting her own neighbours. These infinitive phrases are preferred to negative purpose clauses.

337 **in case** and **lest**

A **in case**

in case + subject + verb can follow a statement or command:

I don't let him climb trees in case he tears his trousers. This first action is usually a preparation for, or a precaution against, the action in the if-clause, which is a possible future action.

in case + present tense normally has the meaning 'because this may happen/because perhaps this will happen' or 'for fear that this may happen'-

in case + past tense normally means 'because this might happen/because perhaps this would happen' or 'for fear that this would happen'.

Both present tense and past tense here can be replaced by **should** + infinitive. **should** used here would express greater improbability, but this construction is not very usual,

B Tenses with **in case**

Main verb
Future
present tense or Present + in case +
„ .. _(^ should + infinitive Present perfect J
Conditional 1 (. ,
past tense or
Past tense + in case +
n . , should + infinitive
Past perfect ;

I'll make a cake in case someone drops in at the weekend.

I carry a spare wheel in case I have/should have a puncture.

I always keep candles in the house in case there is a power cut.

I always kept candies in the house in case there was a power cut. (See also 227.)

lest means 'for fear that' and is followed by should:

He doesn't/didn't dare to leave the house lest someone should recognize him.

lest is rarely found except in formal written English.

34 Clauses of reason, result, concession, comparison, time

338 Clauses of reason and result/cause

Except for the type shown in A2 and A3 below, both these clauses can be introduced by as or because. But as is safer for clauses of reason (see A below) and because is safer for clauses of result/cause (see B).

A Clauses of reason

1 Introduced by as/because/since;

We camped there as/because/since it was too dark to go on. As/Because/Since it was too dark to go on, we camped there.

2 'in view of the fact that' can be expressed by as/since/seeing that, but not because:

As/Since/Seeing that you are here, you may as well give me a hand. As/Since/Seeing that Tom knows French, he 'd better do the talking.

3 Where as/since/seeing that refers to a statement previously made or understood, it is replaceable by if:

As/Since/Seeing that/If you don't like Bill, why did you invite him? Note the use of if so:

I hope Bill won't come. ~ Ifso (= If you hope he won't come), why did you invite him? For if + so/not, see 347.

B Clauses of result/cause (see also 339) are introduced by because or as:

The fuse blew because we had overloaded the circuit.

He was angry because we were late.

As it/rose hard that night there was ice everywhere next day.

As the soup was very salty we were thirsty afterwards.

C These combinations could also be expressed by two main clauses Joined by so:

It was too dark to go on, so we camped there.

You are here, so you may as well give me a hand.

It froze hard that night, so there was ice everywhere next day.

therefore can also be used. but is normal only in fairly formal sentences:

The Finnish delegate has not yet arrived. We are therefore postponing/We have therefore decided to postpone/Therefore we are postponing the meeting. (Notice possible positions of therefore.)

339 Clauses of result with **such/so . . . that**

A **such** is an adjective and is used before an adjective + noun:

They had such a fierce dog that no one dared to go near their house. He spoke for such a long time that people began to fall asleep.

B **so** is an adverb and is used before adverbs and with adjectives which are not followed by their nouns:

The snow fell so fast that our footsteps were soon covered up. His speech went on for so long thai people began to fall asleep. Their dog was so fierce that no one dared come near it.

But such is never used before much and many. so so is used even when much and many are followed by nouns:

There was so much dust that we couldn't see what was happening. So many people complained that they took the programme off.

C Note that such + a + adjective + noun is replaceable by so + adjective + a + noun, so that 'such a good man" is replaceable by 'so good a man'. This is only possible when a noun is preceded by a/an. It is not a very usual form but may be met in literature. Sometimes for emphasis so is placed at the beginning of the sentence. It is then followed by the inverted form of the verb (see 45):

So terrible was the storm that whole roofs were ripped off.

340 Clauses of concession

These are introduced by although, though (see 327, 329), even though, even if, no matter, however (see 85) and sometimes by whatever, as is also possible, but only in the adjective + as + be construction.

Although/Though/Even though/Even if you don't like him you can still be polite.
No matter what you do, don't touch this switch.
However rich people are, they always seem anxious to make more money.
However carefully you drive, you will probably have an accident eventually.
Whatever you do, don't tell him that I told you this.
Patient as he was, he had no intention of waiting for three hours.

(though he was patient) may + infinitive can be used in hypothetical cases:

However frightened you may tie yourself, you must remain

outwardly calm. may can also imply 'I accept the fact that':

But he's your brother! ~ He may be my brother but I don't trust him!

But may used in this way is part of another main clause, not a clause of concession.
should + infinitive can be used after even if just as it can after if in conditional sentences, to express the idea that the action expressed by the infinitive is not very likely to take place;

Even if he should find out he won't do anything about it.

341 Clauses of comparison

A Comparisons with adjectives and finite verbs (see also 20-2);

It's darker today than it was yesterday.
He doesn'I Ray as much tax as we do/as us.
He spends more than he earns.

Note that + adjective, a colloquial form:

Will it cost £1W? ~ No, it won't cost as much as (ail) that. It won't

be (alt) that expensive. (It won't be as expensive as that.) that + adjective is sometimes used colloquially to mean very.

B Comparisons with adverbs and finite verbs (see also 31-4):
He didn't play as well as we expected/as well as you (did). He sings more loudly than anyone I've ever heard/than anyone else (does). You work harder than he does/than him/than I did at your age.

C Comparisons with adjectives and infinitives or gerunds
Often either can be used, but the infinitive is more usual for a particular action, and gerunds are more usual for genera! statements (see also E below):

It's sometimes as cheap to buy a new one as (it is) (to) repair the old one.
Buying a new one is sometimes as cheap as repairing the old one.
He found that lying on She beach was just as boring as sitting in his office or
He found lying on the beach just as boring as sitting etc. (The infinitive would be less usual here.)
He thinks it (is) safer to drive himself than (to) let me drive.
He thinks that driving himself is safer than letting me drive.
It will soon be more difficult to get a visa than it is now.
Getting a visa will soon be more difficult than it is now.

D In comparisons of the type shown in C above, if we have an infinitive before as/than we will usually have an infinitive (not a gerund) after it, Similarly, if we have a gerund before as/than we will normally have a gerund (not an infinitive) after it. See examples above, But if we have a finite verb + this/that/which before as/than we can have a gerund after it. An infinitive is possible but would be much less usual:

I'll deliver it by hand; this will be cheaper than posting it.
He cleaned his shoes, which was better than doing nothing.

E Infinitives are used with would rather/sooner (see 297-8):
Most people would rather work than starve. I would resign rather than accept him as a partner.

342 Time clauses

A These are introduced by conjunctions of time such as:

after *immediately* *till/until*
as *no sooner . . . than* *when*
as soon as *since* *whenever*
before *the sooner* *while*
hardly . . . when

They can also be introduced by the minute, the moment.
For examples with when, as, while, see 331-3.
For examples with before, see 195 B.

B Remember that we do not use a future form, or a conditional tense, in a time clause.
Each of the following future forms becomes a present tense when we put it in a time clause-
Future simple:
You 'II be back soon. I'll stay till then. = I'll stay till you get back.
be going to:
The parachutist is going to jump. Soon after he jumps his parachute
will open.
The present continuous, used as a future form, and the future continuous:
He's arriving/He 'II be arriving at six but
When he arrives he'll tell us all about the match.
Before he arrives I'll give the children their tea. But the continuous tense can, of course, be used in time clauses when it indicates a continuous action:
Peter and John will be playing/are playing/are going to play tennis
tonight. While they are playing (during this time) we 'II go to the
beach.
The future perfect changes to the present perfect, and the future perfect continuous changes to the present perfect continuous:
I'll have finished in the bathroom in a few minutes.
The moment/As soon as I have finished I'll give you a call.
A conditional tense changes to a past tense:
We knew that he would arrive/would be arriving about six. We knew that till he arrived nothing would be done.
But when when introduces a noun clause it can be followed by a future or conditional tense:
He said. 'When will the train get in?' =
He asked when the train would get in.

C Clauses with since (see also 187-8)
In clauses since is usually followed by perfect tenses (but see 188);
They 've moved house twice since they got married or Since they got married, they 've moved house twice. He said he'd lived in a tent since his house burnt down. It's ages since I sailed/have sailed a boat. I haven't sailed a boat since I left college.

D Clauses with **after**
In clauses **after** is often followed by perfect tenses:

After/When he had rung off I remembered. . .
After/When you 've finished with it, hang it up.

E **hardly/scarcely . . . when, no sooner . . . than** (see also 45) The performance had hardly begun when the lights went out or Hardly had the performance begun when the lights went out.
scarcely could replace hardly here but is less usual,
He had no sooner drunk the coffee than he began to feel drowsy or No sooner had he drunk the coffee than he began to feel drowsy. He no sooner earns any money than he spends it or Immediately he earns any money he spends it. (more colloquial)
Note also the sooner . . . the sooner:
The sooner we start, the sooner we'll be there.

35 Noun clauses

Noun clauses are very often introduced by **that** and are therefore often called **that**-clauses. However, not all noun clauses are **that**-clauses.

343 Noun clauses (that-clauses) as subject of a sentence

A Sentences with noun clause subjects usually begin with it (see 67 D):

It is disappointing that Tom can't come.

'*that Tom can't come'* is the subject.

B The usual construction is it + be/seem + adjective + noun clause (see *26-7):*

It's splendid that you passed your exam.

It's strange that there are no lights on.

Some adjectives require or can take **that . . . should** (see 236):

It is essential that everybody knows/should know what to do.

An alternative construction is **it + be/seem + a** + noun + noun clause. Nouns that can be used here include **mercy, miracle, nuisance, pity, shame, relief, wonder, a good thing** is also possible.

It's a great pity (that) they didn't get married.
It's a wonder (that) you weren't killed.
It's a good thing (thai) you were insured.

I that-clauses after certain adjectives/participles

The construction here is subject + be + adjective/past participle + noun clause:

I am delighted that you passed your exam.

This construction can be used with

(a) adjectives expressing emotion: **glad, pleased, relieved, sorry** (see 26 P)

(b) adjectives/participles expressing anxiety, confidence etc.: **afraid, anxious, aware, certain, confident, conscious, convinced** (see 27). **anxious** requires **that . . . should**.

I'm afraid that I can't come till next week.

Are you certain that this is the right road?

345 **that**-clauses after certain nouns

A **that**-clause can be placed after a large number of abstract nouns. The most useful of these are: **allegation, announcement, belief, discovery, fact, fear, guarantee, hope, knowledge, promise, proposal, report, rumour, suggestion, suspicion, proposal** and **suggestion** require **that** . . . should,

The announcement that a new airport was to be built nearby aroused immediate opposition.

The proposal/suggestion that shops should open on Sundays led to a heated discussion.

A report that the area was dangerous was ignored by the residents.

346 Noun clauses as objects of verbs

A that-clauses are possible after a large number of verbs. Some of the most useful are given below.

acknowledge	*find (wh)*	*recommend*
admit	*forget (wh)*	*remark*
advise	*guarantee*	*remember (wh)*
agree	*happen*	*remind*
allege	*hear (wh)*	*request*
announce	*hope*	*resolve*
appear	*imagine (wh)*	*reveal (wh)*
arrange (wh)	*imply*	*say (wh)*
ask (wh)	*indicate (wh)*	*see (wh)*
assume	*inform*	*seem*
assure	*insist*	*show (wh)*

beg	*know (wh)*	*state (wh)*
believe (wh)	*leam*	*stipulate*
command	*make out (= state)*	*suggest (wh)*
confess	*mean*	*suppose*
consider (wh)	*notice (wh)*	*teach*
declare	*observe*	*tell (wh)*
decide (wh)	*occur to + object*	*think (wh)*
demand	*order*	*threaten*
demonstrate	*perceive*	*turn out*
determine	*presume*	*understand (wh)*
discover	*pretend*	*urge*
doubt	*promise*	*vow*
estimate (wh)	*propose*	*warn*
expect	*prove (wh)*	*wish*
fear	*realize (wh)*	*wonder (wh)*
feel	*recognize*	

and other verbs of communication, e.g. complain, deny, explain etc. (see 316 C).
wh: see E below.

Examples
They alleged/made out that they had been unjustly dismissed. He assumes that we agree with him. I can prove that she did it.
Most of the above verbs can also take another construction (see chapters 23-6). Note however that a verb + that-ctause does not necessarily have the same meaning as the same verb + infinitive/gerund/present participle: He saw her answering the letters means 'He watched her doing this' but He saw that she answered the letters could mean either 'He noticed that she did this' or 'He made sure by supervision that she did this'.

C **appear, happen, occur, seem, turn out** require **it** as subject:
It appears/seems that we have come on the wrong day.
If occurred to me that he might be lying.
It turned out that nobody remembered the address.

D that + subject + should can be used after agree, arrange, be anxious, beg, command, decide, demand, determine, be determined, order, resolve and urge instead of an infinitive construction, and after insist and suggest instead of a gerund:
They agreed/decided that a statue should be put up.
He urged that the matter should go to arbitration.
He suggested that a reward should be offered. (See 235, 302 E.)
Verbs in section A marked '(wh)' can also be followed by noun clauses beginning with **wh**-words: **what, when, where, who, why**, or with **how**:
He asked where he was to go.
They'll believe whatever you tell them.
I forget who told me this.
Have you heard how he is getting on?
I can't think why he left his wife.
I wonder when he will pay me back.

347 **so** and **not** representing a **that**-clause

A After **believe, expect, suppose, think** and after **it appears/seems**:
Will Tom be at the party? -- I expect so/suppose so/think so = I think he will.
For the negative we use:
A negative verb with so:
Will the scheme be a success? ~ I don't believe so/expect so/suppose so/think so.
Are they making good progress? ~ It doesn't seem so.

2 Or an affirmative verb with not:
It won't take long, will it? ~ No, I suppose not or
I don't suppose so.
The plane didn't land in Calcutta, did it? ~ I believe not or
I don't believe so.

B **so** and **not** can be used similarly after hope and be afraid (= be sorry to say):

Is Peter coming with us? ~ I hope so.

Will you have to Ray duly on this? ~ I'm afraid so.

The negative here is made with an affirmative verb + not:

Have you got a work permit? ~ I'm afraid not.

C **so** and **not** can be used after say and tell + object:

How do you know there is going to be a demonstration? ~ Jack said so/Jack told me so.

I told you so! can mean 'I told you that this was the case/that this would happen'. This usually annoys the person addressed. For tell the only negative form is negative verb + so:

Tom didn't tell me so.

For say there are two negative forms, but the meaning is not the same:

Tom didn't say so = Tom didn't say that there would be a demonstration.

Tom said not = Tom said there wouldn't be a demonstration.

D **if + so/not**

so/not after **if** can replace a previously mentioned/understood subject + verb:

Will you be staying another night? If so (= If you are), we can give you a better room. If not (= If you aren't), could you be out of your room by 12:00?

if so/not here usually represents a clause of condition as shown above, but for if so, see also 338 A.

36 Numerals, dates, and weights and measures

348 Cardinal numbers (adjectives and pronouns)

1 one	*11 eleven*	*21 twenty-one*	*31 thirty-one etc.*
2 two	*12 twelve*	*22 twenty-two*	*40 forty*
3 three	*13 thirteen*	*23 twenty-three*	*50 fifty*
4 four	*14 fourteen*	*24 twenty-four*	*60 sixty*
5 five	*15 fifteen*	*25 twenty-five*	*70 seventy*
6 six	*16 sixteen*	*26 twenty-six*	*80 eighty*
7 sewn	*17 seventeen*	*27 twenty-seven*	*90 ninety*
8 eight	*18 eighteen*	*28 twenty-eight*	*100 a hundred*
9 nine	*19 nineteen*	*29 twenty-nine*	*1,000 a thousand*
10 ten	*20 twenty*	*30 thirty*	*1,000,000 a million*

400 four hundred *140 a/one hundred and forty* *1,006 a/one thousand and six*
5,000 five thousand *260,127 two hundred and sixty thousand, one hundred and twenty-seven*

349 Points to notice about cardinal numbers

A When writing in words, or reading, a number composed of three or more figures we place and before the word denoting tens or units:
713 seven hundred and thirteen
5,102 five thousand, one hundred and two but
6,100 six thousand, one hundred (no tens or units) and is used similarly with hundreds of thousands:
320,410 three hundred and twenty thousand, four hundred and ten and hundreds of millions:
303.000,000 three hundred and three million

B **a** is more usual than **one** before **hundred, thousand, million** etc, when these numbers stand alone or begin an expression:
100 a hundred 1,000 a thousand
100,000 a hundred thousand
We can also say a hundred and one, a hundred and two etc. up to a hundred and ninety-nine and a thousand and one etc. up to a thousand and ninety-nine. Otherwise we use one, not a (see above). So:
1,040 a/one thousand and forty but
1,140 one thousand, one hundred and forty

C The words hundred, thousand, million and dozen. when used of a definite number, are never made plural:
six hundred men ten thousand pounds two dozen eggs If however, these words are used loosely, merely to convey the idea of a large number, they must be made plural:
hundreds of people thousands of birds dozens of times Note also that in this case the preposition of is placed after hundreds, thousands etc.
of is not used with definite numbers except before the/them/ these/those or possessives:
so: of the blue ones ten of these four of Tom's brothers

D Numbers composed of four or more figures are divided into groups of three as shown above. Decimals are indicated by '•', which is read 'point':
10.92 ten point nine two
A zero after a decimal point is usually read 'nought':
8.04 eight point nought four
But 'o' and 'zero' would also be possible.

350 Ordinal numbers (adjectives and pronouns)

first	*eleventh*	*twenty-first*	*thirty-first etc.*
second	*twelfth*	*twenty-second*	*fortieth*
third	*thirteenth*	*twenty-third*	*fiftieth*
fourth	*fourteenth*	*twenty-fourth*	*sixtieth*

fifth	*fifteenth*	*twenty-fifth*	*seventieth*
sixth	*sixteenth*	*twenty-sixth*	*eightieth*
seventh	*seventeenth*	*twenty-seventh*	*ninetieth*
eighth	*eighteenth*	*twenty-eighth*	*hundredth*
ninth	*nineteenth*	*twenty-ninth*	*thousandth*
tenth	*twentieth*	*thirtieth*	*millionth*

When writing in words or reading fractions other than ½ (a half) and ¼ (a quarter), we use a combination of cardinal and ordinal numbers:
1/5 *a/one fifth* 1/10 *a/one tenth* (*a* is more usual than *one*)
3/5 *three fifths* 7/10 *seven tenths*
A whole number + a fraction can be followed directly by a plural noun:
2 ¼ miles == *two and a quarter miles*
½ (*half*) can be followed directly by a noun but other fractions require **of** before a noun:
half a second but a quarter of a second (See also 2 E.)
half + of can also be used, but the of is optional:
Half (of) my earnings go in tax.

351 Points to notice about ordinal numbers

A Notice the irregular spelling of *fifth, eighth, ninth* and *twelfth*.
B When ordinal numbers are expressed in figures the last two letters of the written word must be added (except in dates):

first = 1st	*twenty-first = 21st*
second = 2nd	*forty-second = 42nd*
third = 3rd	*sixty-third = 63rd*
fourth = 4th	*eightieth = 80th*

C In compound ordinal numbers the rule about and is the same as for compound cardinal numbers: 101st = the hundred and first.
The article **the** normally precedes ordinal numbers:
the sixtieth day *the fortieth visitor*
Titles of kings etc. are written in Roman figures:

Charles V James III Elizabeth II

But in spoken English we use the ordinal numbers preceded by the:
Charles the Fifth *James the Third* *Elizabeth the Second*

352 Dates

The days of the week	The months of the year	
Sunday (Sun.)	January (Jan.)	July
Monday (Mm.)	February (Feb.)	August (Aug.)
Tuesday (Tues.)	March (Mar.)	September (Sept.)
Wednesday (Wed.)	April (Apr.)	October (Oct.)
Thursday (Thurs.)	May	November (Nov.)
Friday (Fri.)	June	December (Dec.)
Saturday (Sat.)		

Days and months are always written with capital letters. Dates are expressed by ordinal numbers, so when speaking we say:
March the tenth, July the fourteenth etc. or the tenth of March etc.
They can, however, be written in a variety of ways; e.g. *March the tenth* could be written:
March 10 10 March *10th of March*
March 10th *10th March* *March the 10th*

B The year
When reading or speaking we use the term **hundred** but not **thousand**. The year 1987 would be read as *nineteen hundred and eighty-seven or nineteen eighty-seven*.
Years before the Christian era are followed by the letters BC (= Before Christ) and years dating from the Christian era are occasionally preceded by the letters AD (= Anno Domini, in

the year of the Lord). The former are read in either way: *1500 BC* would be read as *one thousand five hundred BC or fifteen hundred BC*.

353 Weights, length and liquid measure

A Weights

The English weights table is as follows:

IS ounces (oz.) = 1 pound (Ib.)
14 Rounds = 1 stow (st.)
8 stone = 1 hundredweight (cict.)
20 hundredweight = 1 ton
1 pound == 0-454 kilogram (kg) 2-2 pounds = 1 kilogram 2.204-6 tbs = 1 metric tonne

Plurals

ounce, pound and ton can take a in the plural when they are used as nouns, stone and hundredweight do not take s: e.g. we say six Round of sugar or six pounds of sugar, but ten hundredweight of coal has no alternative.

When used in compound adjectives these terms never take a:
a ten-ton lorry kilo or kilogram usually take s in the plural when used as nouns:
two kilos of apples or two kilograms of apples

B Length

The English table of length is as follows:

12 inches (in.) = 1 foot (ft.)
3 feet = 1 yard (yd.)
1,760 yards = 1 mile (m.)
1 inch = 2.54 centimetres (cm)
1 yard = 0.914 metre (m)
1 mile = 1.609 kilometres (km)

Plurals

When there is more than one inch/mite/centimetre we normally use the plural form of these words:
one inch, ten inches one mile, four miles
one centimetre, five centimetres
When there is more than one foot we can use either foot or feet. feet is the more usual when measuring heights. We can say;
six foot tall or six feet tall two foot long or two feet long When used in compound adjectives the above forms never take the plural form: a two-mile walk, a six-inch ruler.

C Liquid measure

2 pints (Rt.) = 1 quart (qt.) *1 pint = 0.568 litre (I)*
4 quarts = 1 gallon (gal.) *1 gallon = 4.55 litres*

D Traditionally British measurements have been made in ounces, inches, pints etc. but there is now a gradual move towards the metric system.

37 Spelling rules

For noun plurals, see also 12. For verb forms, see also 165, 172, 175.

354 Introduction

Vowels are: **a e i o u**
Consonants are: **b c d f g h j k l m n p q r s t v w x y z**
A suffix is a group of letters added to the end of a word:
beauty, beautiful (*ful* is the suffix.)

355 Doubling the consonant

A Words of one syllable having one vowel and ending in a single consonant double the consonant before a suffix beginning with a vowel:
hit + ing = hitting but keep, keeping (two vowels)
knit + ed = knitted help, helped (two consonants)
run + er = runner love, lover (ending in a vowel) qu here is considered as one consonant: quit, quitting. When the final consonant is w, x or y it does not double:
row + ed -= rowed box + ing = boxing

B Two- or three-syllable words ending in a single consonant following a single vowel double the final consonant when the stress falls on the last syllable. (The stressed syllable is in bold type.)
acquit + ed = acquitted but murmur + ed = murmured begin + er -= beginner answer + er = answerer deter + ed == deterred orbit + ing = orbiting recur + ing = recurring focus + ed, however, can be spelt focused orfocussed and bias + ed can be spelt biased or biassed.

C The final consonant of handicap, kidnap, worship is also doubled:
handicap, handicapped worship, worshipped kidnap, kidnapped

D Words ending in 1 following a single vowel or two vowels pronounced separately usually double the 1:
appal, appalled duel, duellist repel, repellent cruel, cruelly model, modelling quarrel, quarrelling dial, dialled refuel, refuelled signal, signalled distil, distiller

356 Omission of a final **e**

A Words ending in e following a consonant drop the e before a suffix beginning with a vowel:
believe + er = believer
love + ing = losing
move + able = movable
But riye and singe keep their final e before ing to avoid confusion with die and sing:
dye, dyeing singe, singeing age keeps its e before ing except in American English:
age, ageing
likable can also be spelt likeable. Words ending in ce or ge sometimes retain the e. See 357.
B A final e is retained before a suffix beginning with a consonant:
engage, engagement fortunate, fortunately
hope. hopeful immediate, immediately
sincere, sincerely But the e m able/ible is dropped in the adverb form:
comfortable, comfortably incredible, incredibly The final e is also dropped in the following words:
argue, argument due, duly
judge, judgement or judgment true, truly
whole, wholly (notice the double 1 here)
C Words ending in ee do not drop an e before a suffix:
agree, agreed, agreeing, agreement foresee, foreseeing, foreseeable

357 Words ending in **ce** and **ge**

A Words ending in **ce** or **ge** retain the e before a suffix beginning with a, o or u:

courage, courageous	*peace, peaceful*
manage, manageable	*replace, replaceable*
outrage, outrageous	*trace, traceable*

This is done to avoid changes in pronunciation, because **c** and **g** are generally pronounced soft before **e** and **i**, but hard before **a, o** or **u**.

B Words ending in **ce** change the **e** to **i** before **ous**:

grace, gracious	*space, spacious*
malice, malicious	*vice, vicious*

358 The suffix **ful**

When **full** is added to a word the second **l** is dropped:

beauty + *full* = *beautiful* (but note adverb form beautifully)

use + *full* = *useful* (but note adverb form usefully)

If the word to which the suffix is added ends in **ll** the second **l** is dropped here also: *skill* + *full* = *skilful*.

Note full + fill = fulfil.

359 Words ending in **y**

Words ending in y following a consonant change the **y** to **i** before any suffix except **ing**:

carry + ed = earned but carry + ing = carrying

happy + !y = happily hurry + ing = hurrying

sunny + er = sunnier y following a vowel does not change:

obey + ed = obeyed play + er = player For plural forms of nouns, see 12.

360 **ie** and **ei**

The normal rule is that i comes before e except after c:

believe, sieve but deceive, receipt There are however the following exceptions:

beige	feint	heir	reign	their
counterfeit	foreign	inveigh	rein	veil
deign	forfeit	inveigle	seize	vein
eiderdown	freight	leisure	skein	weigh
eight	heifer	neigh	sleigh	weight
either	height	neighbour	sleight	weir
feign	heinous	neither	surfeit	weird

361 Hyphens

A Compound words are formed by linking two or more words to make one unit. We can write the compound:

(a) as one word: *bystander, hairdresser, teacup*

(b) as two or more words: *amusement arcade, post office*

(c) with a hyphen: *launching-pad, lay-by, tooth-brush*

It is impossible in most cases to give a firm rule on when a hyphen should be used. When a compound has become familiar through constant use, the hyphen can be omitted: layby, toothbrush. This, however, does not always happen and a native English writer is quite capable of writing toothbrush, tooth brush or tooth-brush at different times.

If the compound is formed of monosyllables, it is more likely to be written as one word. In cases of doubt it is better to omit hyphens or consult a modem dictionary.

B Hyphens are necessary;

(a) when pronunciation or meaning might be unclear without them:

co-operate *re-cover* (= cover again)

(b) when words form a compound in a particular sentence:

a do-it-yourself shop

a go-as-you-please railway ticket

(c) in adjective phrases dealing with age, size, weight and duration of time:

a five-year-old child *a ten-ton vehicle*

a six-foot wall *a five-minute interval*

Note that the compound is not in the plural form: no s. Adverb/participle compounds used as adjectives are commonly hyphenated, especially when there is a danger of misunderstanding:

low-flying aircraft *quick-dissolving sugar*

C Hyphens are used in a temporary way to divide a word at the end of a line. The division must be made at a natural break in the word, i.e. between syllables;

dis-cauraged *look-ing* *inter-val*

A monosyllable should not be divided.

31 Indirect speech

307 Direct and indirect (or reported) speech

There are two ways of relating what a person has said: direct and indirect.

In direct speech we repeat the original speaker's exact words:

He said, 'I have lost my umbrella.'

Remarks thus repeated are placed between inverted commas, and a ' comma or colon is placed immediately before the remark. Direct speech is found in conversations in books, in plays, and in quotations.

In indirect speech we give the exact meaning of a remark or a speech, without necessarily using the speaker's exact words:

He said (that) he had lost his umbrella.

There is no comma after **say** in indirect speech. **that** can usually be omitted after say and tell + object. But it should be kept after other verbs: **complain, explain, object, point out, protest** etc. Indirect speech is normally used when conversation is reported verbally, though direct speech is sometimes employed here to give a more dramatic effect.

When we turn direct speech into indirect, some changes are usually necessary. These are most easily studied by considering statements, questions, and commands separately.

308 Statements in indirect speech: tense changes necessary

A Indirect speech can be introduced by a verb in a present tense: He says that. . . This is usual when we are:

(a) reporting a conversation that is still going on

(b) reading a letter and reporting what it says

(c) reading instructions and reporting them

(d) reporting a statement that someone makes very often, e.g. Tom says that he'll never get married.

When the introductory verb is in a present, present perfect or future tense we can report the direct speech without any change of tense:

PAUL (phoning from the station): I'm trying to get a taxi.

ANN (to Mary, who is standing beside her): Paul says he is trying to get a taxi.

B But indirect speech is usually introduced by a verb in the past tense. Verbs in the direct speech have then to be changed into a corresponding past tense. The changes are shown in the following table. (The that has been omitted in the last five examples.)

Direct speech	Indirect speech
Simple present	Simple past
‘I never ml meat.' he explained	= He explained that he never ate meat.
Present continuous	Past continuous
'I'm waiting/or Ann.' he said	= He said (thai) he was waiting for Ann.
Present perfect	Past perfect

I have found a flat,' he said	= He said (that) he had found a flat.
Present perfect continuous	Past perfect continuous
Hesaid, 'I've been waiting forages'	= He said he had been waiting for ages.
Simple past	Past perfect
I took it home with me,' she said	= She said she had taken it home with her.
Future	Conditional
He said, I will/shall be in Paris m Monday'	= He said he would be in Paris cm Monday.
Future continuous	Conditional continuous
'I will/shall be using the car myself on the 24th,' she said	= She said she'd be using the car herself on the 24th.
But note,	
Conditional	Conditional
I said, 7 would/should like to see it'	= I said I would/should like to see it. (No tense change. See also 227.)

C Note on I/we shall/should

'I/we shall' normally becomes he/she/they would in indirect speech:

I shall be 21 tomorrow,' said Bill = Bill said he would be 21 the following day. But if the sentence is reported by the original speaker, 'I/we shall' can become either I/we should or I/we would, would is the more common.

Similarly 'I/we should' usually becomes he/she/they would in indirect speech:

'If I had the instruction manual I should/would know what to do,'
said Bill =
Bill said that if he had the instructions he would know what to do. But if the sentence is reported by the original speaker 'I/we should' can either remain unchanged or be reported by would- See last example in B above.

309 Past tenses sometimes remain unchanged

A In theory the past tense changes to the past perfect, but in spoken English it is often left unchanged, provided this can be done without causing confusion about the relative times of the actions. For example, He said. 'I loved her' must become He said he had loved her as otherwise there would be a change of meaning. But He said, 'Ann arrived on Monday' could be reported He said Ann arrived/had arrived on Monday.

B The past continuous tense in theory changes to the past perfect continuous but in practice usually remains unchanged except when it refers to a completed action:

She said, 'We were thinking of selling the house but we have decided not to' =
She said that they had been thinking of selling the house but had decided not to. But He said, 'When I saw them they were playing tennis' =
He said that when he saw them they were playing tennis.

C In written English past tenses usually do change to past perfect but there are the following exceptions:

1 Past/Past continuous tenses in time clauses do not normally change:

He said, 'When we were living/lived in Paris . . .' =
He said that when they were living in Paris . . . The main verb of such sentences can either remain unchanged or become the past perfect:
He said, 'When we were living/lived in Paris we often saw Paul' =
fie said that when they were living/lived in Paris they often saw/had often seen Paul.

2 A past tense used to describe a state of affairs which still exists when the speech is reported remains unchanged:

She said, 'I decided not to buy the house because it was on a main road' = She said that she had decided not to buy the house because it was on a main road.

310 Unreal past tenses (subjunctives) in indirect speech

A Unreal past tenses after wish, would rather/sooner and it is time

do not change:

'We wish we didn't have to take exams.' said the children = The children said they wished they didn't have to take exams.

'Bill wants to go alone,' said Ann, 'but I'd rather he went with a group' = Ann said that Bill wanted to go alone but that she 'd rather he went with a group.

'It's time we began planning our holidays,' he said = He said that it was time they began planning their holidays.

B **I/he/she/we/they had better** remains unchanged, **you had better** can remain unchanged or be reported by advise + object + infinitive (see 120):

'The children had better go to bed early,' said Tom = Tom said that the children had better go to bed early.

'You'd better not drink the water,' she said = She advised/warned us not to drink the water.

C Conditional sentences types 2 and 3 remain unchanged (see 229):

'If my children were older I would emigrate,' he said = He said that if his children were older he would emigrate.

311 **might, ought to, should, would, used** to in indirect statements

A might remains unchanged except when used as a request form:

He said, 'Ann might ring today' = He said that Ann might ring (that day).

But 'You might post these for me' he said = He asked me to post them for him. (See 285 for requests.)

B ought to/should for obligation or assumption remains unchanged:

'They ought to/should widen this road,' I said = I said that they ought to/should widen the road. I said,

'I should be back by six' (I assume I will be) = I said I should be back by six.

C But you ought to/you should, if used to express advice rather than obligation, can be reported by advise + object + infinitive, you must can also express advice and be reported similarly.

'You ought to/should/must read the instructions,' said Ann = Ann advised/urged/warned me to read the instructions.

D The advice form 'Ifl were you I should/would . . .' is normally reported by advise + object + infinitive:

'If I were you I'd wait,'I said = I advised him to waif,

E The request form 'I should/would be (very) grateful if you would . . .' is normally reported by ask + object + infinitive:

'I'd be very grateful if you 'd keep me informed,' he said = He asked me to keep him informed.

F **would** in statements doesn't change. But see 284 for **would** in requests etc.

G **used to** doesn't change:

'I know the place well because I used to live here,' he explained = He explained thai he knew the place well because he used to live there.

(For could, see 312; for must, see 325.)

312 could in indirect statements

(For could interrogative, see 283-4.)

A **could** for ability

1 **could** for present ability does not change:

'I can't/couldn't stand on my head.' he said = He said he couldn't stand on his head.

2 **could** for future ability can remain unchanged or be reported by would be able:

He said, 'I could do it tomorrow' = He said he could do it/would be able to do it the next day.

could in type 2 conditional sentences is reported similarly:

'If I had the tools I could mend it,' he said = He said that if he had the tools he could/would be able to mend it. would be able here implies that the supposition may be fulfilled. (Perhaps he'll be able to borrow tools.)

could in type 3 conditional sentences is reported unchanged.

could for past ability can remain unchanged or be reported by had been able:

'I could read when I was three.' she boasted = She boasted that she could/had been able to read when she was three.

B **could** for permission

In type 2 conditional sentences **could** can remain unchanged or be reported by **would be allowed to**:

'If I paid my fine I could walk out of prison today,' he said = He said that if he paid his fine he could/would be allowed to walk etc.

could in the past can remain unchanged or be reported by was/were allowed to or had been allowed to:

He said, 'When I was a boy I could stay up as long as I liked' = He said that when he was a boy he could/was allowed to stay up or He said that as a boy he was/had been allowed etc.

313 Indirect speech: pronoun and adjective

Pronouns and possessive adjectives usually change from first or second to third person except when the speaker is reporting his own words:

He said, 'I've forgotten the combination of my safe' = He said that he had forgotten the combination of his safe.

I said, 'I like my new house' = I said that I liked my new house, (speaker reporting his own words)

Sometimes a noun must be inserted to avoid ambiguity: Tom said. 'He cane in through the window' would not normally be reported Tom said he had come in through the window as this might imply that Tom himself had come in this way; but if we use a noun there can be no confusion:

Tom said that the man/burglar/cat etc, had come in . . .

Pronoun changes may affect the verb:

He says. 'I know her' = He says he knows her.

He says, '! shall be there' = He says that he will be there.

B this and these

this used in time expressions usually becomes that:

He said, 'She is coming this week' =

He said that she was coming that week. Otherwise this and that used as adjectives usually change to the:

He said, 'I bought this pearl/these pearls for my mother' =

He said that he had bought the peart/pearls for his mother. this, these used as pronouns can become it, they/them:

He showed me two bullets. 'I found these embedded in the panelling,'

he said =

He said he had found them embedded in the panelling.

He said, 'We will discuss this tomorrow' = He said that they would discuss it/the waiter the next day. this, these (adjectives or pronouns), used to indicate choice or to distinguish some things from others, can become the one(s) near him etc., or the statement can be reworded:

'I'll have this (one),' he said to me = He said he would have the one near him or

He pointed to/touched/showed me the one he wanted.

314 Expressions of time and place in indirect speech

A Adverbs and adverbial phrases of time change as follows:

Direct	Indirect
today	*that day*
yesterday	*the day before*
the day before yesterday	*two days before*
tomorrow	*the next day/the following day*
the day after tomorrow	*in two days' time*
next week/year etc.	*the following week/year etc.*
last week/year etc.	*the previous week/year etc.*

a year etc. ago	*a year before/the previous year*

'I saw her the day before yesterday,' he said = He said he'd seen her two days before.
'I'll do it tomorrow,' he promised = He promised that he would do it the next day.
'I'm starting the day after tomorrow, mother.' he said = He told his mother that he was starting in two days' time.

She said, 'My father died a year ago' = She said that her father had died a year before/the previous year.

B But if the speech is made and reported on the same day these time changes are not necessary:

At breakfast this morning he said. 'I'll be very busy today' = At breakfast this morning he said that he would be very busy today.

C Logical adjustments are of course necessary if a speech is reported one/two days after it is made. On Monday Jack said to Tom:

I'm leaving the day after tomorrow.

If Tom reports this speech on the next day (Tuesday) he will probably say:

Jack said he was leaving tomorrow.

If he reports it on Wednesday, he will probably say:

Jack said he was leaving today.

D **here** can become **there** but only when it is clear what place is meant:

At the station he said, 'I'll be here again tomorrow' = He said that he 'd be there again the next day.
*Usually **here** has to be replaced by some phrase:*
She said, 'You can sit here, Tom' = She told Tom that he could sit beside her etc. But He said, 'Come here, boys' would normally be reported:

He called the boys.

315 Infinitive and gerund constructions in indirect speech

A **agree/refuse/offer/promise/threaten** + infinitive can sometimes be used instead of say (that):

ANN: Would you wait half an hour? TOM: All right = Tom agreed to wait or Tom said he would wait.
ANN: Would you lend me another £50?
TOM: No. I won't lend you any more money = Tom refused to lend her any more money or Tom said thai he wouldn't lend etc.
PAUL: I'll help you if you like, Ann = Paul offered to help her or
Paul said that he'd help her. (See also shall I?, 318.)
ANN: I'll pay you back next week. Really I will. = Ann promised to pay him back the following week or
Ann said that she would pay him back or
Ann assured him that she would pay him back.
KIDNAPPERS: If you don't pay the ransom at once we'll kill your daughter = The kidnappers threatened to kill his daughter if he didn 't Ray the ransom at once or The kidnappers said that they would kill etc:
(For object + infinitive constructions, see 320.)

B **accuse** . . . **of/admit/apologize for/deny/insist on** + gerund can sometimes be used instead of say (that):

TOM took the money!' might be reported
He accused me of taking the money.
'I stole/didn't steal it' might be reported
I admitted/denied stealing it.
'I'm sorry I'm late,' he said might be reported
He apologized for being late or
He said,he was sorry he was tale.
BILL: Let me pay/or myself.
TOM: Certainly not! I'll pay! might be reported
Tom insisted on paying.

316 **say, tell** and alternative introductory verbs

A say and tell with direct speech

1 say can introduce a statement or follow it:
Tom said, 'I've just heard the news' or 'I've just heard the news,' Tom said. Inversion of say and noun subject is possible when say follows the statement:
'I've just heard the news,' said Tom. say + to + person addressed is possible, but this phrase must follow the direct statement; it cannot introduce it:
'I'm leaving at once,' Tom said to me. Inversion is not possible here.

2 tell requires the person addressed:
Tell me. He told us. I'll tell Tom. except with tell lies/stories/the truth, when the person addressed need not be mentioned:
He told (me) lies. I'll tell (you) a story. tell used with direct speech must be placed after the direct statement:
'I'm leaving at once,' Tom told me.
Inversion is not possible with tell.

B **say** and **tell** with indirect speech

Indirect statements are normally introduced by say, or tell + object. say 4- to + object is possible but much less usual than tell + object:

He said he'd just heard the news.
He told me that he'd just heard the news.

Note also **tell . . . how/about**:

He told us how he had crossed the mountains.
He told us about crossing the mountains.
He told us about his journeys.

(For say and tell with indirect commands, see 320-1.)

Other useful verbs are:

add*	complain*	point out
admit*	deny*	promise*
answer*	explain*	protest*
argue*	grumble*	remark*
assure + object	object*	remind + object
boast*	observe*	reply*

These can be used with direct or indirect speech. With direct speech they follow direct statements;
'It won't cost more,' Tom assured us.
Starred verbs can be inverted, provided the subject is a noun:
'But it will take longer,' Bill objected/objected Bill.
'It'll cost too much,' Jack grumbled/grumbled Jack. They can all introduce indirect statements. that should be placed after the verb:
Tom assured us that it wauldn 't cost more. But Bill objected/pointed out that it would take longer.

D **murmur, mutter, shout, stammer, whisper** can precede or follow direct statements or questions. With noun subjects the verb can be inverted as shown above:
'You're late,' whispered Tom/Tom whispered.
They can introduce indirect statements, that is usually necessary:

Tom whispered that we were late.

There are, of course, a lot of other verbs describing the voice or the tone of voice, e.g. *bark, growl, roar, scream, shriek, snarl, sneer, yell*. But these are more common with direct than indirect speech.

317 Questions in indirect speech

Direct question: *He said, 'Where is she going?'*
Indirect question: *He asked where she was going.*

When we turn direct questions into indirect speech, the following changes are necessary. Tenses, pronouns and possessive adjectives, and adverbs of time and place change as in statements.
The interrogative form of the verb changes to the affirmative form. The question mark (?) is therefore omitted in indirect questions:

He said, 'Where does she live?' = He asked where she lived.

With affirmative verb questions (see 55) this change is obviously not necessary:

'Who lives next door?' he said = He asked who lived next door.

'What happened?' she said = She asked what had happened.

If the introductory verb is .say, it must be changed to avert of inquiry, e.g. ask, inquire, wonder, want to know etc.:

He said, 'Where is the station?' = He asked where the station was.

ask, inquire, wonder can also be used in direct speech. They are then usually placed at the end of the sentence:
'Where is the station?' he inquired.
C ask can be followed by the person addressed (indirect object):
Heasked, 'What have you got in your bag?' =
He asked (me) what I had got in my bag. But inquire, wonder, want to know cannot take an indirect object, so if we wish to report a question where the person addressed is mentioned, we must use ask:
He said. 'Mary, when is the next train?' =
He asked Mary when the next train was. If we use inquire, wonder or want to know we must omit Mary.
D If the direct question begins with a question word (when, where, who, how, why etc.) the question word is repeated in the indirect question:
Hesaid, 'Why didn't you put on the brake?' =
He asked (her) why she hadn 'f put on the brake.
She said, 'What do you want?' =
She asked (them) what they wanted.
E If there is no question word, if or whether must be used:
7s anyone there?' he asked = He asked if/whether anyone was there.
1 Normally we can use either if and whether, if is the more usual:
'Do you know Bill?' he said =
He asked if/whether I knew Bill.
'Did you see the accident?' the policeman asked =
The policeman asked if/whether I had seen the accident.
2 whether can emphasize that a choice has to be made:
'Do you want to go by air or sea?' the travel agent asked = The travel agent asked whether I wanted to go by air or by sea. Note whether or not:
'Do you want to insure your luggage or not?' he asked == He asked whether or not I wanted to insure my luggage or He asked if I wanted to insure my luggage or not.
3 whether + infinitive is possible after wonder, want to know:
'Shall/Should 1wait for them or go on?' he wondered =
He wondered whether to wait for them or go on or
He wondered whether he should wait for them or go on.
inquire + whether + infinitive is possible but less usual.
(For whether + infinitive, see also 242 B.)
4 whether is neater if the question contains a conditional clause as otherwise there would be two ifs:
'If you get the job will you move to York?' Bill asked = Bill asked whether, if I got the job, I'd move to York.
Questions beginning shall I/we? in indirect speech Questions beginning shall I/we? can be of four kinds.
Speculations or requests for information about a future event:
'Shall I ever see them again?' he wondered. 'When shall I know the result of the test?' she asked.
These follow the ordinary rule about shall/will. Speculations are
usually introduced by wonder:
He wondered if he would ever see them again. She asked when she would know the result of the test.

Requests for instructions or advice:
'What shall I do with it?' = 'Tell me what to do with it.' These are expressed in indirect speech by ask, inquire etc., with should or the be + infinitive construction. Requests for advice are normally reported by should:
'Shall we post it. sir?' he said =
He asked the customer if they were to post/if they should post if.
'What shall I say, mother?' she said =
She asked her mother what she should say. (request for advice) When a choice is required we normally use whether in indirect speech. whether + infinitive is sometimes possible (see also 317 E):
'Shall I lock the car or leave it unlocked?' he said =
He asked whether he should/was to lock the car or leave it
unlocked or He asked whether to lock the car etc.
Offers:
'Shall I bring you some tea?' could be reported
He offered to bring me some tea.
Note that 'Wouldyou like me to bring you some tea?' and 'I'll bnngyou some tea if you like' could also be reported by offer.
Suggestions:
'Shall we meet at the theatre?' could be reported He suggested meeting at the theatre.
Questions beginning will you/would you/could you?
These may be ordinary questions, but may also be requests, invitations, or, very occasionally, commands (see 284. 286, 320):
He said. 'Will you be there tomorrow?' (ordinary question) =
He asked if she would be there the next day.
'Will you stand still!'he shouted = He shouted at me to standstill"^!
He told/ordered me to stand still.
'Wouldyou like to live in New York?' he asked =
He asked if I would tike to live in New York.
'Wilt/Would you file these letters, please?' he said =
He asked/told me to/lie the Setters.
'Would you like a lift?' said Ann = Ann offered me a lift. 'Would you like to come round/Could yw come round for a drink?'
he said =
He invited me (to come) round for a drink.
'Could you live on £25 a week?' he asked =
He asked if I could live on £25 a week.
'Could/Would you give me a hand?' she said =
She asked us to give her a hand.
'Could/Would you show me the photos?' she said =
She asked me to show her the photos or She asked to see the photos. (For can/could/may/might + I/we?, see 283. For requests for permission, see 131.)
320 Commands, requests, advice in indirect speech
Direct command: He said, 'Lie down, Tom.'
Indirect command: He told Tom to He down.
Indirect commands, requests, advice are usually expressed by a verb of comraand/request/advice + object + infinitive (== the object -i- infinitive construction).
A The following verbs can be used: advise, ask, beg, command, encourage, entreat, forbid, implore, invite, order, recommend, remind, request, tell, urge, warn.
(Note that say is not included in this list. For indirect commands/ requests reported by say, see 321.)
Hesaid. 'Get your coat, Tom!' = He told Tom to get his coat. 'You had better hurry, Bill!' she said = She advised Bill to hurry.
B Negative commands, requests etc. are usually reported by not •+• infinitive:
'Don't swim out too far, boys,' I said =
I warned/told the boys not to swim out too far. forbid can also be used for prohibitions, but is more common in the passive than in the active.

C Verbs in A above require object + infinitive, i.e. they must be followed directly by the person addressed without preposition (see also 89). The person addressed is often not mentioned in direct commands, requests
etc.: He said, 'Go away!' When reporting such commands/requests therefore we must add a noun
or pronoun:
He told me/him/her/us/them/the children to go away. ask diners from the other verbs in A in that it can also be followed directly by the infinitive of certain verbs, e.g. see, speak to, talk to:
He said. 'Could I see Tom, please?' =
He asked to see Tom. (See also 283.) But this is quite different from the ask + object + infinitive type of request.
Both ask and beg can be followed by the passive infinitive:
'Do. please, send me to a warm climate,' he asked/begged = He asked/begged us to send him to a warm climate or He asked/begged to be sent to a warm climate.
Examples of indirect commands, requests, advice Note that direct commands are usually expressed by the imperative, but that requests and advice can be expressed in a variety of ways (see 283-7):
'If I were you, I'd slop taking tranquillizers,' I said =
I advised him to stop taking tranquillizers. (See 311 D.)
'Why don't you take off your coat?'he said =
He advised me to take off my coat. (See also 287.)
' Would/Could you show me your passport, please?' he said =
He asked me to show him my passport or
He asked me for/He asked to see my passport.
'You might post some letters for me,' said my boss =
My boss asked me to post some letters for him.
'If you 'd just sign the register,' said the receptionist =
The receptionist asked him to sign the register.
'Do sit down.' said my hostess =-
My hostess asked/invited me to sit down.
'Please, please don't take any risks,' said his wife =
His wife begged/implored him not to take any risks.
'Forget all about this you »g man,' said her parents: 'don't see him ' again or answer his letters' =
Her parents ordered her to forget all about the young man and told
her not to see him again or answer his letters or
She was ordered to forget all about the young man and forbidden to ._ see him again or answer his tetters, (passive construction)
'Don't forget to order the wine.' said Mrs Pitt =
Mrs Pitt reminded her husband to order the wine.
'Try again,' said Ann's friends encouragingly =
Ann's friends encouraged her to fry again.
'Go on, apply for the job,'said Jack =
Jack urged/encouraged me to apply for the job.
' You had better not leave your car unlocked,' said my friends;
'there's been a lot of stealing from cars' = ' My friends warned me not to leave my car unlocked as there had been a lot of stealing from cars.
will you . . . sentences are normally treated as requests and reported by ask:

'Will all persons not travelling please go ashore,' he said = He asked at! persons not travelling to go ashore. But if a will you sentence is spoken sharply or irritably, and the ' please is omitted, it might be reported by tell or order;
'Will you be quiet!/Be quiet, will you!' he said = He told/ordered us to be quiet.

321 Other ways of expressing indirect commands

A say/tell + subject + be + infinitive:
He said/told me that I was to wait. This is a possible alternative to the tell + infinitive construction, so that:
He said, 'Don't open the door' could be reported
He told me not to open the door or

fie said that I wasn 't to open the door. The be + infinitive construction is particularly useful in the following cases:
1 When the command is introduced by a verb in the present tense:
He says, 'Meet me at the station' = He says that we are to meet him at the station. (He tells us to meet him would be much less likely.)
2 When the command is preceded by a clause (usually of time or condition):
He said, 'If she leaves the house follow her' could be reported He said that if she left the house I was to follow her. He told me to follow her if she left the house would be equally possible here but note that if we use the tell + infinitive construction we must change the order of the sentence so as to put the command first. Sometimes this would result in a rather confusing sentence. For example, the request If you see Ann tell her to ring me would become He told me to tell Ann to ring him if I saw her. Such requests can only be reported by the be + infinitive construction:
He said that if I saw Ann I was to tell her to ring him.
B say/tell (+ that) + subject + should
1 say or tell with a should construction normally indicates advice rather than command:
He said, 'If your brakes are bad don't drive so fast' =
He said/told me that if my brakes were bad I shouldn 't drive so fast
or
He advised me not to drive so fast if my brakes were bad. (Note
change of order here, as with tell + infinitive above.)
2 Advice can also be expressed by advise, recommend and urge + that. . . should. This is particularly useful in the passive (see 302 E):
'! advise cancelling the meeting.' he said s He advised that the meeting should be cancelled.
3 command and order can also be used with should or a passive infinitive;
'Evacuate the area!' ordered the superintendent =
The superintendent ordered that everyone should lease the area or
ordered that the area should be evacuated or
ordered the area to be evacuated.
4 Note that when an indirect command is expressed by an object + infinitive construction, as in 320, there is normally the idea that the
person who is to obey the command is addressed directly. But when the command is expressed by the be + infinitive construction (A above) or by a should construction (B3 above) the recipient of the command need not necessarily be addressed directly. The command may be conveyed to him by a third person.

322 let's, let us, let him/them in indirect speech

let's
let's usually expresses a suggestion and is reported by suggest in
indirect speech:
He said, 'Let's leave the case at the station'
would be reported:
He suggested leaving the case at the station or He suggested that they/we should leave the case at the station.
(See 289 for constructions with suggest.) He said, 'Let's stop now and finish it later'
would be reported:
He suggested stopping then and finishing it later or He suggested that they/we should stop then and finish it later.
Similarly in the negative:
He said, 'Let's not say anything about it till we hear the facts' = He suggested not saying anything/saying nothing about it till they heard the facts or He suggested that they shouldn 't say anything till they heard the facts.
But let's not used alone in answer to an affirmative suggestion is often
reported by some phrase such as opposed the idea/was against
it/objected. So that we could report:
'Let's sell the house,' said Tom. 'Lei's not,' said Ann by Tom suggested selling the house hut Ann was against it.
(For other suggestion forms, see 289.) ;. let's/let us sometimes expresses a call to action. It is then usually

reported by urge/advise + object + infinitive (see also 320):
The strike leader said, 'Let's show the bosses that we are united' = The strike leader urged the workers to show the bosses that they were united.

323 let him/them

In theory let him/them expresses a command. But very often the speaker has no authority over the person who is to obey the command;
7('s not my business,' said the postman. 'Let the government do
something about it.'
Here, the speaker is not issuing a command but expressing an obligation. Sentences of this type are therefore normally reported by ought/should:
He said that if wasn 't his business and that the government ought
to/should do something about it.
2 Sometimes, however, let him/them does express a command. It is then usually reported by say + be + infinitive (see 321):
'Let the boys clear up this mess,' said the headmaster -= The headmaster said that the boys were to clear up the mess. 'Let the guards'be armed,' he ordered = He ordered that the guards should be armed.
3 Sometimes let him/them is more a suggestion than a command. In such cases it is usually reported by suggest, or say + should (see 289):
She said, 'Let them go to their consul. He 'll be able to help them' = She suggested their/them going to their consul etc. or She suggested that they should go to their consul or She said that they should go to their consul.
4 let him/them can also indicate the speaker's indifference:
'The neighbours will complain,' said Ann.
'Let them (complain),' said Tom = Tom expressed indifference or
Tom said he didn't mind (if they complained).
C let there be
Here the speaker could be ordering, advising, urging or begging:
'Let there be no reprisals,' said the widow of the murdered man = The widow urged/begged that there should be no reprisals.
D let is also an ordinary verb meaning allow/permit:
'Let him come with us, mother; I'll take care of him,' I said =
I asked my mother to let him come with us and promised to take care
of him.

323 Exclamations and yes and no

A Exclamations usually become statements in indirect speech. The exclamation mark disappears.
1 Exclamations beginning What <a). . . or How ... can be reported
(a) by exclaim/say that:
He said, 'What a dreadful idea!' or 'How dreadful." = He exclaimed that it was a dreadful idea/was dreadful
or (b) by give an exclamation of delight/disgust/horror/relief/
surprise etc-
Alternatively, if the exclamation is followed by an action we can use the
construction (c) with an exclamation of delight/disgust etc. +
he/she etc. + verb.
2 Other types of exclamation, such as Good! Marvellous! Splendid! Heavens! Oh! Ugh! etc. can be reported as in (b) or (c) above:
'Good!' he exclaimed =
He gave an exclamation of pleasure/satisfaction.
' Ugh!' she exclaimed, and turned the programme off =
With an exclamation of disgust she turned the programme off.

Note also:

He said, 'Thank you!' = He thanked me. ;' He said. 'Curse this fog." = He cursed the fog.
He said. 'Good luck!' = He wished me luck.
He said. 'Happy Christmas'.' = He wished me a happy Christmas.
He said, 'Congratulations[9]' = He congratulated me.
He said, 'Liar!' = He called me a liar.
He said, 'Damn!'etc. = He swore.
The notice said: WELCOME TO WALES.' = '• The notice welcomed visitors to Wales.
ri
yes and no are expressed in indirect speech by subject + appropriate ' auxiliary verb:
He said, 'Can you swim?'and I said'No' = He asked (me) if I could swim and I said I couldn't.
Hesaid, 'Will you have time to do it?' and I said 'Yes' = He asked if I would have time to do it and I said that I would.

324 Indirect speech: mixed types

Direct speech may consist of statement + question, question + command, command + statement, or all three together.
Normally each requires its own introductory verb:
'I don't know the way. Do you?' he asked .= ; He said he didn't know the way and asked her if she did/if she knew it.
'Someone's coming,' he said. 'Get behind the screen' =
He said that someone was coming and told me to get behind the
screen.
'I'm going shopping. Can I get you anything?' she said = " She said she was going shopping and asked if she could get me ; anything.
'I can hardly hear the radio,' he said. 'Could you turn it up?' =
He said he could hardly hear the radio and asked her to turn it up.
But sometimes, when the iast clause is a statement which helps to explain the first, we can use as instead of a second introductory verb:
'You'd better wear a coat. it's very cold out.'he said =. He advised me to wear a coat as it was very cold out. 'You'd better not walk across the park alone. People have been
mugged there,' he said =
He warned her not to walk across the park alone as people had been mugged there.
Sometimes the second introductory verb can be a participle:
'Please, please, don't drink too much! Remember thatyou'U have to drive home,' she said =
She begged him not to drink too much, reminding him that he 'd have to drive home.

'Let's shop on Friday. The supermarket will be very crowded on Saturday,' she said =
She suggested shopping on Friday, pointing out that the supermarket would be very crowded on Saturday. (as could be used in both these examples.)
325 must and needn't
A must used for deductions, permanent commands/prohibitions and to express intention remains unchanged. (For must, expressing advice, see 287 A.)
1 Deductions:
She said, 'I'm always running into him; he must live near here!' a She said that. . . he must live in the area.
2 Permanent command:
He said, 'This door must be kept locked' =-He said that the door must be kept locked.
3 must used casually to express intention:
He said, ' We must have a party to celebrate this' = He said that they must have a party to celebrate it.
B must used for obligation can remain unchanged. Alternatively it can be reported by would have to or had to.
1 I/we must reported by would have to
would have to is used when the obligation depends on some future action, or when the fulfilment of the obligation appears remote or uncertain, i.e. when must is clearly replaceable by will have to:
'If the floods get worse we must (will have to) leave the house,' he
said =
If e said that if the floods got worse they would have to leave the

house.
'When it stops snowing we must start digging ourselves out,'
I said =
I said that when it stopped snowing we would have to start digging
ourselves out.
'We must mend the roof properly next year,' he said =
He said that they would have to mend the roof properly the following
year.
7 have just received a letter,' he said. 'I must go home' =
He said that he had just received a letter and would have to go home-
(But had to would be more usual here if he went at once, i.e. had
to'would imply that he went at once.)
2 I/we must reported by had to
had to is the usual form for obligations where times for fulfilment have been fixed, or plans made, or when the obligation is fulfilled fairly promptly, or at least by the time the speech is reported:

He said, 'I must wash my hands' (and presumably did so) =
He said that he had to wash his hands.
Tom said, 'I must be there by nine tomorrow' = { Tom said that he had to be there by nine the next day. ^would have to would be possible here also but would imply that the ^obligation was self-imposed and that no outside authority was involved, ; had to could express either an outside authority (i.e. that someone had ; told him to be there) or a self-imposed obligation.
HAH difficulties about had to/would have to can of course be avoided ,:jby keeping must unchanged. In both the above examples must could "'have been used instead of had to/would have to.
you/he/they must is reported similarly:
He said. 'You must start at once' =
He said that she must/had to/would have to start at once. But note that would have to removes the idea of the speaker's authority:
Tom said. 'I/you want to stay on here you must work harder' =
Twn said that if she wanted to stay on she must/would have to work
harder.
must implies that Tom himself insists on her working harder, would
have to merely implies that this will be necessary.
must I/you/he? can change similarly but as must in the interrogative
usually concerns the present or immediate future it usually becomes
had to:
'Must you go so soon?' I said = I asked him if he had to go so soon.
gfaust not
must not usually remains unchanged, you/he must not remains
.pichanged or is expressed as a negative command (see 320-1):
He said, 'You mustn't tell anyone' = f:- He said that she mustn 't ell/wasn 't to tell anyone or
He told her not to tell anyone. ',,
needn't
needn't can remain unchanged and usually does. Alternatively it can i,change to didn't have to/wouldn't have to just as must changes to
•had to/would have to:
He said. 'You needn't wait' = He said that I needn't wait.
I said, 'If you can lend me the money I needn 't go to the bank = i; / said that if he could lend me the money I needn 't/wouldn 't have to
go to the bank.
He said, '1 needn't be in the office till ten tomorrow morning' •=
He said that he needn't/didn't have to be in the office till ten the next ! morning.
"need I/you/he? behaves exactly in the same ways as must I/you/he? ; i.e. it normally becomes had to:
'Need I finish my pudding?' asked the small boy = ^ The small boy asked if he had to finish his pudding.

32 Conjunctions

326 Co-ordinating conjunctions: and, but, both . . . and, or, either ... or, neither . . . nor, not only . . . but also

These join pairs of nouns/adjectives/adverbs/verbs/phrases/clauses:
He plays squash and rugby.
I make the payments and keep the accounts.
He works quickly and/but accurately.
He is small but strong. She is intelligent but lazy.
We came in first but (we) didn't win the race.
Both men and women were drafted into the army.
Ring Tom or Bill. She doesn 't smoke or drink.
He can't (either) read or write.
You can (either) walk up or take the cable car.
He can neither read nor write.
Not only men but also women were chosen.

327 besides, however, nevertheless, otherwise, so, therefore, still, yet, though

These adverbs/conjunctions can join clauses or sentences and are then often known as 'conjuncts'. But they can also, with the exception of nevertheless and therefore (conjunctions), be used in other ways and sometimes as other parts of speech. Their position will vary according to how they are used-
A besides (preposition) means 'in addition to'. It precedes a noun/pronoun/gerund:
Besides doing the cooking I look after the garden. besides (adverb) means 'in addition'. It usually precedes the clause it introduces, but can follow it:
I can't go now; I'm too busy. Besides, my passport is out of date. moreover could replace besides here in more formal English. anyway or in any case could be used here in more informal English:
Anyway, my passport's out of date.
B however (adverb of degree, see 41) precedes its adjective/adverb:
You couldn't earn much, however hard you worked. however (conjunction) usually means 'but'. It can precede or follow its clause or come after the first word or phrase:
I'll offer it to Tom. However, he may not want it or
He may 'not want it however or Tom, however, may not want it or
If, however, he doesn't want it. . .

' But when two contrasting statements are mentioned, however can
t; mean'but/nevertheless/all the same':
They hadn 't trained hard, but/however/nevertheless/all the same they won or they won, however/nevertheless/all the same, (See also 329.)
.• otherwise (adverb) usually comes after the verb:
It must be used in a well-ventilated room. Used otherwise it could be
harmful. otherwise (conjunction) means 'if not/or else':
We must be early; otherwise we won't get a seat. or could also be used here in colloquial English;
We must be early or (else) see won't get a seat.
so (adverb of degree) precedes its adjective/adverb:
I was so hot that. . . They ran so fast that. . . so (conjunction) precedes its clause:
Our cases were heavy, so we look a taxi.
therefore (conjunction) can be used instead of so in formal English. It can come at the beginning of the clause or after the first word or phrase; or before the main verb:
There is fog at Heathrow; the plane, therefore, has been diverted/the plane has therefore been diverted/therefore the plane has been diverted.
••• still and yet can be adverbs of time (see 37):
The children are still up. They haven't had supper yet. '•' still and yet (conjunctions) come at the beginning of the clauses they introduce.

still (conjunction) means 'admitting that/nevertheless'. yet (conjunction) means 'in spite of that/all the same/nevertheless'. You aren 't rich; still, you could do something to help him. They are ugly and expensive; yet people buy them.
though/although normally introduce clauses of concession (see 340):
Though/Although they're expensive, people buy them. though (but not although) can also be used to link two main clauses. though used in this way means 'but' or 'yet' and is placed sometimes at the beginning but more often at the end of its clause:
He says he 'II pay, though I don't think he will or
He says he 'II pay; I don 'f think he will, though.

328 Subordinating conjunctions: **if, that, though/although, unless, when** etc.

Subordinating conjunctions introduce subordinate adverb or noun clauses and are dealt with in the chapters on the different types of clause.

See chapter 21 for conditional clauses, chapter 33 for purpose clauses
chapter 34 for adverb clauses of reason, result, concession, comparison
and time, and chapter 35 for noun clauses.
Some conjunctions have more than one meaning and may introduce
more than one type of clause.
Pairs and groups of conjunctions which are sometimes confused with
each other or with other parts of speech are dealt with below.
329 though/although and in spite of (preposition phrase), despite (preposition)
Two opposing or contrasting statements, such as He had no qualifications and He got the job, could be combined as follows:
A With but, however or nevertheless as shown in 327 above:
He had no qualifications but he got the job.
He had no qualifications; however he got the Job/he got the job,
however.
He had no qualifications; nevertheless he got the job.
B With though/although:
He got the job although he had no qualifications. Although he had no qualifications he got the job.
C With in spite of/despite + noun/pronoun/gerund:
In spite of'having no qualifications he got the job. He got the job in
spite of having no qualifications.
despite = in spite of. It is chiefly used in newspapers and in formal English:
Despite the severe weather conditions all the cars completed the
course.
D Note that though/although requires subject + verb:
Although it was windy . . .
and that in spite of/despite requires noun/pronoun or gerund:
In spite a/the wind . . .
Some more examples:
Although it smelt horrible . . . = In spite of the horrible smell. . . Although it was dangerous . . . = In spite of the danger . . . Though he was inexperienced . . . = In spite of his inexperience/his being inexperienced . . .

330 **for** and **because**

These conjunctions have nearly the same meaning and very often either can be used. It is, however, safer to use **because**, as a clause introduced by **for** (which we will call a 'for-clause') has a more restricted use than a clause introduced by **because**:

1 A for-clause cannot precede the verb which it explains:
Because it was wet he took a taxi. (for is not possible.)

2 A for-clause cannot be preceded by not, but or any conjunction:
He stole, not because he wanted the money but because he liked stealing. (for not possible)

3 A for-clause cannot be used in answer to a question:
Why did you do it? ~ I did it because I was angry. (for not possible)

4 A for-clause cannot be a mere repetition of what has been already stated, but always includes some new piece of information:

He spoke in French. She was angry because he had spoken in French, (for is not possible.) But She was angry, for she didn 't know French. (Here for is correct;

because is also possible.)

The reason for these restrictions is that a for-clause does not tell us why a certain action was performed, buE merely presents a piece of additional information which helps to explain it. Some examples of for-clauses:

The days were- short, for it was now December. He took the food eagerly, for he had eaten nothing since dawn. When I saw her in the river I was frightened- For at that point the currents were dangerous.

In speech a short pause is usually made before a for-clause and in written English this place is usually marked by a comma, and sometimes, as in the last example above, by a full stop. because could be used in the above sentences also, though for is better.

331 **when, while, as** used to express time

A **when** is used, with simple tenses:

1 When one action occurs at the same time as another or in the span of another:

When it is wet the buses are crowded.

When we lived in town we often went to the theatre.

2 When one action follows another:

When she pressed the button the lift stopped.

B **as** is used:

When the second action occurs before the first is finished:

As / left the house I remembered the key.

This implies that I remembered the key before I had completed the action of leaving the house; I was probabiy still in the doorway. *While I was leaving* would have the same meaning here, but *When I left* would give the impression that the act of leaving was complete and the door shut behind me.

2 For parallel actions: *He sang as he worked.*

3 For parallel development:

As the sun rose the fog dispersed.

As it grew darker if became colder = The darker it grew, the colder it became.

As she came to know him better she relied on him more.

As he became more competent he was given more interesting work.

If we used **when** here we would lose all idea of simultaneous progression or development.

4 To mean **while** (= during the time that):

As he stood there he saw two men enter the bar.

But there is no particular advantage in using **as** here, and **while** is safer.

332 as meaning when/while or because/since

A Restricted use of **as** (= **when/while**)

as here is chiefly used with verbs indicating action or development. It is not normally used with the type of verb listed in 168, except when there is an idea of development, as in B3 above. Nor is it normally used with verbs such as *live, stay, remain*.

B as used with the above verbs/types of verb normally means because/since;

As he was tired . . . = Because he was tired . . .

As he knew her well. . . = Because he knew her well. . .

As it contains alcohol. . . = Since/Because it contains alcohol. . .

As he lives near here . . . = Since/Because he lives . . .

C With most verbs, **as** can be used with either meaning:

As/While he shaved he thought about the coming interview.

As/Because he shaved with a blunt razor he didn't make a very good job of it.

If in doubt here, students should use **while** or **because**.

D **as** + noun can mean either **when/while** or **because/since**:

As a student he had known great poverty = When he was a student he had known great poverty.
As a student he gets/got in for half price = Because he is/was a student he gets/got in . . .
As a married man, he has to think of his family = Because/Since he is a married man . . .

as meaning **when/while** here is usually followed by a perfect tense.
as meaning **because/since** can be followed by any tense.
as, when, while used to mean **although, but, seeing that**
as can mean **though/although** but only in the combination adjective + **as** + subject + **to be/to seem/to appear**:

Tired as he was he offered to carry her = Though he was tired he offered to carry her.
Strong as he was, he couldn't lift it.

while can mean **but** and is used to emphasize a contrast:

'At sea' means 'on a ship', while 'at the sea' means 'at the seaside'.
Some people waste food while others haven't enough.

while can also mean **although** and is then usually placed at the beginning of a sentence:

While I sympathize with your point of view I cannot accept it.

when can mean seeing **that/although**. It is therefore very similar to **while**, but is chiefly used to introduce a statement which makes another action seem unreasonable. It is often, though not necessarily, used with a question:

How can you expect your children to be truthful when you yourself tell lies?
It's not fair to expect her to do all the cooking when she has had no training or experience.

Do not confuse **when** and **if**
When he comes implies that we are sure he will come. *If he comes* implies that we don't know whether he will come or not. (For **if** in conditional sentences, see chapter 21.)

33 Purpose

334 Purpose is normally expressed by the infinitive

Purpose can be expressed by:
A The infinitive alone:
He went to France to learn French. They stopped to ask the way. When there is a personal object of the main verb, the infinitive may refer to this and not to the subject:
He sen! Tom to the shop Co buy bread. (Tom was to buy the bread.)
E in order or so as + infinitive
in order + infinitive can imply either that the subject wants to perform the action or that he wants it to happen.
so as + infinitive implies only that the subject wants the action to happen, in order is, therefore, the more generally useful,
in order or so as are used:
1 With a negative infinitive to express a negative purpose:
He left his gun outside in order/so as not to frighten us.
2 With to be and to have:
She left work early in order/so as to be at home when he arrived. She gave up work in order/so as to have more time with the children.
3 When the purpose is less immediate:
He is studying mathematics in order/so as to qualify/or a better job. She learnt typing in order to help her husband with his work.
4 Sometimes in longer sentences, to emphasize that the infinitive indicates purpose:
He was accused of misrepresenting the facts in order/so as to make the scheme seem feasible.
He took much more trouble over the figures than he usually did in order/so as to show his new boss what a careful worker he was. (But in order/so as is not essential and is often omitted.) When the infinitive of purpose precedes the main verb, in order/so as may be placed first:
In order/So as to show his boss what a careful worker he was, he took extra trouble over the figures. (But here also in order/so as may be omitted.)
5 When there is a personal object but we want the infinitive to refer unambiguously to the subject:
He sent his sons to a boarding school in order/so as to have some peace. (He, not his sons, was going to have some peace.) Compare with:

He sent his sons to a boarding school to team to live in a community.
(Not he but his sons were to learn to live in a community.) But this in order/so as construction is not very common. It is more usual to say:
He sent his sons to a boarding school because he wanted to have some peace.
in order (but not so as), used to emphasize that the subject really had this purpose in mind:
He bought diamonds when he was in Amsterdam! ~ That wasn't surprising. He went to Amsterdam in order to buy diamonds, (not for any other purpose)
We could also, however, express^this idea by stressing the first verb and omitting in order: He 'went to Amsterdam to buy diamonds.
Infinitive + noun + preposition:
/ want a case to keep my records in.
I need a corkscrew to open this bottle with. Note that here we are talking about a particular purpose. For a general purpose we use for + gerund:
This is a case for keeping records in.
A corkscrew is a tool for opening bottles.

335 Infinitives of purpose after **go** and **come**

It is not normal to use an infinitive of purpose after the imperative or infinitive of go and come. Instead of Go to find Bill we normally say Go and find Bill; and instead of Come to talk to Ann

we say Come and talk to Ann; i.e. instead of an imperative + an infinitive of purpose we use two imperatives Joined by and. And instead of:
I must go to help my mother and I'll come to check the accounts we normally say:
I must go and help my mother and I'll come and check the accounts. i.e. instead of an infinitive + an infinitive of purpose we use two infinitives joined by and (see 246 I).
But when go and come are used as gerunds or in any present or past tense they take the ordinary infinitive of purpose:
I'm thinking of going to look for mushrooms.
I went to help my mother.
I've come to check the accounts.
I didn 't come to talk to Bill; I came to talk to you.

336 Clauses of purpose

Clauses are necessary when the person to whom the purpose refers is different from the subject of the main clause, or when the original subject is stated again:
Ships carry lifeboats so that the crew can escape if the ship sinks. This knife has a cork handle so that if will float if it falls overboard.

A Purpose clauses are usually expressed by so that + will/would or can/could + infinitive. can/could is used here to mean will/would be able to:
They make £10 notes a different size from £5 notes so that blind people can (= wil! be able to) tell the difference between them. They wrote the notices in several languages so that foreign tourists could (= would be able to) understand them. can and will are used when the main verb is in a present, present perfect or future tense; could and would are used when the main verb is in a past tense. See the examples above and also:
/ light/am lighting/have lit/will light the fire so that the house will be warm when they return.
I have given/will give him a key so that he can get into the house whenever he likes.
I pinned the note to his pillow so that he would be sure to see it. There were telephone points every kilometre so that drivers whose cars had broken down would be able to/could summon help. If that is omitted from purpose clauses with can/could, the idea of purpose may disappear. The sentence He took my shoes so that I couldn't leave the house would normally mean 'He took my shoes to prevent my leaving etc.' but He took my shoes, so I couldn 't leave the house would normally mean 'He took my shoes; therefore I wasn't able to leave'.
B Purpose clauses can also be formed by so that/in order that/that + may/might or shall/should + infinitive. These are merely more formal constructions than those shown in A above. There is no difference in meaning.
Note that so that can be followed by will/can/may/shall or their past forms, while in order that or that are limited to may/shall or their past forms.
that used alone is rarely found except in very dramatic speech or writing, or in poetry.
The rules about sequences of tenses are the same as those shown above. The following are very formal:
We carved their names on the stone so that/in order that future generations should/might know what they had done. These men risk their lives so that/in order that we may live more safely.
may in the present tense is much more comman than shall, which is rarely used. In the past tense either might or should can be used. The student should know the above forms but should not normally need to use them, as for all ordinary purposes so that + can/could or will/would should be quite sufficient.
C Negative purpose clauses are made by putting the auxiliary verb (usually will/would or should) into the negative:
He wrote his diary in code so that his wife wouldn 't be able to read it-He changed his name so that his new friends wouldn Vshouidn 't know that he had once been accused of murder.

Criminals usually telephone from public telephone boxes so that the police won't be able to trace the call.
Negative purpose clauses can, however, usually be replaced bv to prevent + noun/pronoun + gerund, or to avoid + gerund-
He dyed his beard so that we shouldn 't recognize him/to prevent us recognizing him/to avoid being recognized, (passive gerund) She always shopped in another village so that she

wouldn 'i meet her own neighbours/to avoid meeting her own neighbours. These infinitive phrases are preferred to negative purpose clauses.

337 **in case** and **lest**

A **in case**

in case + subject + verb can follow a statement or command:
I don't let him climb trees in case he tears his trousers. This first action is usually a preparation for, or a precaution against, the action in the if-clause, which is a possible future action.
in case + present tense normally has the meaning 'because this may happen/because perhaps this will happen' or 'for fear that this may happen'-
in case + past tense normally means 'because this might happen/because perhaps this would happen' or 'for fear that this would happen'.
Both present tense and past tense here can be replaced by **should** + infinitive. **should** used here would express greater improbability, but this construction is not very usual,

B Tenses with **in case**

Main verb
Future
present tense or Present + in case +
„ .. _(^ should + infinitive Present perfect J
Conditional 1 (. ,
past tense or
Past tense + in case +
n . , should + infinitive
Past perfect ;

I'll make a cake in case someone drops in at the weekend.
I carry a spare wheel in case I have/should have a puncture.
I always keep candles in the house in case there is a power cut.
I always kept candies in the house in case there was a power cut. (See also 227.)

lest means 'for fear that' and is followed by should:

He doesn't/didn't dare to leave the house lest someone should recognize him.

lest is rarely found except in formal written English.

34 Clauses of reason, result, concession, comparison, time

338 Clauses of reason and result/cause

Except for the type shown in A2 and A3 below, both these clauses can be introduced by as or because. But as is safer for clauses of reason (see A below) and because is safer for clauses of result/cause (see B).

A Clauses of reason

1 Introduced by as/because/since;

We camped there as/because/since it was too dark to go on. As/Because/Since it was too dark to go on, we camped there.

2 'in view of the fact that' can be expressed by as/since/seeing that, but not because:

As/Since/Seeing that you are here, you may as well give me a hand. As/Since/Seeing that Tom knows French, he 'd better do the talking.

3 Where as/since/seeing that refers to a statement previously made or understood, it is replaceable by if:

As/Since/Seeing that/If you don't like Bill, why did you invite him? Note the use of if so:

I hope Bill won't come. ~ Ifso (= If you hope he won't come), why did you invite him? For if + so/not, see 347.

B Clauses of result/cause (see also 339) are introduced by because or as:

The fuse blew because we had overloaded the circuit.

He was angry because we were late.

As it/rose hard that night there was ice everywhere next day.

As the soup was very salty we were thirsty afterwards.

C These combinations could also be expressed by two main clauses Joined by so:

It was too dark to go on, so we camped there.

You are here, so you may as well give me a hand.

It froze hard that night, so there was ice everywhere next day.

therefore can also be used. but is normal only in fairly formal sentences:

The Finnish delegate has not yet arrived. We are therefore postponing/We have therefore decided to postpone/Therefore we are postponing the meeting. (Notice possible positions of therefore.)

339 Clauses of result with **such/so . . . that**

A **such** is an adjective and is used before an adjective + noun:

They had such a fierce dog that no one dared to go near their house. He spoke for such a long time that people began to fall asleep.

B **so** is an adverb and is used before adverbs and with adjectives which are not followed by their nouns:

The snow fell so fast that our footsteps were soon covered up. His speech went on for so long thai people began to fall asleep. Their dog was so fierce that no one dared come near it.

But such is never used before much and many. so so is used even when much and many are followed by nouns:

There was so much dust that we couldn't see what was happening. So many people complained that they took the programme off.

C Note that such + a + adjective + noun is replaceable by so + adjective + a + noun, so that 'such a good man" is replaceable by 'so good a man'. This is only possible when a noun is preceded by a/an. It is not a very usual form but may be met in literature. Sometimes for emphasis so is placed at the beginning of the sentence. It is then followed by the inverted form of the verb (see 45):

So terrible was the storm that whole roofs were ripped off.

340 Clauses of concession

These are introduced by although, though (see 327, 329), even though, even if, no matter, however (see 85) and sometimes by whatever, as is also possible, but only in the adjective + as + be construction.

Although/Though/Even though/Even if you don't like him you can still be polite.
No matter what you do, don't touch this switch.
However rich people are, they always seem anxious to make more money.
However carefully you drive, you will probably have an accident eventually.
Whatever you do, don't tell him that I told you this.
Patient as he was, he had no intention of waiting for three hours.

(though he was patient) may + infinitive can be used in hypothetical cases:

However frightened you may tie yourself, you must remain

outwardly calm. may can also imply 'I accept the fact that':

But he's your brother! ~ He may be my brother but I don't trust him!

But may used in this way is part of another main clause, not a clause of concession.
should + infinitive can be used after even if just as it can after if in conditional sentences, to express the idea that the action expressed by the infinitive is not very likely to take place;

Even if he should find out he won't do anything about it.

341 Clauses of comparison

A Comparisons with adjectives and finite verbs (see also 20-2);

It's darker today than it was yesterday.
He doesn'I Ray as much tax as we do/as us.
He spends more than he earns.

Note that + adjective, a colloquial form:

Will it cost £1W? ~ No, it won't cost as much as (ail) that. It won't

be (alt) that expensive. (It won't be as expensive as that.) that + adjective is sometimes used colloquially to mean very.

B Comparisons with adverbs and finite verbs (see also 31-4):
He didn't play as well as we expected/as well as you (did). He sings more loudly than anyone I've ever heard/than anyone else (does). You work harder than he does/than him/than I did at your age.

C Comparisons with adjectives and infinitives or gerunds
Often either can be used, but the infinitive is more usual for a particular action, and gerunds are more usual for genera! statements (see also E below):

It's sometimes as cheap to buy a new one as (it is) (to) repair the old one.
Buying a new one is sometimes as cheap as repairing the old one.
He found that lying on She beach was just as boring as sitting in his office or
He found lying on the beach just as boring as sitting etc. (The infinitive would be less usual here.)
He thinks it (is) safer to drive himself than (to) let me drive.
He thinks that driving himself is safer than letting me drive.
It will soon be more difficult to get a visa than it is now.
Getting a visa will soon be more difficult than it is now.

D In comparisons of the type shown in C above, if we have an infinitive before as/than we will usually have an infinitive (not a gerund) after it, Similarly, if we have a gerund before as/than we will normally have a gerund (not an infinitive) after it. See examples above, But if we have a finite verb + this/that/which before as/than we can have a gerund after it. An infinitive is possible but would be much less usual:

I'll deliver it by hand; this will be cheaper than posting it.
He cleaned his shoes, which was better than doing nothing.

E Infinitives are used with would rather/sooner (see 297-8):
Most people would rather work than starve. I would resign rather than accept him as a partner.

342 Time clauses

A These are introduced by conjunctions of time such as:

after *immediately* *till/until*
as *no sooner . . . than* *when*
as soon as *since* *whenever*
before *the sooner* *while*
hardly . . . when

They can also be introduced by the minute, the moment.
For examples with when, as, while, see 331-3.
For examples with before, see 195 B.

B Remember that we do not use a future form, or a conditional tense, in a time clause.
Each of the following future forms becomes a present tense when we put it in a time clause-
Future simple:
You 'II be back soon. I'll stay till then. = I'll stay till you get back.
be going to:
The parachutist is going to jump. Soon after he jumps his parachute
will open.
The present continuous, used as a future form, and the future continuous:
He's arriving/He 'II be arriving at six but
When he arrives he'll tell us all about the match.
Before he arrives I'll give the children their tea. But the continuous tense can, of course, be used in time clauses when it indicates a continuous action:
Peter and John will be playing/are playing/are going to play tennis
tonight. While they are playing (during this time) we 'II go to the
beach.
The future perfect changes to the present perfect, and the future perfect continuous changes to the present perfect continuous:
I'll have finished in the bathroom in a few minutes.
The moment/As soon as I have finished I'll give you a call.
A conditional tense changes to a past tense:
We knew that he would arrive/would be arriving about six. We knew that till he arrived nothing would be done.
But when when introduces a noun clause it can be followed by a future or conditional tense:
He said. 'When will the train get in?' =
He asked when the train would get in.

C Clauses with since (see also 187-8)
In clauses since is usually followed by perfect tenses (but see 188);
They 've moved house twice since they got married or Since they got married, they 've moved house twice. He said he'd lived in a tent since his house burnt down. It's ages since I sailed/have sailed a boat. I haven't sailed a boat since I left college.

D Clauses with **after**
In clauses **after** is often followed by perfect tenses:

After/When he had rung off I remembered. . .
After/When you 've finished with it, hang it up.

E **hardly/scarcely . . . when, no sooner . . . than** (see also 45) The performance had hardly begun when the lights went out or Hardly had the performance begun when the lights went out.
scarcely could replace hardly here but is less usual,
He had no sooner drunk the coffee than he began to feel drowsy or No sooner had he drunk the coffee than he began to feel drowsy. He no sooner earns any money than he spends it or Immediately he earns any money he spends it. (more colloquial)
Note also the sooner . . . the sooner:
The sooner we start, the sooner we'll be there.

35 Noun clauses

Noun clauses are very often introduced by **that** and are therefore often called **that**-clauses. However, not all noun clauses are **that**-clauses.

343 Noun clauses (that-clauses) as subject of a sentence

A Sentences with noun clause subjects usually begin with it (see 67 D):

It is disappointing that Tom can't come.

'*that Tom can't come'* is the subject.

B The usual construction is it + be/seem + adjective + noun clause (see *26-7):*

It's splendid that you passed your exam.

It's strange that there are no lights on.

Some adjectives require or can take **that . . . should** (see 236):

It is essential that everybody knows/should know what to do.

An alternative construction is **it + be/seem + a** + noun + noun clause. Nouns that can be used here include **mercy, miracle, nuisance, pity, shame, relief, wonder, a good thing** is also possible.

It's a great pity (that) they didn't get married.
It's a wonder (that) you weren't killed.
It's a good thing (thai) you were insured.

I that-clauses after certain adjectives/participles

The construction here is subject + be + adjective/past participle + noun clause:

I am delighted that you passed your exam.

This construction can be used with

(a) adjectives expressing emotion: **glad, pleased, relieved, sorry** (see 26 P)

(b) adjectives/participles expressing anxiety, confidence etc.: **afraid, anxious, aware, certain, confident, conscious, convinced** (see 27). **anxious** requires **that . . . should**.

I'm afraid that I can't come till next week.

Are you certain that this is the right road?

345 **that**-clauses after certain nouns

A **that**-clause can be placed after a large number of abstract nouns. The most useful of these are: **allegation, announcement, belief, discovery, fact, fear, guarantee, hope, knowledge, promise, proposal, report, rumour, suggestion, suspicion, proposal** and **suggestion** require **that** . . . should,

The announcement that a new airport was to be built nearby aroused immediate opposition.

The proposal/suggestion that shops should open on Sundays led to a heated discussion.

A report that the area was dangerous was ignored by the residents.

346 Noun clauses as objects of verbs

A that-clauses are possible after a large number of verbs. Some of the most useful are given below.

acknowledge	*find (wh)*	*recommend*
admit	*forget (wh)*	*remark*
advise	*guarantee*	*remember (wh)*
agree	*happen*	*remind*
allege	*hear (wh)*	*request*
announce	*hope*	*resolve*
appear	*imagine (wh)*	*reveal (wh)*
arrange (wh)	*imply*	*say (wh)*
ask (wh)	*indicate (wh)*	*see (wh)*
assume	*inform*	*seem*
assure	*insist*	*show (wh)*

beg	*know (wh)*	*state (wh)*
believe (wh)	*leam*	*stipulate*
command	*make out (= state)*	*suggest (wh)*
confess	*mean*	*suppose*
consider (wh)	*notice (wh)*	*teach*
declare	*observe*	*tell (wh)*
decide (wh)	*occur to + object*	*think (wh)*
demand	*order*	*threaten*
demonstrate	*perceive*	*turn out*
determine	*presume*	*understand (wh)*
discover	*pretend*	*urge*
doubt	*promise*	*vow*
estimate (wh)	*propose*	*warn*
expect	*prove (wh)*	*wish*
fear	*realize (wh)*	*wonder (wh)*
feel	*recognize*	

and other verbs of communication, e.g. complain, deny, explain etc. (see 316 C).
wh: see E below.

Examples
They alleged/made out that they had been unjustly dismissed. He assumes that we agree with him. I can prove that she did it.
Most of the above verbs can also take another construction (see chapters 23-6). Note however that a verb + that-ctause does not necessarily have the same meaning as the same verb + infinitive/gerund/present participle: He saw her answering the letters means 'He watched her doing this' but He saw that she answered the letters could mean either 'He noticed that she did this' or 'He made sure by supervision that she did this'.

C **appear, happen, occur, seem, turn out** require **it** as subject:
It appears/seems that we have come on the wrong day.
If occurred to me that he might be lying.
It turned out that nobody remembered the address.

D that + subject + should can be used after agree, arrange, be anxious, beg, command, decide, demand, determine, be determined, order, resolve and urge instead of an infinitive construction, and after insist and suggest instead of a gerund:
They agreed/decided that a statue should be put up.
He urged that the matter should go to arbitration.
He suggested that a reward should be offered. (See 235, 302 E.)
Verbs in section A marked '(wh)' can also be followed by noun clauses beginning with **wh**-words: **what, when, where, who, why**, or with **how**:
He asked where he was to go.
They'll believe whatever you tell them.
I forget who told me this.
Have you heard how he is getting on?
I can't think why he left his wife.
I wonder when he will pay me back.

347 **so** and **not** representing a **that**-clause

A After **believe, expect, suppose, think** and after **it appears/seems**:
Will Tom be at the party? -- I expect so/suppose so/think so = I think he will.
For the negative we use:
A negative verb with so:
Will the scheme be a success? ~ I don't believe so/expect so/suppose so/think so.
Are they making good progress? ~ It doesn't seem so.

2 Or an affirmative verb with not:
It won't take long, will it? ~ No, I suppose not or
I don't suppose so.
The plane didn't land in Calcutta, did it? ~ I believe not or
I don't believe so.

B **so** and **not** can be used similarly after hope and be afraid (= be sorry to say):

Is Peter coming with us? ~ I hope so.

Will you have to Ray duly on this? ~ I'm afraid so.

The negative here is made with an affirmative verb + not:

Have you got a work permit? ~ I'm afraid not.

C **so** and **not** can be used after say and tell + object:

How do you know there is going to be a demonstration? ~ Jack said so/Jack told me so.

I told you so! can mean 'I told you that this was the case/that this would happen'. This usually annoys the person addressed. For tell the only negative form is negative verb + so:

Tom didn't tell me so.

For say there are two negative forms, but the meaning is not the same:

Tom didn't say so = Tom didn't say that there would be a demonstration.

Tom said not = Tom said there wouldn't be a demonstration.

D **if + so/not**

so/not after **if** can replace a previously mentioned/understood subject + verb:

Will you be staying another night? If so (= If you are), we can give you a better room. If not (= If you aren't), could you be out of your room by 12:00?

if so/not here usually represents a clause of condition as shown above, but for if so, see also 338 A.

36 Numerals, dates, and weights and measures

348 Cardinal numbers (adjectives and pronouns)

1 one	*11 eleven*	*21 twenty-one*	*31 thirty-one etc.*
2 two	*12 twelve*	*22 twenty-two*	*40 forty*
3 three	*13 thirteen*	*23 twenty-three*	*50 fifty*
4 four	*14 fourteen*	*24 twenty-four*	*60 sixty*
5 five	*15 fifteen*	*25 twenty-five*	*70 seventy*
6 six	*16 sixteen*	*26 twenty-six*	*80 eighty*
7 sewn	*17 seventeen*	*27 twenty-seven*	*90 ninety*
8 eight	*18 eighteen*	*28 twenty-eight*	*100 a hundred*
9 nine	*19 nineteen*	*29 twenty-nine*	*1,000 a thousand*
10 ten	*20 twenty*	*30 thirty*	*1,000,000 a million*

400 four hundred *140 a/one hundred and forty* *1,006 a/one thousand and six*
5,000 five thousand *260,127 two hundred and sixty thousand, one hundred and twenty-seven*

349 Points to notice about cardinal numbers

A When writing in words, or reading, a number composed of three or more figures we place and before the word denoting tens or units:
713 seven hundred and thirteen
5,102 five thousand, one hundred and two but
6,100 six thousand, one hundred (no tens or units) and is used similarly with hundreds of thousands:
320,410 three hundred and twenty thousand, four hundred and ten and hundreds of millions:
303.000,000 three hundred and three million

B **a** is more usual than **one** before **hundred, thousand, million** etc, when these numbers stand alone or begin an expression:
100 a hundred 1,000 a thousand
100,000 a hundred thousand
We can also say a hundred and one, a hundred and two etc. up to a hundred and ninety-nine and a thousand and one etc. up to a thousand and ninety-nine. Otherwise we use one, not a (see above). So:
1,040 a/one thousand and forty but
1,140 one thousand, one hundred and forty

C The words hundred, thousand, million and dozen. when used of a definite number, are never made plural:
six hundred men ten thousand pounds two dozen eggs If however, these words are used loosely, merely to convey the idea of a large number, they must be made plural:
hundreds of people thousands of birds dozens of times Note also that in this case the preposition of is placed after hundreds, thousands etc.
of is not used with definite numbers except before the/them/ these/those or possessives:
so: of the blue ones ten of these four of Tom's brothers

D Numbers composed of four or more figures are divided into groups of three as shown above. Decimals are indicated by '•', which is read 'point':
10.92 ten point nine two
A zero after a decimal point is usually read 'nought':
8.04 eight point nought four
But 'o' and 'zero' would also be possible.

350 Ordinal numbers (adjectives and pronouns)

first	*eleventh*	*twenty-first*	*thirty-first etc.*
second	*twelfth*	*twenty-second*	*fortieth*
third	*thirteenth*	*twenty-third*	*fiftieth*
fourth	*fourteenth*	*twenty-fourth*	*sixtieth*

fifth	*fifteenth*	*twenty-fifth*	*seventieth*
sixth	*sixteenth*	*twenty-sixth*	*eightieth*
seventh	*seventeenth*	*twenty-seventh*	*ninetieth*
eighth	*eighteenth*	*twenty-eighth*	*hundredth*
ninth	*nineteenth*	*twenty-ninth*	*thousandth*
tenth	*twentieth*	*thirtieth*	*millionth*

When writing in words or reading fractions other than ½ (a half) and ¼ (a quarter), we use a combination of cardinal and ordinal numbers:
1/5 *a/one fifth* 1/10 *a/one tenth* (*a* is more usual than *one*)
3/5 *three fifths* 7/10 *seven tenths*
A whole number + a fraction can be followed directly by a plural noun:
2 ¼ miles == *two and a quarter miles*
½ (*half*) can be followed directly by a noun but other fractions require **of** before a noun:
half a second but a quarter of a second (See also 2 E.)
half + of can also be used, but the of is optional:
Half (of) my earnings go in tax.

351 Points to notice about ordinal numbers

A Notice the irregular spelling of *fifth, eighth, ninth* and *twelfth*.
B When ordinal numbers are expressed in figures the last two letters of the written word must be added (except in dates):

first = 1st	*twenty-first = 21st*
second = 2nd	*forty-second = 42nd*
third = 3rd	*sixty-third = 63rd*
fourth = 4th	*eightieth = 80th*

C In compound ordinal numbers the rule about and is the same as for compound cardinal numbers: 101st = the hundred and first.
The article **the** normally precedes ordinal numbers:
the sixtieth day *the fortieth visitor*
Titles of kings etc. are written in Roman figures:

Charles V James III Elizabeth II

But in spoken English we use the ordinal numbers preceded by the:
Charles the Fifth *James the Third* *Elizabeth the Second*

352 Dates

The days of the week	The months of the year	
Sunday (Sun.)	January (Jan.)	July
Monday (Mm.)	February (Feb.)	August (Aug.)
Tuesday (Tues.)	March (Mar.)	September (Sept.)
Wednesday (Wed.)	April (Apr.)	October (Oct.)
Thursday (Thurs.)	May	November (Nov.)
Friday (Fri.)	June	December (Dec.)
Saturday (Sat.)		

Days and months are always written with capital letters. Dates are expressed by ordinal numbers, so when speaking we say:
March the tenth, July the fourteenth etc. or the tenth of March etc.
They can, however, be written in a variety of ways; e.g. *March the tenth* could be written:
March 10 10 March *10th of March*
March 10th *10th March* *March the 10th*

B The year
When reading or speaking we use the term **hundred** but not **thousand**. The year 1987 would be read as *nineteen hundred and eighty-seven or nineteen eighty-seven*.
Years before the Christian era are followed by the letters BC (= Before Christ) and years dating from the Christian era are occasionally preceded by the letters AD (= Anno Domini, in

the year of the Lord). The former are read in either way: *1500 BC* would be read as *one thousand five hundred BC or fifteen hundred BC*.

353 Weights, length and liquid measure

A Weights

The English weights table is as follows:

IS ounces (oz.) = 1 pound (Ib.)
14 Rounds = 1 stow (st.)
8 stone = 1 hundredweight (cict.)
20 hundredweight = 1 ton
1 pound == 0-454 kilogram (kg) 2-2 pounds = 1 kilogram 2.204-6 tbs = 1 metric tonne

Plurals

ounce, pound and ton can take a in the plural when they are used as nouns, stone and hundredweight do not take s: e.g. we say six Round of sugar or six pounds of sugar, but ten hundredweight of coal has no alternative.

When used in compound adjectives these terms never take a:
a ten-ton lorry kilo or kilogram usually take s in the plural when used as nouns:
two kilos of apples or two kilograms of apples

B Length

The English table of length is as follows:

12 inches (in.) = 1 foot (ft.)
3 feet = 1 yard (yd.)
1,760 yards = 1 mile (m.)
1 inch = 2.54 centimetres (cm)
1 yard = 0.914 metre (m)
1 mile = 1.609 kilometres (km)

Plurals

When there is more than one inch/mite/centimetre we normally use the plural form of these words:
one inch, ten inches one mile, four miles
one centimetre, five centimetres
When there is more than one foot we can use either foot or feet. feet is the more usual when measuring heights. We can say;
six foot tall or six feet tall two foot long or two feet long When used in compound adjectives the above forms never take the plural form: a two-mile walk, a six-inch ruler.

C Liquid measure

2 pints (Rt.) = 1 quart (qt.) *1 pint = 0.568 litre (I)*
4 quarts = 1 gallon (gal.) *1 gallon = 4.55 litres*

D Traditionally British measurements have been made in ounces, inches, pints etc. but there is now a gradual move towards the metric system.

37 Spelling rules

For noun plurals, see also 12. For verb forms, see also 165, 172, 175.

354 Introduction

Vowels are: **a e i o u**
Consonants are: **b c d f g h j k l m n p q r s t v w x y z**
A suffix is a group of letters added to the end of a word:
beauty, beautiful (*ful* is the suffix.)

355 Doubling the consonant

A Words of one syllable having one vowel and ending in a single consonant double the consonant before a suffix beginning with a vowel:
hit + ing = hitting but keep, keeping (two vowels)
knit + ed = knitted help, helped (two consonants)
run + er = runner love, lover (ending in a vowel) qu here is considered as one consonant: quit, quitting. When the final consonant is w, x or y it does not double:
row + ed -= rowed box + ing = boxing

B Two- or three-syllable words ending in a single consonant following a single vowel double the final consonant when the stress falls on the last syllable. (The stressed syllable is in bold type.)
acquit + ed = acquitted but murmur + ed = murmured begin + er -= beginner answer + er = answerer deter + ed == deterred orbit + ing = orbiting recur + ing = recurring focus + ed, however, can be spelt focused orfocussed and bias + ed can be spelt biased or biassed.

C The final consonant of handicap, kidnap, worship is also doubled:
handicap, handicapped worship, worshipped kidnap, kidnapped

D Words ending in 1 following a single vowel or two vowels pronounced separately usually double the 1:
appal, appalled duel, duellist repel, repellent cruel, cruelly model, modelling quarrel, quarrelling dial, dialled refuel, refuelled signal, signalled distil, distiller

356 Omission of a final **e**

A Words ending in e following a consonant drop the e before a suffix beginning with a vowel:
believe + er = believer
love + ing = losing
move + able = movable
But riye and singe keep their final e before ing to avoid confusion with die and sing:
dye, dyeing singe, singeing age keeps its e before ing except in American English:
age, ageing
likable can also be spelt likeable. Words ending in ce or ge sometimes retain the e. See 357.
B A final e is retained before a suffix beginning with a consonant:
engage, engagement fortunate, fortunately
hope. hopeful immediate, immediately
sincere, sincerely But the e m able/ible is dropped in the adverb form:
comfortable, comfortably incredible, incredibly The final e is also dropped in the following words:
argue, argument due, duly
judge, judgement or judgment true, truly
whole, wholly (notice the double 1 here)
C Words ending in ee do not drop an e before a suffix:
agree, agreed, agreeing, agreement foresee, foreseeing, foreseeable

357 Words ending in **ce** and **ge**

A Words ending in **ce** or **ge** retain the e before a suffix beginning with a, o or u:

courage, courageous *peace, peaceful*
manage, manageable *replace, replaceable*
outrage, outrageous *trace, traceable*

This is done to avoid changes in pronunciation, because **c** and **g** are generally pronounced soft before **e** and **i**, but hard before **a, o** or **u**.

B Words ending in **ce** change the **e** to **i** before **ous**:

grace, gracious *space, spacious*
malice, malicious *vice, vicious*

358 The suffix **ful**

When **full** is added to a word the second **l** is dropped:

beauty + *full* = *beautiful* (but note adverb form beautifully)
use + *full* = *useful* (but note adverb form usefully)

If the word to which the suffix is added ends in **ll** the second **l** is dropped here also: *skill* + *full* = *skilful*.
Note full + fill = fulfil.

359 Words ending in **y**

Words ending in y following a consonant change the **y** to **i** before any suffix except **ing**:
carry + ed = earned but carry + ing = carrying
happy + !y = happily hurry + ing = hurrying
sunny + er = sunnier y following a vowel does not change:
obey + ed = obeyed play + er = player For plural forms of nouns, see 12.

360 **ie** and **ei**

The normal rule is that i comes before e except after c:
believe, sieve but deceive, receipt There are however the following exceptions:

beige	feint	heir	reign	their
counterfeit	foreign	inveigh	rein	veil
deign	forfeit	inveigle	seize	vein
eiderdown	freight	leisure	skein	weigh
eight	heifer	neigh	sleigh	weight
either	height	neighbour	sleight	weir
feign	heinous	neither	surfeit	weird

361 Hyphens

A Compound words are formed by linking two or more words to make one unit. We can write the compound:

(a) as one word: *bystander, hairdresser, teacup*
(b) as two or more words: *amusement arcade, post office*
(c) with a hyphen: *launching-pad, lay-by, tooth-brush*

It is impossible in most cases to give a firm rule on when a hyphen should be used. When a compound has become familiar through constant use, the hyphen can be omitted: layby, toothbrush. This, however, does not always happen and a native English writer is quite capable of writing toothbrush, tooth brush or tooth-brush at different times.

If the compound is formed of monosyllables, it is more likely to be written as one word. In cases of doubt it is better to omit hyphens or consult a modem dictionary.

B Hyphens are necessary;

(a) when pronunciation or meaning might be unclear without them:

co-operate *re-cover* (= cover again)

(b) when words form a compound in a particular sentence:

a do-it-yourself shop

a go-as-you-please railway ticket

(c) in adjective phrases dealing with age, size, weight and duration of time:

a five-year-old child *a ten-ton vehicle*

a six-foot wall *a five-minute interval*

Note that the compound is not in the plural form: no s. Adverb/participle compounds used as adjectives are commonly hyphenated, especially when there is a danger of misunderstanding:

low-flying aircraft *quick-dissolving sugar*

C Hyphens are used in a temporary way to divide a word at the end of a line. The division must be made at a natural break in the word, i.e. between syllables;

dis-cauraged *look-ing* *inter-val*

A monosyllable should not be divided.

31 Indirect speech

307 Direct and indirect (or reported) speech

There are two ways of relating what a person has said: direct and indirect.

In direct speech we repeat the original speaker's exact words:

He said, 'I have lost my umbrella.'

Remarks thus repeated are placed between inverted commas, and a ' comma or colon is placed immediately before the remark. Direct speech is found in conversations in books, in plays, and in quotations.

In indirect speech we give the exact meaning of a remark or a speech, without necessarily using the speaker's exact words:

He said (that) he had lost his umbrella.

There is no comma after **say** in indirect speech. **that** can usually be omitted after say and tell + object. But it should be kept after other verbs: **complain, explain, object, point out, protest** etc. Indirect speech is normally used when conversation is reported verbally, though direct speech is sometimes employed here to give a more dramatic effect.

When we turn direct speech into indirect, some changes are usually necessary. These are most easily studied by considering statements, questions, and commands separately.

308 Statements in indirect speech: tense changes necessary

A Indirect speech can be introduced by a verb in a present tense: He says that. . . This is usual when we are:

(a) reporting a conversation that is still going on

(b) reading a letter and reporting what it says

(c) reading instructions and reporting them

(d) reporting a statement that someone makes very often, e.g. Tom says that he'll never get married.

When the introductory verb is in a present, present perfect or future tense we can report the direct speech without any change of tense:

PAUL (phoning from the station): I'm trying to get a taxi.

ANN (to Mary, who is standing beside her): Paul says he is trying to get a taxi.

B But indirect speech is usually introduced by a verb in the past tense. Verbs in the direct speech have then to be changed into a corresponding past tense. The changes are shown in the following table. (The that has been omitted in the last five examples.)

Direct speech	Indirect speech
Simple present	Simple past
‘I never ml meat.' he explained	= He explained that he never ate meat.
Present continuous	Past continuous
'I'm waiting/or Ann.' he said	= He said (thai) he was waiting for Ann.
Present perfect	Past perfect

I have found a flat,' he said	= He said (that) he had found a flat.
Present perfect continuous	Past perfect continuous
Hesaid, 'I've been waiting forages'	= He said he had been waiting for ages.
Simple past	Past perfect
I took it home with me,' she said	= She said she had taken it home with her.
Future	Conditional
He said, I will/shall be in Paris m Monday'	= He said he would be in Paris cm Monday.
Future continuous	Conditional continuous
'I will/shall be using the car myself on the 24th,' she said	= She said she'd be using the car herself on the 24th.
But note,	
Conditional	Conditional
I said, 7 would/should like to see it'	= I said I would/should like to see it. (No tense change. See also 227.)

C Note on I/we shall/should

'I/we shall' normally becomes he/she/they would in indirect speech:

I shall be 21 tomorrow,' said Bill = Bill said he would be 21 the following day. But if the sentence is reported by the original speaker, 'I/we shall' can become either I/we should or I/we would, would is the more common.

Similarly 'I/we should' usually becomes he/she/they would in indirect speech:

'If I had the instruction manual I should/would know what to do,'
said Bill =
Bill said that if he had the instructions he would know what to do. But if the sentence is reported by the original speaker 'I/we should' can either remain unchanged or be reported by would- See last example in B above.

309 Past tenses sometimes remain unchanged

A In theory the past tense changes to the past perfect, but in spoken English it is often left unchanged, provided this can be done without causing confusion about the relative times of the actions. For example, He said. 'I loved her' must become He said he had loved her as otherwise there would be a change of meaning. But He said, 'Ann arrived on Monday' could be reported He said Ann arrived/had arrived on Monday.

B The past continuous tense in theory changes to the past perfect continuous but in practice usually remains unchanged except when it refers to a completed action:

She said, 'We were thinking of selling the house but we have decided not to' =
She said that they had been thinking of selling the house but had decided not to. But He said, 'When I saw them they were playing tennis' =
He said that when he saw them they were playing tennis.

C In written English past tenses usually do change to past perfect but there are the following exceptions:

1 Past/Past continuous tenses in time clauses do not normally change:

He said, 'When we were living/lived in Paris . . .' =
He said that when they were living in Paris . . . The main verb of such sentences can either remain unchanged or become the past perfect:
He said, 'When we were living/lived in Paris we often saw Paul' =
fie said that when they were living/lived in Paris they often saw/had often seen Paul.

2 A past tense used to describe a state of affairs which still exists when the speech is reported remains unchanged:

She said, 'I decided not to buy the house because it was on a main road' = She said that she had decided not to buy the house because it was on a main road.

310 Unreal past tenses (subjunctives) in indirect speech

A Unreal past tenses after wish, would rather/sooner and it is time

do not change:

'We wish we didn't have to take exams.' said the children = The children said they wished they didn't have to take exams.

'Bill wants to go alone,' said Ann, 'but I'd rather he went with a group' = Ann said that Bill wanted to go alone but that she 'd rather he went with a group.

'It's time we began planning our holidays,' he said = He said that it was time they began planning their holidays.

B **I/he/she/we/they had better** remains unchanged, **you had better** can remain unchanged or be reported by advise + object + infinitive (see 120):

'The children had better go to bed early,' said Tom = Tom said that the children had better go to bed early.

'You'd better not drink the water,' she said = She advised/warned us not to drink the water.

C Conditional sentences types 2 and 3 remain unchanged (see 229):

'If my children were older I would emigrate,' he said = He said that if his children were older he would emigrate.

311 **might, ought to, should, would, used** to in indirect statements

A might remains unchanged except when used as a request form:

He said, 'Ann might ring today' = He said that Ann might ring (that day).

But 'You might post these for me' he said = He asked me to post them for him. (See 285 for requests.)

B ought to/should for obligation or assumption remains unchanged:

'They ought to/should widen this road,' I said = I said that they ought to/should widen the road. I said,

'I should be back by six' (I assume I will be) = I said I should be back by six.

C But you ought to/you should, if used to express advice rather than obligation, can be reported by advise + object + infinitive, you must can also express advice and be reported similarly.

'You ought to/should/must read the instructions,' said Ann = Ann advised/urged/warned me to read the instructions.

D The advice form 'Ifl were you I should/would . . .' is normally reported by advise + object + infinitive:

'If I were you I'd wait,'I said = I advised him to waif,

E The request form 'I should/would be (very) grateful if you would . . .' is normally reported by ask + object + infinitive:

'I'd be very grateful if you 'd keep me informed,' he said = He asked me to keep him informed.

F **would** in statements doesn't change. But see 284 for **would** in requests etc.

G **used to** doesn't change:

'I know the place well because I used to live here,' he explained = He explained thai he knew the place well because he used to live there.

(For could, see 312; for must, see 325.)

312 could in indirect statements

(For could interrogative, see 283-4.)

A **could** for ability

1 **could** for present ability does not change:

'I can't/couldn't stand on my head.' he said = He said he couldn't stand on his head.

2 **could** for future ability can remain unchanged or be reported by would be able:

He said, 'I could do it tomorrow' = He said he could do it/would be able to do it the next day.

could in type 2 conditional sentences is reported similarly:

'If I had the tools I could mend it,' he said = He said that if he had the tools he could/would be able to mend it. would be able here implies that the supposition may be fulfilled. (Perhaps he'll be able to borrow tools.)

could in type 3 conditional sentences is reported unchanged.

could for past ability can remain unchanged or be reported by had been able:

'I could read when I was three.' she boasted = She boasted that she could/had been able to read when she was three.

B **could** for permission

In type 2 conditional sentences **could** can remain unchanged or be reported by **would be allowed to**:

'If I paid my fine I could walk out of prison today,' he said = He said that if he paid his fine he could/would be allowed to walk etc.

could in the past can remain unchanged or be reported by was/were allowed to or had been allowed to:

He said, 'When I was a boy I could stay up as long as I liked' = He said that when he was a boy he could/was allowed to stay up or He said that as a boy he was/had been allowed etc.

313 Indirect speech: pronoun and adjective

Pronouns and possessive adjectives usually change from first or second to third person except when the speaker is reporting his own words:

He said, 'I've forgotten the combination of my safe' = He said that he had forgotten the combination of his safe.

I said, 'I like my new house' = I said that I liked my new house, (speaker reporting his own words)

Sometimes a noun must be inserted to avoid ambiguity: Tom said. 'He cane in through the window' would not normally be reported Tom said he had come in through the window as this might imply that Tom himself had come in this way; but if we use a noun there can be no confusion:

Tom said that the man/burglar/cat etc, had come in . . .

Pronoun changes may affect the verb:

He says. 'I know her' = He says he knows her.

He says, '! shall be there' = He says that he will be there.

B this and these

this used in time expressions usually becomes that:

He said, 'She is coming this week' =

He said that she was coming that week. Otherwise this and that used as adjectives usually change to the:

He said, 'I bought this pearl/these pearls for my mother' =

He said that he had bought the peart/pearls for his mother. this, these used as pronouns can become it, they/them:

He showed me two bullets. 'I found these embedded in the panelling,'

he said =

He said he had found them embedded in the panelling.

He said, 'We will discuss this tomorrow' = He said that they would discuss it/the waiter the next day. this, these (adjectives or pronouns), used to indicate choice or to distinguish some things from others, can become the one(s) near him etc., or the statement can be reworded:

'I'll have this (one),' he said to me = He said he would have the one near him or

He pointed to/touched/showed me the one he wanted.

314 Expressions of time and place in indirect speech

A Adverbs and adverbial phrases of time change as follows:

Direct	Indirect
today	*that day*
yesterday	*the day before*
the day before yesterday	*two days before*
tomorrow	*the next day/the following day*
the day after tomorrow	*in two days' time*
next week/year etc.	*the following week/year etc.*
last week/year etc.	*the previous week/year etc.*

a year etc. ago	*a year before/the previous year*

'I saw her the day before yesterday,' he said = He said he'd seen her two days before.
'I'll do it tomorrow,' he promised = He promised that he would do it the next day.
'I'm starting the day after tomorrow, mother.' he said = He told his mother that he was starting in two days' time.

She said, 'My father died a year ago' = She said that her father had died a year before/the previous year.

B But if the speech is made and reported on the same day these time changes are not necessary:

At breakfast this morning he said. 'I'll be very busy today' = At breakfast this morning he said that he would be very busy today.

C Logical adjustments are of course necessary if a speech is reported one/two days after it is made. On Monday Jack said to Tom:

I'm leaving the day after tomorrow.

If Tom reports this speech on the next day (Tuesday) he will probably say:

Jack said he was leaving tomorrow.

If he reports it on Wednesday, he will probably say:

Jack said he was leaving today.

D **here** can become **there** but only when it is clear what place is meant:

At the station he said, 'I'll be here again tomorrow' = He said that he 'd be there again the next day.
*Usually **here** has to be replaced by some phrase:*
She said, 'You can sit here, Tom' = She told Tom that he could sit beside her etc. But He said, 'Come here, boys' would normally be reported:

He called the boys.

315 Infinitive and gerund constructions in indirect speech

A **agree/refuse/offer/promise/threaten** + infinitive can sometimes be used instead of say (that):

ANN: Would you wait half an hour? TOM: All right = Tom agreed to wait or Tom said he would wait.
ANN: Would you lend me another £50?
TOM: No. I won't lend you any more money = Tom refused to lend her any more money or Tom said thai he wouldn't lend etc.
PAUL: I'll help you if you like, Ann = Paul offered to help her or
Paul said that he'd help her. (See also shall I?, 318.)
ANN: I'll pay you back next week. Really I will. = Ann promised to pay him back the following week or
Ann said that she would pay him back or
Ann assured him that she would pay him back.
KIDNAPPERS: If you don't pay the ransom at once we'll kill your daughter = The kidnappers threatened to kill his daughter if he didn 't Ray the ransom at once or The kidnappers said that they would kill etc:
(For object + infinitive constructions, see 320.)

B **accuse** . . . **of/admit/apologize for/deny/insist on** + gerund can sometimes be used instead of say (that):

TOM took the money!' might be reported
He accused me of taking the money.
'I stole/didn't steal it' might be reported
I admitted/denied stealing it.
'I'm sorry I'm late,' he said might be reported
He apologized for being late or
He said,he was sorry he was tale.
BILL: Let me pay/or myself.
TOM: Certainly not! I'll pay! might be reported
Tom insisted on paying.

316 **say, tell** and alternative introductory verbs

A say and tell with direct speech

1 say can introduce a statement or follow it:
Tom said, 'I've just heard the news' or 'I've just heard the news,' Tom said. Inversion of say and noun subject is possible when say follows the statement:
'I've just heard the news,' said Tom. say + to + person addressed is possible, but this phrase must follow the direct statement; it cannot introduce it:
'I'm leaving at once,' Tom said to me. Inversion is not possible here.

2 tell requires the person addressed:
Tell me. He told us. I'll tell Tom. except with tell lies/stories/the truth, when the person addressed need not be mentioned:
He told (me) lies. I'll tell (you) a story. tell used with direct speech must be placed after the direct statement:
'I'm leaving at once,' Tom told me.
Inversion is not possible with tell.

B **say** and **tell** with indirect speech

Indirect statements are normally introduced by say, or tell + object. say 4- to + object is possible but much less usual than tell + object:

He said he'd just heard the news.
He told me that he'd just heard the news.

Note also **tell . . . how/about**:

He told us how he had crossed the mountains.
He told us about crossing the mountains.
He told us about his journeys.

(For say and tell with indirect commands, see 320-1.)

Other useful verbs are:

add*	complain*	point out
admit*	deny*	promise*
answer*	explain*	protest*
argue*	grumble*	remark*
assure + object	object*	remind + object
boast*	observe*	reply*

These can be used with direct or indirect speech. With direct speech they follow direct statements;
'It won't cost more,' Tom assured us.
Starred verbs can be inverted, provided the subject is a noun:
'But it will take longer,' Bill objected/objected Bill.
'It'll cost too much,' Jack grumbled/grumbled Jack. They can all introduce indirect statements. that should be placed after the verb:
Tom assured us that it wauldn 't cost more. But Bill objected/pointed out that it would take longer.

D **murmur, mutter, shout, stammer, whisper** can precede or follow direct statements or questions. With noun subjects the verb can be inverted as shown above:
'You're late,' whispered Tom/Tom whispered.
They can introduce indirect statements, that is usually necessary:

Tom whispered that we were late.

There are, of course, a lot of other verbs describing the voice or the tone of voice, e.g. *bark, growl, roar, scream, shriek, snarl, sneer, yell*. But these are more common with direct than indirect speech.

317 Questions in indirect speech

Direct question: *He said, 'Where is she going?'*
Indirect question: *He asked where she was going.*

When we turn direct questions into indirect speech, the following changes are necessary. Tenses, pronouns and possessive adjectives, and adverbs of time and place change as in statements.
The interrogative form of the verb changes to the affirmative form. The question mark (?) is therefore omitted in indirect questions:

He said, 'Where does she live?' = He asked where she lived.

With affirmative verb questions (see 55) this change is obviously not necessary:

'Who lives next door?' he said = He asked who lived next door.

'What happened?' she said = She asked what had happened.

If the introductory verb is .say, it must be changed to avert of inquiry, e.g. ask, inquire, wonder, want to know etc.:

He said, 'Where is the station?' = He asked where the station was.

ask, inquire, wonder can also be used in direct speech. They are then usually placed at the end of the sentence:
'Where is the station?' he inquired.
C ask can be followed by the person addressed (indirect object):
Heasked, 'What have you got in your bag?' =
He asked (me) what I had got in my bag. But inquire, wonder, want to know cannot take an indirect object, so if we wish to report a question where the person addressed is mentioned, we must use ask:
He said. 'Mary, when is the next train?' =
He asked Mary when the next train was. If we use inquire, wonder or want to know we must omit Mary.
D If the direct question begins with a question word (when, where, who, how, why etc.) the question word is repeated in the indirect question:
Hesaid, 'Why didn't you put on the brake?' =
He asked (her) why she hadn 'f put on the brake.
She said, 'What do you want?' =
She asked (them) what they wanted.
E If there is no question word, if or whether must be used:
7s anyone there?' he asked = He asked if/whether anyone was there.
1 Normally we can use either if and whether, if is the more usual:
'Do you know Bill?' he said =
He asked if/whether I knew Bill.
'Did you see the accident?' the policeman asked =
The policeman asked if/whether I had seen the accident.
2 whether can emphasize that a choice has to be made:
'Do you want to go by air or sea?' the travel agent asked = The travel agent asked whether I wanted to go by air or by sea. Note whether or not:
'Do you want to insure your luggage or not?' he asked == He asked whether or not I wanted to insure my luggage or He asked if I wanted to insure my luggage or not.
3 whether + infinitive is possible after wonder, want to know:
'Shall/Should 1wait for them or go on?' he wondered =
He wondered whether to wait for them or go on or
He wondered whether he should wait for them or go on.
inquire + whether + infinitive is possible but less usual.
(For whether + infinitive, see also 242 B.)
4 whether is neater if the question contains a conditional clause as otherwise there would be two ifs:
'If you get the job will you move to York?' Bill asked = Bill asked whether, if I got the job, I'd move to York.
Questions beginning shall I/we? in indirect speech Questions beginning shall I/we? can be of four kinds.
Speculations or requests for information about a future event:
'Shall I ever see them again?' he wondered. 'When shall I know the result of the test?' she asked.
These follow the ordinary rule about shall/will. Speculations are
usually introduced by wonder:
He wondered if he would ever see them again. She asked when she would know the result of the test.

Requests for instructions or advice:
'What shall I do with it?' = 'Tell me what to do with it.' These are expressed in indirect speech by ask, inquire etc., with should or the be + infinitive construction. Requests for advice are normally reported by should:
'Shall we post it. sir?' he said =
He asked the customer if they were to post/if they should post if.
'What shall I say, mother?' she said =
She asked her mother what she should say. (request for advice) When a choice is required we normally use whether in indirect speech. whether + infinitive is sometimes possible (see also 317 E):
'Shall I lock the car or leave it unlocked?' he said =
He asked whether he should/was to lock the car or leave it
unlocked or He asked whether to lock the car etc.
Offers:
'Shall I bring you some tea?' could be reported
He offered to bring me some tea.
Note that 'Wouldyou like me to bring you some tea?' and 'I'll bnngyou some tea if you like' could also be reported by offer.
Suggestions:
'Shall we meet at the theatre?' could be reported He suggested meeting at the theatre.
Questions beginning will you/would you/could you?
These may be ordinary questions, but may also be requests, invitations, or, very occasionally, commands (see 284. 286, 320):
He said. 'Will you be there tomorrow?' (ordinary question) =
He asked if she would be there the next day.
'Will you stand still!'he shouted = He shouted at me to standstill"^!
He told/ordered me to stand still.
'Wouldyou like to live in New York?' he asked =
He asked if I would tike to live in New York.
'Wilt/Would you file these letters, please?' he said =
He asked/told me to/lie the Setters.
'Would you like a lift?' said Ann = Ann offered me a lift. 'Would you like to come round/Could yw come round for a drink?'
he said =
He invited me (to come) round for a drink.
'Could you live on £25 a week?' he asked =
He asked if I could live on £25 a week.
'Could/Would you give me a hand?' she said =
She asked us to give her a hand.
'Could/Would you show me the photos?' she said =
She asked me to show her the photos or She asked to see the photos. (For can/could/may/might + I/we?, see 283. For requests for permission, see 131.)
320 Commands, requests, advice in indirect speech
Direct command: He said, 'Lie down, Tom.'
Indirect command: He told Tom to He down.
Indirect commands, requests, advice are usually expressed by a verb of comraand/request/advice + object + infinitive (== the object -i- infinitive construction).
A The following verbs can be used: advise, ask, beg, command, encourage, entreat, forbid, implore, invite, order, recommend, remind, request, tell, urge, warn.
(Note that say is not included in this list. For indirect commands/ requests reported by say, see 321.)
Hesaid. 'Get your coat, Tom!' = He told Tom to get his coat. 'You had better hurry, Bill!' she said = She advised Bill to hurry.
B Negative commands, requests etc. are usually reported by not •+• infinitive:
'Don't swim out too far, boys,' I said =
I warned/told the boys not to swim out too far. forbid can also be used for prohibitions, but is more common in the passive than in the active.

C Verbs in A above require object + infinitive, i.e. they must be followed directly by the person addressed without preposition (see also 89). The person addressed is often not mentioned in direct commands, requests
etc.: He said, 'Go away!' When reporting such commands/requests therefore we must add a noun
or pronoun:
He told me/him/her/us/them/the children to go away. ask diners from the other verbs in A in that it can also be followed directly by the infinitive of certain verbs, e.g. see, speak to, talk to:
He said. 'Could I see Tom, please?' =
He asked to see Tom. (See also 283.) But this is quite different from the ask + object + infinitive type of request.
Both ask and beg can be followed by the passive infinitive:
'Do. please, send me to a warm climate,' he asked/begged = He asked/begged us to send him to a warm climate or He asked/begged to be sent to a warm climate.
Examples of indirect commands, requests, advice Note that direct commands are usually expressed by the imperative, but that requests and advice can be expressed in a variety of ways (see 283-7):
'If I were you, I'd slop taking tranquillizers,' I said =
I advised him to stop taking tranquillizers. (See 311 D.)
'Why don't you take off your coat?'he said =
He advised me to take off my coat. (See also 287.)
' Would/Could you show me your passport, please?' he said =
He asked me to show him my passport or
He asked me for/He asked to see my passport.
'You might post some letters for me,' said my boss =
My boss asked me to post some letters for him.
'If you 'd just sign the register,' said the receptionist =
The receptionist asked him to sign the register.
'Do sit down.' said my hostess =-
My hostess asked/invited me to sit down.
'Please, please don't take any risks,' said his wife =
His wife begged/implored him not to take any risks.
'Forget all about this you »g man,' said her parents: 'don't see him ' again or answer his letters' =
Her parents ordered her to forget all about the young man and told
her not to see him again or answer his letters or
She was ordered to forget all about the young man and forbidden to ._ see him again or answer his tetters, (passive construction)
'Don't forget to order the wine.' said Mrs Pitt =
Mrs Pitt reminded her husband to order the wine.
'Try again,' said Ann's friends encouragingly =
Ann's friends encouraged her to fry again.
'Go on, apply for the job,'said Jack =
Jack urged/encouraged me to apply for the job.
' You had better not leave your car unlocked,' said my friends;
'there's been a lot of stealing from cars' = ' My friends warned me not to leave my car unlocked as there had been a lot of stealing from cars.
will you . . . sentences are normally treated as requests and reported by ask:

'Will all persons not travelling please go ashore,' he said = He asked at! persons not travelling to go ashore. But if a will you sentence is spoken sharply or irritably, and the ' please is omitted, it might be reported by tell or order;
'Will you be quiet!/Be quiet, will you!' he said = He told/ordered us to be quiet.

321 Other ways of expressing indirect commands

A say/tell + subject + be + infinitive:
He said/told me that I was to wait. This is a possible alternative to the tell + infinitive construction, so that:
He said, 'Don't open the door' could be reported
He told me not to open the door or

fie said that I wasn 't to open the door. The be + infinitive construction is particularly useful in the following cases:
1 When the command is introduced by a verb in the present tense:
He says, 'Meet me at the station' = He says that we are to meet him at the station. (He tells us to meet him would be much less likely.)
2 When the command is preceded by a clause (usually of time or condition):
He said, 'If she leaves the house follow her' could be reported He said that if she left the house I was to follow her. He told me to follow her if she left the house would be equally possible here but note that if we use the tell + infinitive construction we must change the order of the sentence so as to put the command first. Sometimes this would result in a rather confusing sentence. For example, the request If you see Ann tell her to ring me would become He told me to tell Ann to ring him if I saw her. Such requests can only be reported by the be + infinitive construction:
He said that if I saw Ann I was to tell her to ring him.
B say/tell (+ that) + subject + should
1 say or tell with a should construction normally indicates advice rather than command:
He said, 'If your brakes are bad don't drive so fast' =
He said/told me that if my brakes were bad I shouldn 't drive so fast
or
He advised me not to drive so fast if my brakes were bad. (Note
change of order here, as with tell + infinitive above.)
2 Advice can also be expressed by advise, recommend and urge + that. . . should. This is particularly useful in the passive (see 302 E):
'! advise cancelling the meeting.' he said s He advised that the meeting should be cancelled.
3 command and order can also be used with should or a passive infinitive;
'Evacuate the area!' ordered the superintendent =
The superintendent ordered that everyone should lease the area or
ordered that the area should be evacuated or
ordered the area to be evacuated.
4 Note that when an indirect command is expressed by an object + infinitive construction, as in 320, there is normally the idea that the
person who is to obey the command is addressed directly. But when the command is expressed by the be + infinitive construction (A above) or by a should construction (B3 above) the recipient of the command need not necessarily be addressed directly. The command may be conveyed to him by a third person.

322 let's, let us, let him/them in indirect speech

let's
let's usually expresses a suggestion and is reported by suggest in
indirect speech:
He said, 'Let's leave the case at the station'
would be reported:
He suggested leaving the case at the station or He suggested that they/we should leave the case at the station.
(See 289 for constructions with suggest.) He said, 'Let's stop now and finish it later'
would be reported:
He suggested stopping then and finishing it later or He suggested that they/we should stop then and finish it later.
Similarly in the negative:
He said, 'Let's not say anything about it till we hear the facts' = He suggested not saying anything/saying nothing about it till they heard the facts or He suggested that they shouldn 't say anything till they heard the facts.
But let's not used alone in answer to an affirmative suggestion is often
reported by some phrase such as opposed the idea/was against
it/objected. So that we could report:
'Let's sell the house,' said Tom. 'Lei's not,' said Ann by Tom suggested selling the house hut Ann was against it.
(For other suggestion forms, see 289.) ;. let's/let us sometimes expresses a call to action. It is then usually

reported by urge/advise + object + infinitive (see also 320):
The strike leader said, 'Let's show the bosses that we are united' = The strike leader urged the workers to show the bosses that they were united.

323 let him/them

In theory let him/them expresses a command. But very often the speaker has no authority over the person who is to obey the command;
7('s not my business,' said the postman. 'Let the government do
something about it.'
Here, the speaker is not issuing a command but expressing an obligation. Sentences of this type are therefore normally reported by ought/should:
He said that if wasn 't his business and that the government ought
to/should do something about it.
2 Sometimes, however, let him/them does express a command. It is then usually reported by say + be + infinitive (see 321):
'Let the boys clear up this mess,' said the headmaster -= The headmaster said that the boys were to clear up the mess. 'Let the guards'be armed,' he ordered = He ordered that the guards should be armed.
3 Sometimes let him/them is more a suggestion than a command. In such cases it is usually reported by suggest, or say + should (see 289):
She said, 'Let them go to their consul. He 'll be able to help them' = She suggested their/them going to their consul etc. or She suggested that they should go to their consul or She said that they should go to their consul.
4 let him/them can also indicate the speaker's indifference:
'The neighbours will complain,' said Ann.
'Let them (complain),' said Tom = Tom expressed indifference or
Tom said he didn't mind (if they complained).
C let there be
Here the speaker could be ordering, advising, urging or begging:
'Let there be no reprisals,' said the widow of the murdered man = The widow urged/begged that there should be no reprisals.
D let is also an ordinary verb meaning allow/permit:
'Let him come with us, mother; I'll take care of him,' I said =
I asked my mother to let him come with us and promised to take care
of him.

323 Exclamations and yes and no

A Exclamations usually become statements in indirect speech. The exclamation mark disappears.
1 Exclamations beginning What <a). . . or How ... can be reported
(a) by exclaim/say that:
He said, 'What a dreadful idea!' or 'How dreadful." = He exclaimed that it was a dreadful idea/was dreadful
or (b) by give an exclamation of delight/disgust/horror/relief/
surprise etc-
Alternatively, if the exclamation is followed by an action we can use the
construction (c) with an exclamation of delight/disgust etc. +
he/she etc. + verb.
2 Other types of exclamation, such as Good! Marvellous! Splendid! Heavens! Oh! Ugh! etc. can be reported as in (b) or (c) above:
'Good!' he exclaimed =
He gave an exclamation of pleasure/satisfaction.
' Ugh!' she exclaimed, and turned the programme off =
With an exclamation of disgust she turned the programme off.

Note also:

He said, 'Thank you!' = He thanked me. ;' He said. 'Curse this fog." = He cursed the fog.
He said. 'Good luck!' = He wished me luck.
He said. 'Happy Christmas'.' = He wished me a happy Christmas.
He said, 'Congratulations[9]' = He congratulated me.
He said, 'Liar!' = He called me a liar.
He said, 'Damn!'etc. = He swore.
The notice said: WELCOME TO WALES.' = '• The notice welcomed visitors to Wales.
ri
yes and no are expressed in indirect speech by subject + appropriate ' auxiliary verb:
He said, 'Can you swim?'and I said'No' = He asked (me) if I could swim and I said I couldn't.
Hesaid, 'Will you have time to do it?' and I said 'Yes' = He asked if I would have time to do it and I said that I would.

324 Indirect speech: mixed types

Direct speech may consist of statement + question, question + command, command + statement, or all three together.
Normally each requires its own introductory verb:
'I don't know the way. Do you?' he asked .= ; He said he didn't know the way and asked her if she did/if she knew it.
'Someone's coming,' he said. 'Get behind the screen' =
He said that someone was coming and told me to get behind the
screen.
'I'm going shopping. Can I get you anything?' she said = " She said she was going shopping and asked if she could get me ; anything.
'I can hardly hear the radio,' he said. 'Could you turn it up?' =
He said he could hardly hear the radio and asked her to turn it up.
But sometimes, when the iast clause is a statement which helps to explain the first, we can use as instead of a second introductory verb:
'You'd better wear a coat. it's very cold out.'he said =. He advised me to wear a coat as it was very cold out. 'You'd better not walk across the park alone. People have been
mugged there,' he said =
He warned her not to walk across the park alone as people had been mugged there.
Sometimes the second introductory verb can be a participle:
'Please, please, don't drink too much! Remember thatyou'U have to drive home,' she said =
She begged him not to drink too much, reminding him that he 'd have to drive home.

'Let's shop on Friday. The supermarket will be very crowded on Saturday,' she said =
She suggested shopping on Friday, pointing out that the supermarket would be very crowded on Saturday. (as could be used in both these examples.)
325 must and needn't
A must used for deductions, permanent commands/prohibitions and to express intention remains unchanged. (For must, expressing advice, see 287 A.)
1 Deductions:
She said, 'I'm always running into him; he must live near here!' a She said that. . . he must live in the area.
2 Permanent command:
He said, 'This door must be kept locked' =-He said that the door must be kept locked.
3 must used casually to express intention:
He said, ' We must have a party to celebrate this' = He said that they must have a party to celebrate it.
B must used for obligation can remain unchanged. Alternatively it can be reported by would have to or had to.
1 I/we must reported by would have to
would have to is used when the obligation depends on some future action, or when the fulfilment of the obligation appears remote or uncertain, i.e. when must is clearly replaceable by will have to:
'If the floods get worse we must (will have to) leave the house,' he
said =
If e said that if the floods got worse they would have to leave the

house.
'When it stops snowing we must start digging ourselves out,'
I said =
I said that when it stopped snowing we would have to start digging
ourselves out.
'We must mend the roof properly next year,' he said =
He said that they would have to mend the roof properly the following
year.
7 have just received a letter,' he said. 'I must go home' =
He said that he had just received a letter and would have to go home-
(But had to would be more usual here if he went at once, i.e. had
to'would imply that he went at once.)
2 I/we must reported by had to
had to is the usual form for obligations where times for fulfilment have been fixed, or plans made, or when the obligation is fulfilled fairly promptly, or at least by the time the speech is reported:

He said, 'I must wash my hands' (and presumably did so) =
He said that he had to wash his hands.
Tom said, 'I must be there by nine tomorrow' = { Tom said that he had to be there by nine the next day. ^would have to would be possible here also but would imply that the ^obligation was self-imposed and that no outside authority was involved, ; had to could express either an outside authority (i.e. that someone had ; told him to be there) or a self-imposed obligation. HAH difficulties about had to/would have to can of course be avoided ,:jby keeping must unchanged. In both the above examples must could "'have been used instead of had to/would have to.
you/he/they must is reported similarly:
He said. 'You must start at once' =
He said that she must/had to/would have to start at once. But note that would have to removes the idea of the speaker's authority:
Tom said. 'I/you want to stay on here you must work harder' =
Twn said that if she wanted to stay on she must/would have to work
harder.
must implies that Tom himself insists on her working harder, would
have to merely implies that this will be necessary.
must I/you/he? can change similarly but as must in the interrogative
usually concerns the present or immediate future it usually becomes
had to:
'Must you go so soon?' I said = I asked him if he had to go so soon.
gfaust not
must not usually remains unchanged, you/he must not remains
.pichanged or is expressed as a negative command (see 320-1):
He said, 'You mustn't tell anyone' = f:- He said that she mustn 't ell/wasn 't to tell anyone or
He told her not to tell anyone. ',,
needn't
needn't can remain unchanged and usually does. Alternatively it can i,change to didn't have to/wouldn't have to just as must changes to
•had to/would have to:
He said. 'You needn't wait' = He said that I needn't wait.
I said, 'If you can lend me the money I needn 't go to the bank = i; / said that if he could lend me the money I needn 't/wouldn 't have to
go to the bank.
He said, '1 needn't be in the office till ten tomorrow morning' •=
He said that he needn't/didn't have to be in the office till ten the next ! morning.
"need I/you/he? behaves exactly in the same ways as must I/you/he? ; i.e. it normally becomes had to:
'Need I finish my pudding?' asked the small boy = ^ The small boy asked if he had to finish his pudding.

32 Conjunctions

326 Co-ordinating conjunctions: and, but, both . . . and, or, either ... or, neither . . . nor, not only . . . but also

These join pairs of nouns/adjectives/adverbs/verbs/phrases/clauses:
He plays squash and rugby.
I make the payments and keep the accounts.
He works quickly and/but accurately.
He is small but strong. She is intelligent but lazy.
We came in first but (we) didn't win the race.
Both men and women were drafted into the army.
Ring Tom or Bill. She doesn 't smoke or drink.
He can't (either) read or write.
You can (either) walk up or take the cable car.
He can neither read nor write.
Not only men but also women were chosen.

327 besides, however, nevertheless, otherwise, so, therefore, still, yet, though

These adverbs/conjunctions can join clauses or sentences and are then often known as 'conjuncts'. But they can also, with the exception of nevertheless and therefore (conjunctions), be used in other ways and sometimes as other parts of speech. Their position will vary according to how they are used-
A besides (preposition) means 'in addition to'. It precedes a noun/pronoun/gerund:
Besides doing the cooking I look after the garden. besides (adverb) means 'in addition'. It usually precedes the clause it introduces, but can follow it:
I can't go now; I'm too busy. Besides, my passport is out of date. moreover could replace besides here in more formal English. anyway or in any case could be used here in more informal English:
Anyway, my passport's out of date.
B however (adverb of degree, see 41) precedes its adjective/adverb:
You couldn't earn much, however hard you worked. however (conjunction) usually means 'but'. It can precede or follow its clause or come after the first word or phrase:
I'll offer it to Tom. However, he may not want it or
He may 'not want it however or Tom, however, may not want it or
If, however, he doesn't want it. . .

' But when two contrasting statements are mentioned, however can
t; mean'but/nevertheless/all the same':
They hadn 't trained hard, but/however/nevertheless/all the same they won or they won, however/nevertheless/all the same, (See also 329.)
.• otherwise (adverb) usually comes after the verb:
It must be used in a well-ventilated room. Used otherwise it could be
harmful. otherwise (conjunction) means 'if not/or else':
We must be early; otherwise we won't get a seat. or could also be used here in colloquial English;
We must be early or (else) see won't get a seat.
so (adverb of degree) precedes its adjective/adverb:
I was so hot that. . . They ran so fast that. . . so (conjunction) precedes its clause:
Our cases were heavy, so we look a taxi.
therefore (conjunction) can be used instead of so in formal English. It can come at the beginning of the clause or after the first word or phrase; or before the main verb:
There is fog at Heathrow; the plane, therefore, has been diverted/the plane has therefore been diverted/therefore the plane has been diverted.
••• still and yet can be adverbs of time (see 37):
The children are still up. They haven't had supper yet. '•' still and yet (conjunctions) come at the beginning of the clauses they introduce.

still (conjunction) means 'admitting that/nevertheless'. yet (conjunction) means 'in spite of that/all the same/nevertheless'. You aren 't rich; still, you could do something to help him. They are ugly and expensive; yet people buy them.
though/although normally introduce clauses of concession (see 340):
Though/Although they're expensive, people buy them. though (but not although) can also be used to link two main clauses. though used in this way means 'but' or 'yet' and is placed sometimes at the beginning but more often at the end of its clause:
He says he 'II pay, though I don't think he will or
He says he 'II pay; I don 'f think he will, though.

328 Subordinating conjunctions: **if, that, though/although, unless, when** etc.

Subordinating conjunctions introduce subordinate adverb or noun clauses and are dealt with in the chapters on the different types of clause.

See chapter 21 for conditional clauses, chapter 33 for purpose clauses
chapter 34 for adverb clauses of reason, result, concession, comparison
and time, and chapter 35 for noun clauses.
Some conjunctions have more than one meaning and may introduce
more than one type of clause.
Pairs and groups of conjunctions which are sometimes confused with
each other or with other parts of speech are dealt with below.
329 though/although and in spite of (preposition phrase), despite (preposition)
Two opposing or contrasting statements, such as He had no qualifications and He got the job, could be combined as follows:
A With but, however or nevertheless as shown in 327 above:
He had no qualifications but he got the job.
He had no qualifications; however he got the Job/he got the job,
however.
He had no qualifications; nevertheless he got the job.
B With though/although:
He got the job although he had no qualifications. Although he had no qualifications he got the job.
C With in spite of/despite + noun/pronoun/gerund:
In spite of'having no qualifications he got the job. He got the job in
spite of having no qualifications.
despite = in spite of. It is chiefly used in newspapers and in formal English:
Despite the severe weather conditions all the cars completed the
course.
D Note that though/although requires subject + verb:
Although it was windy . . .
and that in spite of/despite requires noun/pronoun or gerund:
In spite a/the wind . . .
Some more examples:
Although it smelt horrible . . . = In spite of the horrible smell. . . Although it was dangerous . . . = In spite of the danger . . . Though he was inexperienced . . . = In spite of his inexperience/his being inexperienced . . .

330 **for** and **because**

These conjunctions have nearly the same meaning and very often either can be used. It is, however, safer to use **because**, as a clause introduced by **for** (which we will call a 'for-clause') has a more restricted use than a clause introduced by **because**:

1 A for-clause cannot precede the verb which it explains:
Because it was wet he took a taxi. (for is not possible.)

2 A for-clause cannot be preceded by not, but or any conjunction:
He stole, not because he wanted the money but because he liked stealing. (for not possible)

3 A for-clause cannot be used in answer to a question:
Why did you do it? ~ I did it because I was angry. (for not possible)

4 A for-clause cannot be a mere repetition of what has been already stated, but always includes some new piece of information:

He spoke in French. She was angry because he had spoken in French, (for is not possible.) But She was angry, for she didn 't know French. (Here for is correct;

because is also possible.)

The reason for these restrictions is that a for-clause does not tell us why a certain action was performed, buE merely presents a piece of additional information which helps to explain it. Some examples of for-clauses:

The days were- short, for it was now December. He took the food eagerly, for he had eaten nothing since dawn. When I saw her in the river I was frightened- For at that point the currents were dangerous.

In speech a short pause is usually made before a for-clause and in written English this place is usually marked by a comma, and sometimes, as in the last example above, by a full stop. because could be used in the above sentences also, though for is better.

331 **when, while, as** used to express time

A **when** is used, with simple tenses:

1 When one action occurs at the same time as another or in the span of another:

When it is wet the buses are crowded.

When we lived in town we often went to the theatre.

2 When one action follows another:

When she pressed the button the lift stopped.

B **as** is used:

When the second action occurs before the first is finished:

As / left the house I remembered the key.

This implies that I remembered the key before I had completed the action of leaving the house; I was probabiy still in the doorway. *While I was leaving* would have the same meaning here, but *When I left* would give the impression that the act of leaving was complete and the door shut behind me.

2 For parallel actions: *He sang as he worked.*

3 For parallel development:

As the sun rose the fog dispersed.

As it grew darker if became colder = The darker it grew, the colder it became.

As she came to know him better she relied on him more.

As he became more competent he was given more interesting work.

If we used **when** here we would lose all idea of simultaneous progression or development.

4 To mean **while** (= during the time that):

As he stood there he saw two men enter the bar.

But there is no particular advantage in using **as** here, and **while** is safer.

332 as meaning when/while or because/since

A Restricted use of **as** (= **when/while**)

as here is chiefly used with verbs indicating action or development. It is not normally used with the type of verb listed in 168, except when there is an idea of development, as in B3 above. Nor is it normally used with verbs such as *live, stay, remain*.

B as used with the above verbs/types of verb normally means because/since;

As he was tired . . . = Because he was tired . . .

As he knew her well. . . = Because he knew her well. . .

As it contains alcohol. . . = Since/Because it contains alcohol. . .

As he lives near here . . . = Since/Because he lives . . .

C With most verbs, **as** can be used with either meaning:

As/While he shaved he thought about the coming interview.

As/Because he shaved with a blunt razor he didn't make a very good job of it.

If in doubt here, students should use **while** or **because**.

D **as** + noun can mean either **when/while** or **because/since**:

As a student he had known great poverty = When he was a student he had known great poverty.
As a student he gets/got in for half price = Because he is/was a student he gets/got in . . .
As a married man, he has to think of his family = Because/Since he is a married man . . .

as meaning **when/while** here is usually followed by a perfect tense.
as meaning **because/since** can be followed by any tense.
as, when, while used to mean **although, but, seeing that**
as can mean **though/although** but only in the combination adjective + **as** + subject + **to be/to seem/to appear**:

Tired as he was he offered to carry her = Though he was tired he offered to carry her.
Strong as he was, he couldn't lift it.

while can mean **but** and is used to emphasize a contrast:

'At sea' means 'on a ship', while 'at the sea' means 'at the seaside'.
Some people waste food while others haven't enough.

while can also mean **although** and is then usually placed at the beginning of a sentence:

While I sympathize with your point of view I cannot accept it.

when can mean seeing **that/although**. It is therefore very similar to **while**, but is chiefly used to introduce a statement which makes another action seem unreasonable. It is often, though not necessarily, used with a question:

How can you expect your children to be truthful when you yourself tell lies?
It's not fair to expect her to do all the cooking when she has had no training or experience.

Do not confuse **when** and **if**
When he comes implies that we are sure he will come. *If he comes* implies that we don't know whether he will come or not. (For **if** in conditional sentences, see chapter 21.)

33 Purpose

334 Purpose is normally expressed by the infinitive

Purpose can be expressed by:
A The infinitive alone:
He went to France to learn French. They stopped to ask the way. When there is a personal object of the main verb, the infinitive may refer to this and not to the subject:
He sen! Tom to the shop Co buy bread. (Tom was to buy the bread.)
E in order or so as + infinitive
in order + infinitive can imply either that the subject wants to perform the action or that he wants it to happen.
so as + infinitive implies only that the subject wants the action to happen, in order is, therefore, the more generally useful,
in order or so as are used:
1 With a negative infinitive to express a negative purpose:
He left his gun outside in order/so as not to frighten us.
2 With to be and to have:
She left work early in order/so as to be at home when he arrived. She gave up work in order/so as to have more time with the children.
3 When the purpose is less immediate:
He is studying mathematics in order/so as to qualify/or a better job. She learnt typing in order to help her husband with his work.
4 Sometimes in longer sentences, to emphasize that the infinitive indicates purpose:
He was accused of misrepresenting the facts in order/so as to make the scheme seem feasible.
He took much more trouble over the figures than he usually did in order/so as to show his new boss what a careful worker he was. (But in order/so as is not essential and is often omitted.) When the infinitive of purpose precedes the main verb, in order/so as may be placed first:
In order/So as to show his boss what a careful worker he was, he took extra trouble over the figures. (But here also in order/so as may be omitted.)
5 When there is a personal object but we want the infinitive to refer unambiguously to the subject:
He sent his sons to a boarding school in order/so as to have some peace. (He, not his sons, was going to have some peace.) Compare with:

He sent his sons to a boarding school to team to live in a community.
(Not he but his sons were to learn to live in a community.) But this in order/so as construction is not very common. It is more usual to say:
He sent his sons to a boarding school because he wanted to have some peace.
in order (but not so as), used to emphasize that the subject really had this purpose in mind:
He bought diamonds when he was in Amsterdam! ~ That wasn't surprising. He went to Amsterdam in order to buy diamonds, (not for any other purpose)
We could also, however, express^this idea by stressing the first verb and omitting in order: He 'went to Amsterdam to buy diamonds.
Infinitive + noun + preposition:
/ want a case to keep my records in.
I need a corkscrew to open this bottle with. Note that here we are talking about a particular purpose. For a general purpose we use for + gerund:
This is a case for keeping records in.
A corkscrew is a tool for opening bottles.

335 Infinitives of purpose after **go** and **come**

It is not normal to use an infinitive of purpose after the imperative or infinitive of go and come. Instead of Go to find Bill we normally say Go and find Bill; and instead of Come to talk to Ann

we say Come and talk to Ann; i.e. instead of an imperative + an infinitive of purpose we use two imperatives Joined by and. And instead of:
I must go to help my mother and I'll come to check the accounts we normally say:
I must go and help my mother and I'll come and check the accounts. i.e. instead of an infinitive + an infinitive of purpose we use two infinitives joined by and (see 246 I).
But when go and come are used as gerunds or in any present or past tense they take the ordinary infinitive of purpose:
I'm thinking of going to look for mushrooms.
I went to help my mother.
I've come to check the accounts.
I didn 't come to talk to Bill; I came to talk to you.

336 Clauses of purpose

Clauses are necessary when the person to whom the purpose refers is different from the subject of the main clause, or when the original subject is stated again:
Ships carry lifeboats so that the crew can escape if the ship sinks. This knife has a cork handle so that if will float if it falls overboard.

A Purpose clauses are usually expressed by so that + will/would or can/could + infinitive. can/could is used here to mean will/would be able to:
They make £10 notes a different size from £5 notes so that blind people can (= wil! be able to) tell the difference between them. They wrote the notices in several languages so that foreign tourists could (= would be able to) understand them. can and will are used when the main verb is in a present, present perfect or future tense; could and would are used when the main verb is in a past tense. See the examples above and also:
/ light/am lighting/have lit/will light the fire so that the house will be warm when they return.
I have given/will give him a key so that he can get into the house whenever he likes.
I pinned the note to his pillow so that he would be sure to see it. There were telephone points every kilometre so that drivers whose cars had broken down would be able to/could summon help. If that is omitted from purpose clauses with can/could, the idea of purpose may disappear. The sentence He took my shoes so that I couldn't leave the house would normally mean 'He took my shoes to prevent my leaving etc.' but He took my shoes, so I couldn 't leave the house would normally mean 'He took my shoes; therefore I wasn't able to leave'.
B Purpose clauses can also be formed by so that/in order that/that + may/might or shall/should + infinitive. These are merely more formal constructions than those shown in A above. There is no difference in meaning.
Note that so that can be followed by will/can/may/shall or their past forms, while in order that or that are limited to may/shall or their past forms.
that used alone is rarely found except in very dramatic speech or writing, or in poetry.
The rules about sequences of tenses are the same as those shown above. The following are very formal:
We carved their names on the stone so that/in order that future generations should/might know what they had done. These men risk their lives so that/in order that we may live more safely.
may in the present tense is much more comman than shall, which is rarely used. In the past tense either might or should can be used. The student should know the above forms but should not normally need to use them, as for all ordinary purposes so that + can/could or will/would should be quite sufficient.
C Negative purpose clauses are made by putting the auxiliary verb (usually will/would or should) into the negative:
He wrote his diary in code so that his wife wouldn 't be able to read it-He changed his name so that his new friends wouldn Vshouidn 't know that he had once been accused of murder.

Criminals usually telephone from public telephone boxes so that the police won't be able to trace the call.
Negative purpose clauses can, however, usually be replaced bv to prevent + noun/pronoun + gerund, or to avoid + gerund-
He dyed his beard so that we shouldn 't recognize him/to prevent us recognizing him/to avoid being recognized, (passive gerund) She always shopped in another village so that she

wouldn 'i meet her own neighbours/to avoid meeting her own neighbours. These infinitive phrases are preferred to negative purpose clauses.

337 **in case** and **lest**

A **in case**

in case + subject + verb can follow a statement or command:
I don't let him climb trees in case he tears his trousers. This first action is usually a preparation for, or a precaution against, the action in the if-clause, which is a possible future action.
in case + present tense normally has the meaning 'because this may happen/because perhaps this will happen' or 'for fear that this may happen'-
in case + past tense normally means 'because this might happen/because perhaps this would happen' or 'for fear that this would happen'.
Both present tense and past tense here can be replaced by **should** + infinitive. **should** used here would express greater improbability, but this construction is not very usual,

B Tenses with **in case**

Main verb
Future
present tense or Present + in case +
„ .. _(^ should + infinitive Present perfect J
Conditional 1 (. ,
past tense or
Past tense + in case +
n . , should + infinitive
Past perfect ;

I'll make a cake in case someone drops in at the weekend.
I carry a spare wheel in case I have/should have a puncture.
I always keep candles in the house in case there is a power cut.
I always kept candies in the house in case there was a power cut. (See also 227.)

lest means 'for fear that' and is followed by should:

He doesn't/didn't dare to leave the house lest someone should recognize him.

lest is rarely found except in formal written English.

34 Clauses of reason, result, concession, comparison, time

338 Clauses of reason and result/cause

Except for the type shown in A2 and A3 below, both these clauses can be introduced by as or because. But as is safer for clauses of reason (see A below) and because is safer for clauses of result/cause (see B).

A Clauses of reason

1 Introduced by as/because/since;

We camped there as/because/since it was too dark to go on. As/Because/Since it was too dark to go on, we camped there.

2 'in view of the fact that' can be expressed by as/since/seeing that, but not because:

As/Since/Seeing that you are here, you may as well give me a hand. As/Since/Seeing that Tom knows French, he 'd better do the talking.

3 Where as/since/seeing that refers to a statement previously made or understood, it is replaceable by if:

As/Since/Seeing that/If you don't like Bill, why did you invite him? Note the use of if so:

I hope Bill won't come. ~ Ifso (= If you hope he won't come), why did you invite him? For if + so/not, see 347.

B Clauses of result/cause (see also 339) are introduced by because or as:

The fuse blew because we had overloaded the circuit.

He was angry because we were late.

As it/rose hard that night there was ice everywhere next day.

As the soup was very salty we were thirsty afterwards.

C These combinations could also be expressed by two main clauses Joined by so:

It was too dark to go on, so we camped there.

You are here, so you may as well give me a hand.

It froze hard that night, so there was ice everywhere next day.

therefore can also be used. but is normal only in fairly formal sentences:

The Finnish delegate has not yet arrived. We are therefore postponing/We have therefore decided to postpone/Therefore we are postponing the meeting. (Notice possible positions of therefore.)

339 Clauses of result with **such/so . . . that**

A **such** is an adjective and is used before an adjective + noun:

They had such a fierce dog that no one dared to go near their house. He spoke for such a long time that people began to fall asleep.

B **so** is an adverb and is used before adverbs and with adjectives which are not followed by their nouns:

The snow fell so fast that our footsteps were soon covered up. His speech went on for so long thai people began to fall asleep. Their dog was so fierce that no one dared come near it.

But such is never used before much and many. so so is used even when much and many are followed by nouns:

There was so much dust that we couldn't see what was happening. So many people complained that they took the programme off.

C Note that such + a + adjective + noun is replaceable by so + adjective + a + noun, so that 'such a good man" is replaceable by 'so good a man'. This is only possible when a noun is preceded by a/an. It is not a very usual form but may be met in literature. Sometimes for emphasis so is placed at the beginning of the sentence. It is then followed by the inverted form of the verb (see 45):

So terrible was the storm that whole roofs were ripped off.

340 Clauses of concession

These are introduced by although, though (see 327, 329), even though, even if, no matter, however (see 85) and sometimes by whatever, as is also possible, but only in the adjective + as + be construction.

Although/Though/Even though/Even if you don't like him you can still be polite.
No matter what you do, don't touch this switch.
However rich people are, they always seem anxious to make more money.
However carefully you drive, you will probably have an accident eventually.
Whatever you do, don't tell him that I told you this.
Patient as he was, he had no intention of waiting for three hours.

(though he was patient) may + infinitive can be used in hypothetical cases:

However frightened you may tie yourself, you must remain

outwardly calm. may can also imply 'I accept the fact that':

But he's your brother! ~ He may be my brother but I don't trust him!

But may used in this way is part of another main clause, not a clause of concession.
should + infinitive can be used after even if just as it can after if in conditional sentences, to express the idea that the action expressed by the infinitive is not very likely to take place;

Even if he should find out he won't do anything about it.

341 Clauses of comparison

A Comparisons with adjectives and finite verbs (see also 20-2);

It's darker today than it was yesterday.
He doesn'I Ray as much tax as we do/as us.
He spends more than he earns.

Note that + adjective, a colloquial form:

Will it cost £1W? ~ No, it won't cost as much as (ail) that. It won't

be (alt) that expensive. (It won't be as expensive as that.) that + adjective is sometimes used colloquially to mean very.

B Comparisons with adverbs and finite verbs (see also 31-4):
He didn't play as well as we expected/as well as you (did). He sings more loudly than anyone I've ever heard/than anyone else (does). You work harder than he does/than him/than I did at your age.

C Comparisons with adjectives and infinitives or gerunds
Often either can be used, but the infinitive is more usual for a particular action, and gerunds are more usual for genera! statements (see also E below):

It's sometimes as cheap to buy a new one as (it is) (to) repair the old one.
Buying a new one is sometimes as cheap as repairing the old one.
He found that lying on She beach was just as boring as sitting in his office or
He found lying on the beach just as boring as sitting etc. (The infinitive would be less usual here.)
He thinks it (is) safer to drive himself than (to) let me drive.
He thinks that driving himself is safer than letting me drive.
It will soon be more difficult to get a visa than it is now.
Getting a visa will soon be more difficult than it is now.

D In comparisons of the type shown in C above, if we have an infinitive before as/than we will usually have an infinitive (not a gerund) after it, Similarly, if we have a gerund before as/than we will normally have a gerund (not an infinitive) after it. See examples above, But if we have a finite verb + this/that/which before as/than we can have a gerund after it. An infinitive is possible but would be much less usual:

I'll deliver it by hand; this will be cheaper than posting it.
He cleaned his shoes, which was better than doing nothing.

E Infinitives are used with would rather/sooner (see 297-8):
Most people would rather work than starve. I would resign rather than accept him as a partner.

342 Time clauses

A These are introduced by conjunctions of time such as:

after *immediately* *till/until*
as *no sooner . . . than* *when*
as soon as *since* *whenever*
before *the sooner* *while*
hardly . . . when

They can also be introduced by the minute, the moment.
For examples with when, as, while, see 331-3.
For examples with before, see 195 B.

B Remember that we do not use a future form, or a conditional tense, in a time clause.
Each of the following future forms becomes a present tense when we put it in a time clause-
Future simple:
You 'II be back soon. I'll stay till then. = I'll stay till you get back.
be going to:
The parachutist is going to jump. Soon after he jumps his parachute
will open.
The present continuous, used as a future form, and the future continuous:
He's arriving/He 'II be arriving at six but
When he arrives he'll tell us all about the match.
Before he arrives I'll give the children their tea. But the continuous tense can, of course, be used in time clauses when it indicates a continuous action:
Peter and John will be playing/are playing/are going to play tennis
tonight. While they are playing (during this time) we 'II go to the
beach.
The future perfect changes to the present perfect, and the future perfect continuous changes to the present perfect continuous:
I'll have finished in the bathroom in a few minutes.
The moment/As soon as I have finished I'll give you a call.
A conditional tense changes to a past tense:
We knew that he would arrive/would be arriving about six. We knew that till he arrived nothing would be done.
But when when introduces a noun clause it can be followed by a future or conditional tense:
He said. 'When will the train get in?' =
He asked when the train would get in.

C Clauses with since (see also 187-8)
In clauses since is usually followed by perfect tenses (but see 188);
They 've moved house twice since they got married or Since they got married, they 've moved house twice. He said he'd lived in a tent since his house burnt down. It's ages since I sailed/have sailed a boat. I haven't sailed a boat since I left college.

D Clauses with **after**
In clauses **after** is often followed by perfect tenses:

After/When he had rung off I remembered. . .
After/When you 've finished with it, hang it up.

E **hardly/scarcely . . . when, no sooner . . . than** (see also 45) The performance had hardly begun when the lights went out or Hardly had the performance begun when the lights went out.
scarcely could replace hardly here but is less usual,
He had no sooner drunk the coffee than he began to feel drowsy or No sooner had he drunk the coffee than he began to feel drowsy. He no sooner earns any money than he spends it or Immediately he earns any money he spends it. (more colloquial)
Note also the sooner . . . the sooner:
The sooner we start, the sooner we'll be there.

35 Noun clauses

Noun clauses are very often introduced by **that** and are therefore often called **that**-clauses. However, not all noun clauses are **that**-clauses.

343 Noun clauses (that-clauses) as subject of a sentence

A Sentences with noun clause subjects usually begin with it (see 67 D):

It is disappointing that Tom can't come.

'*that Tom can't come'* is the subject.

B The usual construction is it + be/seem + adjective + noun clause (see *26-7):*

It's splendid that you passed your exam.

It's strange that there are no lights on.

Some adjectives require or can take **that . . . should** (see 236):

It is essential that everybody knows/should know what to do.

An alternative construction is **it + be/seem + a** + noun + noun clause. Nouns that can be used here include **mercy, miracle, nuisance, pity, shame, relief, wonder, a good thing** is also possible.

It's a great pity (that) they didn't get married.
It's a wonder (that) you weren't killed.
It's a good thing (thai) you were insured.

I that-clauses after certain adjectives/participles

The construction here is subject + be + adjective/past participle + noun clause:

I am delighted that you passed your exam.

This construction can be used with

(a) adjectives expressing emotion: **glad, pleased, relieved, sorry** (see 26 P)

(b) adjectives/participles expressing anxiety, confidence etc.: **afraid, anxious, aware, certain, confident, conscious, convinced** (see 27). **anxious** requires **that . . . should**.

I'm afraid that I can't come till next week.

Are you certain that this is the right road?

345 **that**-clauses after certain nouns

A **that**-clause can be placed after a large number of abstract nouns. The most useful of these are: **allegation, announcement, belief, discovery, fact, fear, guarantee, hope, knowledge, promise, proposal, report, rumour, suggestion, suspicion, proposal** and **suggestion** require **that** . . . should,

The announcement that a new airport was to be built nearby aroused immediate opposition.

The proposal/suggestion that shops should open on Sundays led to a heated discussion.

A report that the area was dangerous was ignored by the residents.

346 Noun clauses as objects of verbs

A that-clauses are possible after a large number of verbs. Some of the most useful are given below.

acknowledge	*find (wh)*	*recommend*
admit	*forget (wh)*	*remark*
advise	*guarantee*	*remember (wh)*
agree	*happen*	*remind*
allege	*hear (wh)*	*request*
announce	*hope*	*resolve*
appear	*imagine (wh)*	*reveal (wh)*
arrange (wh)	*imply*	*say (wh)*
ask (wh)	*indicate (wh)*	*see (wh)*
assume	*inform*	*seem*
assure	*insist*	*show (wh)*

beg	*know (wh)*	*state (wh)*
believe (wh)	*leam*	*stipulate*
command	*make out (= state)*	*suggest (wh)*
confess	*mean*	*suppose*
consider (wh)	*notice (wh)*	*teach*
declare	*observe*	*tell (wh)*
decide (wh)	*occur to + object*	*think (wh)*
demand	*order*	*threaten*
demonstrate	*perceive*	*turn out*
determine	*presume*	*understand (wh)*
discover	*pretend*	*urge*
doubt	*promise*	*vow*
estimate (wh)	*propose*	*warn*
expect	*prove (wh)*	*wish*
fear	*realize (wh)*	*wonder (wh)*
feel	*recognize*	

and other verbs of communication, e.g. complain, deny, explain etc. (see 316 C).
wh: see E below.

Examples
They alleged/made out that they had been unjustly dismissed. He assumes that we agree with him. I can prove that she did it.
Most of the above verbs can also take another construction (see chapters 23-6). Note however that a verb + that-ctause does not necessarily have the same meaning as the same verb + infinitive/gerund/present participle: He saw her answering the letters means 'He watched her doing this' but He saw that she answered the letters could mean either 'He noticed that she did this' or 'He made sure by supervision that she did this'.

C **appear, happen, occur, seem, turn out** require **it** as subject:
It appears/seems that we have come on the wrong day.
If occurred to me that he might be lying.
It turned out that nobody remembered the address.

D that + subject + should can be used after agree, arrange, be anxious, beg, command, decide, demand, determine, be determined, order, resolve and urge instead of an infinitive construction, and after insist and suggest instead of a gerund:
They agreed/decided that a statue should be put up.
He urged that the matter should go to arbitration.
He suggested that a reward should be offered. (See 235, 302 E.)
Verbs in section A marked '(wh)' can also be followed by noun clauses beginning with **wh**-words: **what, when, where, who, why**, or with **how**:
He asked where he was to go.
They'll believe whatever you tell them.
I forget who told me this.
Have you heard how he is getting on?
I can't think why he left his wife.
I wonder when he will pay me back.

347 **so** and **not** representing a **that**-clause

A After **believe, expect, suppose, think** and after **it appears/seems**:
Will Tom be at the party? -- I expect so/suppose so/think so = I think he will.
For the negative we use:
A negative verb with so:
Will the scheme be a success? ~ I don't believe so/expect so/suppose so/think so.
Are they making good progress? ~ It doesn't seem so.

2 Or an affirmative verb with not:
It won't take long, will it? ~ No, I suppose not or
I don't suppose so.
The plane didn't land in Calcutta, did it? ~ I believe not or
I don't believe so.

B **so** and **not** can be used similarly after hope and be afraid (= be sorry to say):

Is Peter coming with us? ~ I hope so.

Will you have to Ray duly on this? ~ I'm afraid so.

The negative here is made with an affirmative verb + not:

Have you got a work permit? ~ I'm afraid not.

C **so** and **not** can be used after say and tell + object:

How do you know there is going to be a demonstration? ~ Jack said so/Jack told me so.

I told you so! can mean 'I told you that this was the case/that this would happen'. This usually annoys the person addressed. For tell the only negative form is negative verb + so:

Tom didn't tell me so.

For say there are two negative forms, but the meaning is not the same:

Tom didn't say so = Tom didn't say that there would be a demonstration.

Tom said not = Tom said there wouldn't be a demonstration.

D **if + so/not**

so/not after **if** can replace a previously mentioned/understood subject + verb:

Will you be staying another night? If so (= If you are), we can give you a better room. If not (= If you aren't), could you be out of your room by 12:00?

if so/not here usually represents a clause of condition as shown above, but for if so, see also 338 A.

36 Numerals, dates, and weights and measures

348 Cardinal numbers (adjectives and pronouns)

1 one	*11 eleven*	*21 twenty-one*	*31 thirty-one etc.*
2 two	*12 twelve*	*22 twenty-two*	*40 forty*
3 three	*13 thirteen*	*23 twenty-three*	*50 fifty*
4 four	*14 fourteen*	*24 twenty-four*	*60 sixty*
5 five	*15 fifteen*	*25 twenty-five*	*70 seventy*
6 six	*16 sixteen*	*26 twenty-six*	*80 eighty*
7 sewn	*17 seventeen*	*27 twenty-seven*	*90 ninety*
8 eight	*18 eighteen*	*28 twenty-eight*	*100 a hundred*
9 nine	*19 nineteen*	*29 twenty-nine*	*1,000 a thousand*
10 ten	*20 twenty*	*30 thirty*	*1,000,000 a million*

400 four hundred *140 a/one hundred and forty* *1,006 a/one thousand and six*
5,000 five thousand *260,127 two hundred and sixty thousand, one hundred and twenty-seven*

349 Points to notice about cardinal numbers

A When writing in words, or reading, a number composed of three or more figures we place and before the word denoting tens or units:
713 seven hundred and thirteen
5,102 five thousand, one hundred and two but
6,100 six thousand, one hundred (no tens or units) and is used similarly with hundreds of thousands:
320,410 three hundred and twenty thousand, four hundred and ten and hundreds of millions:
303.000,000 three hundred and three million

B **a** is more usual than **one** before **hundred, thousand, million** etc, when these numbers stand alone or begin an expression:
100 a hundred 1,000 a thousand
100,000 a hundred thousand
We can also say a hundred and one, a hundred and two etc. up to a hundred and ninety-nine and a thousand and one etc. up to a thousand and ninety-nine. Otherwise we use one, not a (see above). So:
1,040 a/one thousand and forty but
1,140 one thousand, one hundred and forty

C The words hundred, thousand, million and dozen. when used of a definite number, are never made plural:
six hundred men ten thousand pounds two dozen eggs If however, these words are used loosely, merely to convey the idea of a large number, they must be made plural:
hundreds of people thousands of birds dozens of times Note also that in this case the preposition of is placed after hundreds, thousands etc.
of is not used with definite numbers except before the/them/ these/those or possessives:
so: of the blue ones ten of these four of Tom's brothers

D Numbers composed of four or more figures are divided into groups of three as shown above. Decimals are indicated by '•', which is read 'point':
10.92 ten point nine two
A zero after a decimal point is usually read 'nought':
8.04 eight point nought four
But 'o' and 'zero' would also be possible.

350 Ordinal numbers (adjectives and pronouns)

first	*eleventh*	*twenty-first*	*thirty-first etc.*
second	*twelfth*	*twenty-second*	*fortieth*
third	*thirteenth*	*twenty-third*	*fiftieth*
fourth	*fourteenth*	*twenty-fourth*	*sixtieth*

fifth	*fifteenth*	*twenty-fifth*	*seventieth*
sixth	*sixteenth*	*twenty-sixth*	*eightieth*
seventh	*seventeenth*	*twenty-seventh*	*ninetieth*
eighth	*eighteenth*	*twenty-eighth*	*hundredth*
ninth	*nineteenth*	*twenty-ninth*	*thousandth*
tenth	*twentieth*	*thirtieth*	*millionth*

When writing in words or reading fractions other than ½ (a half) and ¼ (a quarter), we use a combination of cardinal and ordinal numbers:
1/5 *a/one fifth* 1/10 *a/one tenth* (*a* is more usual than *one*)
3/5 *three fifths* 7/10 *seven tenths*
A whole number + a fraction can be followed directly by a plural noun:
2 ¼ miles == *two and a quarter miles*
½ (*half*) can be followed directly by a noun but other fractions require **of** before a noun:
half a second but a quarter of a second (See also 2 E.)
half + of can also be used, but the of is optional:
Half (of) my earnings go in tax.

351 Points to notice about ordinal numbers

A Notice the irregular spelling of *fifth, eighth, ninth* and *twelfth*.
B When ordinal numbers are expressed in figures the last two letters of the written word must be added (except in dates):

first = 1st	*twenty-first* = 21st
second = 2nd	*forty-second* = 42nd
third = 3rd	*sixty-third* = 63rd
fourth = 4th	*eightieth* = 80th

C In compound ordinal numbers the rule about and is the same as for compound cardinal numbers: 101st = the hundred and first.
The article **the** normally precedes ordinal numbers:
the sixtieth day *the fortieth visitor*
Titles of kings etc. are written in Roman figures:

Charles V James III Elizabeth II

But in spoken English we use the ordinal numbers preceded by the:
Charles the Fifth *James the Third* *Elizabeth the Second*

352 Dates

The days of the week	The months of the year	
Sunday (Sun.)	January (Jan.)	July
Monday (Mm.)	February (Feb.)	August (Aug.)
Tuesday (Tues.)	March (Mar.)	September (Sept.)
Wednesday (Wed.)	April (Apr.)	October (Oct.)
Thursday (Thurs.)	May	November (Nov.)
Friday (Fri.)	June	December (Dec.)
Saturday (Sat.)		

Days and months are always written with capital letters. Dates are expressed by ordinal numbers, so when speaking we say:
March the tenth, July the fourteenth etc. or the tenth of March etc.
They can, however, be written in a variety of ways; e.g. *March the tenth* could be written:
March 10 10 March *10th of March*
March 10th *10th March* *March the 10th*

B The year
When reading or speaking we use the term **hundred** but not **thousand**. The year 1987 would be read as *nineteen hundred and eighty-seven or nineteen eighty-seven*.
Years before the Christian era are followed by the letters BC (= Before Christ) and years dating from the Christian era are occasionally preceded by the letters AD (= Anno Domini, in

the year of the Lord). The former are read in either way: *1500 BC* would be read as *one thousand five hundred BC or fifteen hundred BC*.

353 Weights, length and liquid measure

A Weights

The English weights table is as follows:

IS ounces (oz.) = 1 pound (Ib.)
14 Rounds = 1 stow (st.)
8 stone = 1 hundredweight (cict.)
20 hundredweight = 1 ton
1 pound == 0-454 kilogram (kg) 2-2 pounds = 1 kilogram 2.204-6 tbs = 1 metric tonne

Plurals

ounce, pound and ton can take a in the plural when they are used as nouns, stone and hundredweight do not take s: e.g. we say six Round of sugar or six pounds of sugar, but ten hundredweight of coal has no alternative.

When used in compound adjectives these terms never take a:
a ten-ton lorry kilo or kilogram usually take s in the plural when used as nouns:
two kilos of apples or two kilograms of apples

B Length

The English table of length is as follows:

12 inches (in.) = 1 foot (ft.)
3 feet = 1 yard (yd.)
1,760 yards = 1 mile (m.)
1 inch = 2.54 centimetres (cm)
1 yard = 0.914 metre (m)
1 mile = 1.609 kilometres (km)

Plurals

When there is more than one inch/mite/centimetre we normally use the plural form of these words:
one inch, ten inches one mile, four miles
one centimetre, five centimetres
When there is more than one foot we can use either foot or feet. feet is the more usual when measuring heights. We can say;
six foot tall or six feet tall two foot long or two feet long When used in compound adjectives the above forms never take the plural form: a two-mile walk, a six-inch ruler.

C Liquid measure

2 pints (Rt.) = 1 quart (qt.) *1 pint = 0.568 litre (I)*
4 quarts = 1 gallon (gal.) *1 gallon = 4.55 litres*

D Traditionally British measurements have been made in ounces, inches, pints etc. but there is now a gradual move towards the metric system.

37 Spelling rules

For noun plurals, see also 12. For verb forms, see also 165, 172, 175.

354 Introduction

Vowels are: **a e i o u**
Consonants are: **b c d f g h j k l m n p q r s t v w x y z**
A suffix is a group of letters added to the end of a word:
beauty, beautiful (*ful* is the suffix.)

355 Doubling the consonant

A Words of one syllable having one vowel and ending in a single consonant double the consonant before a suffix beginning with a vowel:
hit + ing = hitting but keep, keeping (two vowels)
knit + ed = knitted help, helped (two consonants)
run + er = runner love, lover (ending in a vowel) qu here is considered as one consonant: quit, quitting. When the final consonant is w, x or y it does not double:
row + ed -= rowed box + ing = boxing

B Two- or three-syllable words ending in a single consonant following a single vowel double the final consonant when the stress falls on the last syllable. (The stressed syllable is in bold type.)
acquit + ed = acquitted but murmur + ed = murmured begin + er -= beginner answer + er = answerer deter + ed == deterred orbit + ing = orbiting recur + ing = recurring focus + ed, however, can be spelt focused orfocussed and bias + ed can be spelt biased or biassed.

C The final consonant of handicap, kidnap, worship is also doubled:
handicap, handicapped worship, worshipped kidnap, kidnapped

D Words ending in 1 following a single vowel or two vowels pronounced separately usually double the 1:
appal, appalled duel, duellist repel, repellent cruel, cruelly model, modelling quarrel, quarrelling dial, dialled refuel, refuelled signal, signalled distil, distiller

356 Omission of a final **e**

A Words ending in e following a consonant drop the e before a suffix beginning with a vowel:
believe + er = believer
love + ing = losing
move + able = movable
But riye and singe keep their final e before ing to avoid confusion with die and sing:
dye, dyeing singe, singeing age keeps its e before ing except in American English:
age, ageing
likable can also be spelt likeable. Words ending in ce or ge sometimes retain the e. See 357.
B A final e is retained before a suffix beginning with a consonant:
engage, engagement fortunate, fortunately
hope. hopeful immediate, immediately
sincere, sincerely But the e m able/ible is dropped in the adverb form:
comfortable, comfortably incredible, incredibly The final e is also dropped in the following words:
argue, argument due, duly
judge, judgement or judgment true, truly
whole, wholly (notice the double 1 here)
C Words ending in ee do not drop an e before a suffix:
agree, agreed, agreeing, agreement foresee, foreseeing, foreseeable

357 Words ending in **ce** and **ge**

A Words ending in **ce** or **ge** retain the e before a suffix beginning with a, o or u:

courage, courageous	*peace, peaceful*
manage, manageable	*replace, replaceable*
outrage, outrageous	*trace, traceable*

This is done to avoid changes in pronunciation, because **c** and **g** are generally pronounced soft before **e** and **i**, but hard before **a, o** or **u**.

B Words ending in **ce** change the **e** to **i** before **ous**:

grace, gracious	*space, spacious*
malice, malicious	*vice, vicious*

358 The suffix **ful**

When **full** is added to a word the second **l** is dropped:

beauty + *full* = *beautiful* (but note adverb form beautifully)

use + *full* = *useful* (but note adverb form usefully)

If the word to which the suffix is added ends in **ll** the second **l** is dropped here also: *skill* + *full* = *skilful*.

Note full + fill = fulfil.

359 Words ending in **y**

Words ending in y following a consonant change the **y** to **i** before any suffix except **ing**:

carry + ed = earned but carry + ing = carrying

happy + !y = happily hurry + ing = hurrying

sunny + er = sunnier y following a vowel does not change:

obey + ed = obeyed play + er = player For plural forms of nouns, see 12.

360 **ie** and **ei**

The normal rule is that i comes before e except after c:

believe, sieve but deceive, receipt There are however the following exceptions:

beige	feint	heir	reign	their
counterfeit	foreign	inveigh	rein	veil
deign	forfeit	inveigle	seize	vein
eiderdown	freight	leisure	skein	weigh
eight	heifer	neigh	sleigh	weight
either	height	neighbour	sleight	weir
feign	heinous	neither	surfeit	weird

361 Hyphens

A Compound words are formed by linking two or more words to make one unit. We can write the compound:

(a) as one word: *bystander, hairdresser, teacup*

(b) as two or more words: *amusement arcade, post office*

(c) with a hyphen: *launching-pad, lay-by, tooth-brush*

It is impossible in most cases to give a firm rule on when a hyphen should be used. When a compound has become familiar through constant use, the hyphen can be omitted: layby, toothbrush. This, however, does not always happen and a native English writer is quite capable of writing toothbrush, tooth brush or tooth-brush at different times.

If the compound is formed of monosyllables, it is more likely to be written as one word. In cases of doubt it is better to omit hyphens or consult a modem dictionary.

B Hyphens are necessary;

(a) when pronunciation or meaning might be unclear without them:

co-operate *re-cover* (= cover again)

(b) when words form a compound in a particular sentence:

a do-it-yourself shop

a go-as-you-please railway ticket

(c) in adjective phrases dealing with age, size, weight and duration of time:

a five-year-old child *a ten-ton vehicle*

a six-foot wall *a five-minute interval*

Note that the compound is not in the plural form: no s. Adverb/participle compounds used as adjectives are commonly hyphenated, especially when there is a danger of misunderstanding:

low-flying aircraft *quick-dissolving sugar*

C Hyphens are used in a temporary way to divide a word at the end of a line. The division must be made at a natural break in the word, i.e. between syllables;

dis-cauraged *look-ing* *inter-val*

A monosyllable should not be divided.

38 Phrasal verbs

362 Introduction

In modern English it is very usual to place prepositions or adverbs after certain verbs so as to obtain a variety of meanings:

give away = give to someone/anyone
give up = abandon (a habit or attempt)
look after = take care of
look for = search for, seek
look out = beware

The student need not try to decide whether the combination is verb + preposition or verb + adverb, but should consider the expression as a whole.

It is also important to learn whether the combination is transitive (i.e. requires an object) or intransitive (i.e. cannot have an object):

look for is transitive: *I am looking for my passport*.

look out is intransitive: *Look out! This ice isn't safe!*

Each of the combinations given in the following pages wil! be marked 'tr' (= transitive) or 'intr' (= intransitive), and the examples of the use of each will help to emphasize this distinction.

Note that it is possible for a combination to have two or more different meanings, and to be transitive in one/some of these and intransitive in others. For example, take off can mean 'remove'- It is then a transitive expression:

He took off his hat.

take off can also mean 'rise from the ground' (used of aircraft). Here it is intransitive:

The plane took off at ten o 'clock.

Transitive expressions: the position of the object Noun objects are usually placed at the end of these expressions:

I am looking for my glasses.

With some expressions, however, they can be placed either at the end or immediately after the verb, i.e. before the short word. We can say:

He took off his coat or He took his coat off.

Pronoun objects are sometimes placed at the end of the expression:

I am looking for them.

But they are more often placed immediately after the verb:

He took it off.

This position is usual before the following short words: **up, down, in, out, away, off** and **on** (except when used in the expression call on = visit).

Examples given of the use of each expression will show all possible positions of noun or pronoun objects in the following way:

I'll give this old coat away. (give away this old coat/give it away)

i.e. with this expression the noun object can come before or after the away; the pronoun object must come before the away. When only one example is given the student may assume that the pronoun object has the same position as the noun object,

C When these expressions are followed by a verb object the gerund form of the verb is used:

He kept on blowing his horn.

Where gerunds are usual this will be shown by examples. Note that some expressions can be followed by an infinitive:

It is up to you to decide this for yourself.

Some of the younger members called on the minister to resign.
The lecturer set out to show that most illnesses were avoidable.

go on can be followed by either infinitive or gerund but there is a considerable difference in meaning. See 270 A.

363 Verb + preposition/adverb combinations

account

account for (tr) == give a good reason for, explain satisfactorily (some action or expenditure):

A treasurer must account/or the money he spends.
He has behaved in the most extraordinary way; I can't account for his actions at all/I can't account for his behaving like that.

allow

allow for (tr) = make provision in advance for, take into account (usually some additional requirement, expenditure, delay etc.):

It is 800 kilometres and I drive at 100 k.p.h., so I'll be there in eight hours. ~ But you'll have to allow for delays going through towns and for stops for refuelling.
Allowing for depreciation your car should be worth £2,000 this time next year.

answer

answer back (intr), **answer** somebody **back** = answer a reproof impudently:

FATHER: *Why were you so late last night? you weren't in till 2a.m.*
SON: *You should have been asleep.*
FATHER: *Don't answer me back. Answer my question.*

ask

ask after/for somebody = ask for news of:

I met Tom at the party; he asked after you. (asked how you were/how you were getting on)

ask for

(a) = ask to speak to:

Go to the office and ask for my secretary.

(b) = request, demand:

The men asked/or more pay and shorter hours.

ask someone **in** (object before in) = invite him to enter the house:

He didn't ask me in: he kept me standing at the door while he read the message.

ask someone **out** (object before out) = invite someone to an entertainment or to a meal (usually in a public place):

She had a lot of friends and was usually asked out in the evenings, so she seldom spent an evening at home.

back

back away (intr) = step or move back slowly (because confronted by some danger or unpleasantness):

When he took a gun out everyone backed away nervously.

back out (intr) = withdraw (from some joint action previously agreed on), discontinue or refuse to provide previously promised help or support:

He agreed to help but backed out when he found how difficult it was.

back somebody **up** = support morally or verbally:

The headmaster never backed up his staff, (backed them up) If a parent complained about a teacher he assumed that the teacher was in the wrong.

be

be against (tr) = be opposed to (often used with gerund):

I'm for doing nothing till the police arrive./I'm against doing anything till the police arrive.

be away (intr) = be away from home/this place for at least a night.

be back (intr) = have returned after a long or short absence:

I want to see Mrs Pitt. Is she in? ~ No. I'm afraid she's out at the moment or
No, I'm afraid she's away for the weekend. ~ When wilt she be back? ~ She'll be back in half an hour/next week.

be for (tr) = be in favour of (often used with gerund).

be in (intr) = be at home/in this building.

be in for (tr) = be about to encounter (usually something unpleasant):

Did you listen to the weather forecast? I'm afraid we're in for a bumpy/light.

If you think that the work is going to be easy you're in for a shock.

be over (intr) = be finished:

The storm is over now; we can go on.

be out (intr) = be away from home/from this building for a short time-not overnight.

be up (intr) = be out of bed:

Don't expect her to answer the doorbell at eight o 'clock on Sunday morning. She won't be up.

be up to (tr) = be physically or intellectually strong enough (to perform a certain action). The object is usually it. Chough a gerund is possible:
After his illness the Minister continued in office though he was no
longer up to the work/up to doing the work. be up to something/some mischief/some trick/no good = be occupied or busy with some mischievous act:
Don't trust him; he is up to something/some trick.
The boys are very quiet. I wonder what they are up to. Note that the object of up to here is aiways some very indefinite expression such as these given above. It is never used with a particular action.
it is up to someone (often followed by an infinitive) = it is his responsibility or duty;
If is up to the government to take action on violence.
I have- helped you as much as I can. Now if is u? to you. (You must
continue by your own efforts.)
bear
bear out (tr) = confirm: .
This report bears out my theory, (bears my theory out/bears it out)
bear up (intr) = support bad news bravely, hide feelings of grief:
The news of her death was a great shock to him but he bore up bravely and none of us realized how much he felt it.
blow
blow out (tr) = extinguish (a flame) by blowing:
The mind blew out the candle, (blew the candle out/blew it out) blow up (tr or intr)
(a) = destroy by explosion, explode, be destroyed:
They blew up the bridges so that the enemy couldn't follow them. (blew the bridges up/blew them up) Just as we got to the bridge it blew up.
(b) = fill with air, inflate, pump up:
The children blew up their balloons and threw them into the air. (blew the balloons up/blew them up)
boil
boil away (intr) = be boiled until all (the liquid) has evaporated:
I put the kettle on the gas ring and then went away and forgot about
it. When I returned, the water had all boiled away and the flame had
burnt a hole in the kettle.
boil over (intr) = to rise and flow over the sides of the container (used only of hot liquids):
The milk boiled over and there was a horrible smell of burning.

eak
break down figures = take a total and sub-divide it under various
headings so as to give additional information:
You say that IO.OWpeople use this library. Could you break that
down into age-groups? (say how many of these are under 25, over
50 etc.) break down a door etc. = cause to collapse by using force:
The firemen had to break down the door to get into the burning
house, (break the door down/break it down) break down (intr) = collapse, cease to function properly, owing to some fault or weakness:
(a) Used of people, it normally implies a temporary emotional collapse:
He broke down when telling me about his SOH'S tragic d«ath. (He was overcome by his sorrow; he wept.)
(b) It can express collapse of mental resistance-
At first he refused to admit his guilt hut when he was shown the evidence he broke down and confessed.
(c) When used of health it implies a serious physical collapse:

After years of overwork his health broke down and he had to retire.
(d) It is very often used of machines:
The car broke down when we were driving through the desert and it took us two days to repair it.
(e) It can be used of negotiations:
The negotiations broke down (were discontinued) because neither
side would compromise. break in (intr), break into (tr)
(a) = enter by force:
Thieves broke in and stole the silver. The house was broken into when the owner was on holiday.
(b) = interrupt someone by some sudden remark:
I was telling them about my travels when he broke in with a story of
his own. break in (a young horse/pony etc.) (tr) = train him for use:
You cannot ride or drive a horse safely before he has been broken in. break off (tr or intr) = detach or become detached:
He took a bar of chocolate and broke off a bit. (broke a bit off/broke
it off)
A piece of rock broke off and fell into the pool at the foot of the cliff. break off (tr) = terminate (used of agreements or negotiations):
Ann has broken off her engagement to Tom. (broken her
engagement off/broken it off) break off (intr) = stop talking suddenly, interrupt oneself:
They were in the middle of an argument but broke off when someone
came into the room. break out (intr) (a) = begin (used of evils such as wars, epidemics, fires etc.):
War broke out on 4 August.

(b) = escape by using force from a prison etc.:
They locked him up in a room but he broke out. (smashed the door
and escaped)
The police are looking/or two men who broke out of prison last night. break up (tr or intr) = disintegrate, cause to disintegrate:
If that ship stays there she will break up/she will be broken up by the
waves.
The old ship was towed away to be broken up and sold as scrap.
Divorce breaks up a lot a/families, (breaks families up/breaks
them up)
break up (intr) = terminate (used of school terms, meetings, parties etc.):
The school broke up on 30 July and all the boys went home for the
holidays.
The meeting broke up in confusion.
bring
bring someone round (tr; object usually before round)
(a) == persuade someone to accept a previously opposed suggestion:
After a lot of argument I brought him round to my point of view.
(b) = restore to consciousness:
She fainted with the pain but a little brandy soon brought her round. bring a person or thing round (tr; object usually before round) = bring him/it to my/your/his house:
I have finished that book that you lent me; I'll bring it round (to your
house) tonight. bring up (tr)
(a) = educate and train children:
She brought up her children to be truthful, (brought her children up/brought them up)
(b) = mention:
At the last committee meeting, the treasurer brought u? the question of raising the annual subscription, (brought the question up/brought it u?)
bum
bum down (tr or intr) = destroy, or be destroyed completely by fire (used of buildings):
The nwb burnt down the embassy, {burnt the embassy
down/burnt it down)
The hotel bumf down before help came.
call

1 call meaning 'visit' (for a short time) call at a place:
I called at the bank and arranged to transfer some money.

call for = visit a place to collect a person or thing:
I am going to a pop concert with Tom. He is calling for me at eight so I must be ready then.
Let's leave our suitcases in the left luggage office and call for them later on when we have the car.
cal! in is intransitive, and has the same meaning as look in and the colloquial drop in:
Call in/Look in on your way home and tell me how the interview went. call on a person:
He called on all the housewives in the area and asked them to sign the petition.
i Other meanings of call for/in/on
call for (tr) = require, demand (the subject here is often an impersonal word or phrase such as: the situation/this sort of work/this etc.; the object is then usually some quality, e.g. courage/patience/a steady hand etc.):
The situation calls for tact.
You 've got the job! This calls for a celebration. But it can also be used with a personal subject:
The workers are calling/or strike action.
The relations of the dead men are calling for an inquiry. call in a person/call him in = send for him/ask him to come to the house to perform some service, send for is more authoritative than call in which is therefore a more polite form:
/; was tw late to call in an electrician, (call an electrician
in/call him in)
There is some mystery about his death; She police have been called in. call on somebody (usually + infinitive) = ask him to do something/ask him to help. This is a rather formal way of making a request and is chiefly used on formal occasions or in speeches etc. There is usually the idea that the person called upon will consider it his duty to comply with the request:
The president called upon his people to make sacrifices for the good of
their country.
The chairman called on the secretary to read the minutes of the last
meeting.
. Other combinations with call
call off (Cr) = cancel something not yet started, or abandon something already in progress:
They had to call off (= cancel) the match as the ground was too
wet to play on. (call the match off/call it off)
When the fog got thicker the search was called off. (abandoned) call out (tr) = summon someone to leave his house to deal with a situation outside. It is often used of troops when they are required to leave their barracks to deal with civil disturbances:
The police couldn 't control the mob so troops were called out.

The Fire Brigade was called out several times on the night of 5 November to put out fires started by fireworks. Doctors don't much like being called out at night. call up (tr)
(a) = summon for military service:
In countries where there is conscription men are called up at the age of eighteen, (call up men/call men up/call them up)
(b) = telephone:
/ called Tom up and told him the news. (called up Tom/called him up)
care
not to care about (tr) = to be indifferent to:
The professor said that he was interested only in research; he didn 't
really care about students. care for (tr)
(a) = like (seldom used in the affirmative):
He doesn't care for films about war.
(b) = look after (not much used except in the passive):
The house looked well cared/or, (had been well looked after/was in good condition)
carry
carry on (intr) = continue (usually work or duty):
/ can't carry on alone any longer: I'll have to get help. carry on with (tr) is used similarly:
The doctor told her to carry on with the treatment. carry out (tr) = perform (duties), obey (orders, instructions), fulfil (threats):

You are not meant to think for yourself; you are here to carry out my
orders.
The Water Board carried out their threat to cut off our water supply.
(They threatened to do it and they 'did it.)
He read the instructions but he didn 'f carry them out.
catch
catch up with (tr), catch up (tr or intr) = overtake, but not pass:
I started last in the race but I soon caught up with the others. (caught them up/caught up)
You 've missed a whole term; you 'Il have to work hard to catch up with the rest of the class,
(catch them up/catch up)
clean
clean out (tr) a room/cupboard/drawer etc. == clean and tidy it thoroughly:
/ must clean out the spare room. (clean the spare room
out/clean it out) clean up (tr) a mess, e.g. anything spilt:
Clean up any spilt paint, (clean the spilt paint up/clean it up)

clean up (intr) is used similarly:
These painters always clean up when they've finished, (leave the place dean)
clear
clear away (tr) = remove articles, usually in order to make space:
Could you clear away these papers? (clear these papers
away/clear them away) clear away (intr) = disperse:
The clouds soon cleared away and if became quite warm. clear off (intr) from an open space,
clear out (intr) of a room, building = go away (colloquial: as a command it is definitely rude):
'You clear off,' said the farmer angrily. 'You've no right to put your
caravans in my field without even asking my permission.'
Clear out! If I find you in this building again, I'll report you to the
police.
clear out (tr) a room/cupboard/drawer etc. = empty it, usually to make room for something
else:
I'll clear out this drawer and you can put your things in it. (clear
this drawer out/clear it out) clear up (intr) = become fine after clouds or rain:
The sky looks a bit cloudy now but I think if wilt dear up. clear up (tr or intr) = make tidy and
clean:
When you are cooking it's best to clear up as you go, instead of
leaving everything to the end and having a terrible pile of things to
deal with.
Clear up this mess. (clear this mess up/clear it up) clear up (tr)
(a) = finish (some work which stiil remains to be done):
/ have some letters which I must clear up before I leave tonight.
(b) = solve (a mystery):
In a great many detective stories when the police are baffled an amateur detective comes
along and clears up the mystery, (clears it up)
close
close down (tr or intr) = shut permanently (of a shop or business):
Trade was so bad that many small shops closed down and big shops
closed some of their branches down. (closed down some
branches/closed them down)
close in (intr) = come nearer, approach from ail sides (used of mist, darkness, enemies etc.):
As the mist was closing in we decided to stay where we were. close up (intr) = come nearer
together (of people in a line):
I/you children closed up a bit there'd be room for another one on
this seat.

come
come across/upon (tr) = find by chance:
When I was looking/or my passport I came across these old photographs.
come along/on (intr) = come with me, accompany me. 'Come on' is often said to someone
who is hesitating or delaying:
Come on, or we'll be Sate. come away (intr) = leave (with me):
Come away now. It's time to go home. come away/off (intr) = detach itself:

When I picked up the teapot the handle came away in my hand. come in (intr), come into (tr) = enter:
Someone knocked at my door and I said, 'Come in.'
Come into the garden and I'll show you my rases. come off (intr)
(a) = succeed, of a plan or scheme (used in negative):
I'm afraid that scheme of yours won 'I come off. It needs more capita! than you have available.
(b) = take place; happen as arranged:
When is the wedding coming off? ~ Next June. If we say The duchess was So have opened the bazaar we imply that this plan was made but didn't come off. (She arranged to open it but later had to cancel this arrangement.)
(c) = end its run (of a play, exhibition etc.):
'Lady Windermere's Fan' is coming off next week. You'd better hurry if you want to see it.
come out (intr)
(a) = be revealed, exposed (the subject here is normally the truth/the facts/the whole story etc. and usually refers to facts which the people concerned were trying to keep hidden, i.e. scandals etc.):
They deceived everybody till they quarrelled among themselves; then one publicly denounced the others and the whole truth came out.
(b) = be published (of books):
Her new novel will be coming out in time for the Christmas sales.
(c) =- disappear (of stains):
Tomato stains don't usually come out. come round (intr)
(a) = finally accept a previously opposed suggestion:
Her father at first refused to let her study abroad but he came round (to it) in the- end. (said she could go)
(b) = come to my (your/his etc.) house;
I'll come round after dinner and tell you the plan.
come round/to (intr; stress on to) = recover consciousness:
When we found him he was unconscious but he came round/to in half an hour and explained that he had been attacked and robbed.

come up (intr)
(a) = rise to the surface:
A diver with an aqualung doesn 't have to keep coming up for air; he can stay underwater/or quite a long time. Weeds are coming up everywhere.
(b) = be mentioned:
The question of the caretaker's wages came up at the last meeting-come up (intr), come up to (tr) = approach, come dose enough to . talk:
A policeman was standing a few yards away. He came up to me and said, 'You can't park here.'
crop
crop up (intr) = appear, arise unexpectedly or by accident (the subject is normally an abstract noun such as difficulties/the subject etc. or a pronoun):
At first all sorts of difficulties crop/fed up and delayed us. Later we
learnt how to anticipate these.
cut
cut down a tree = fell it:

> *If you cut down all the trees you will ruin the land. (cut the trees down/cut them down) , cut down (tr) = reduce in size or amount:*

We must cut down expenses or we 'II be getting into debt. : 'This article is too long,' said the editor. 'Could you cut it down to 2,000 words?'
cut in (intr) = slip into traffic lane ahead of another car when there isn't room to do this safely:
Accidents are often caused by drivers cutting in. cut off (tr) = disconnect, discontinue supply (usually of gas, water. electricity etc.). The object can either be the commodity or the person who suffers:
The Company has cut off our electricity supply because we haven't paid our bill. (cut our supply off/cut it off)
They've cut off the water/our water supply temporarily because they are repairing one of the main pipes.

We were cut off in the middle of our (telephone) conversation. (This might be accidental or a deliberate action by the switchboard operator.)
cut someone off = form a barrier between him and safety (often used in connexion with the tide, especially in the passive):
We were cut off by the tide and had to be rescued by boat.
be cut off (intr) = be inconveniently isolated (the subject is usually a place or residents in a certain place):
You will be completely cut off if you go to live in that village because there is a bus only once a week.

cut out (tr)
(a) = cut from a piece of cloth/paper etc. a smaller piece of a desired shape:
When I am making a dress I mark the cloth with chalk and then cut
it out. (cut out the dress/cut the dress out)
Young people often cut out photographs of their favourite pop stars
and stick ihem to the walls.
(b) = omit, leave out:
If you want to get thin you must cut out sugar, (cut it out) be cut out for (tr) = be fitted or suited for (used of people, usually in the negative):
His father got him a job in a bank but it soon became clear that he
was not cut out for that kind of work. (He wasn't happy and was not
good at the work.) cut up (tr) •=• cut into small pieces:
They cut down the tree and cut it up for firewood, (cut the tree
up/cut up the tree)
die
die away (intr) = become gradually fainter till inaudible:
They waited till the sound of the guard's footsteps died away. die down (intr) = become gradually calmer and finally disappear (of riots, fires, excitement etc.):
When the excitement had died down the shopkeepers took down their
shutters and reopened their shops.
die out (intr) = become extinct (of customs, races, species of animals etc.):
Elephants would die out if men could shoot as many as they wished.
do
do away with (tr) = abolish:
The government should do away with the regulations restricting
drinking hours. do up (tr) = redecorate:
When I do this room up I'll paint the walls cream, (do up this
room/do it up) do without (tr) = manage in the absence of a person or thing:
We had to do without petrol during the fuel crisis. The object is sometimes understood but not mentioned:
If there isn't any milk we'll have to do without (it).
draw
draw back (intr) =; retire, recoil;
/t's too late to draw back now; the plans are ail made. draw up (tr) = make a written plan or agreement:
My solicitor drew up the lease and we both signed it. (drew it up) draw up (intr) = stop (of vehicles):
The car drew up at the kerb and the driver got out.

op
drop in (intr) = pay a short unannounced visit:
He dropped in for a few minutes to ask if he could borrow your power
drill- (drop in is more colloquial than 'call in'.) drop out (intr) = withdraw, retire from a scheme or plan:
We planned to hire a coach for the excursion but now so many people
have dropped out that it will not be needed.
iter
enter for (tr) = become a competitor/candidate (for a contest, examination, etc,):
Twelve thousand competitors have entered for the next London
Marathon.

de
fade away (intr) = disappear, become gradually fainter (usually of
sounds):
The band moved on and the music faded away.
II
fall back (intr) = withdraw, retreat (this is a deliberate action, quite different from fall behind, which is involuntary);
As the enemy advanced we fell back. fall back on (tr) = use in the absence of something better:
We had to fall back on dried milk as fresh milk wasn't available.
He fell back on the old argument that if you educate women they
won't be such good wives and mothers. fall behind (intr) = slip into the rear through inability to keep up with the others, fail to keep up an agreed rate of payments:
At the beginning the whole party kept together but by the end of the
day those who were less fit had fallen behind.
He fell behind with his rent and the landlord began to become
impatient. fall in with someone's plans = accept them and agree to co-operate:
We'd better fall in with his suggestion for the sake of peace. fall in (intr) of troops etc- = get into line fall out (intr) of troops etc- = leave the lines:
The troops fell in and were inspected. After the parade they fell out
and went back to their barracks. fall off (intr) = decrease (of numbers, attendance etc.):
Orders have been falling off lately; we need a new advertising
campaign.
If the price of seats goes up much more theatre attendances will begin
to/all off.
fall on (tr) = attack violently (the victim has normally no chance to defend himself as the attackers are too strong; it is also sometimes used of hungry men who attack their food when they get it):
The mob fell on the killers and clubbed them to death.
The starving men fell on the food. (devoured it)

fall out (intr) = quarrel:
When thieves fall out honest men gel their own. (proverb; i.e. get
back their property) fall through (intr) = fail to materialize (of plans):
My plans to go to Greece fell through because the journey turned out
to be much more expensive than I had expected.
feed
be fed up (intr), be fed up with (tr) = be completely bored (slang);
I'm fed up with this wet weather. I'm fed up with wailing; I'm going home.
feel
feel up to (tr) = fee! strong enough (to do something):
I don't feel up to tidying the kitchen now. I'll do it in the morning, I don't fee! up to it.
fill
fill in/up forms etc. = complete them:
I had to fill in three forms to get my new passport, (fill three forms in/fill them in)
find
find out (tr) = discover as a result of conscious effort;
In the end I found out what was wrong with my hi-fi. The dog found out the way to open the door. (found it out) find someone out = find that he has been doing something wrong (this discovery is usually a surprise because the person has been trusted):
After robbing the till for months the cashier was found out.
fix
fix up (tr) = arrange:
the club has already fixed up several matches for next season. (fixed several matches up/fixed them up)
get
get about (intr) = circulate; move or travel in a general sense:
The news got about that he had won the first prize in the state lottery
and everybody began asking him for money.

He is a semi-invalid now and can't get about as well as he used to. get away (intr) = escape, be free to leave:
Don 'I ask him how he is because if he starts talking about his health
you'll never get away from him.
I had a hi to do in the office and didn't get away till eight. get away with (tr) = perform some illegal or wrong act without being punished, usually without even being caught:
He began forging cheques and at first he got away with it but in the
end he was caught and sent to prison.

get back ftr) = recover possession of:
If you lend him a book he'll lend it to someone else and you'll never
get it back. (get back your book/get your book back) get back (intr) = reach home again:
We spent the whole day in the hills and didn't get back till dark. get off (intr) = be acquitted or receive no punishment (compare with gel away with it, which implies that the offender is not even caught):
He was tried for theft but got off because there wasn't sufficient
evidence against him. (was acquitted)
The boy had to appear before a magistrate but he got off as it was his
first offence, (received no punishment) get on (intr), get on with (tr)
(a) = make progress, be successful:
How is he getting on at school? He is getting on very well with his English.
(b) = live, work etc., amicably with someone:
He is a pleasant friendly man who gets on well with nearly everybody.
How are you and Mr Pitt getting on? get out (intr) = escape from, leave (an enclosed space):
Don't wory about the snake. It's in a box. It can't get out.
News of the Budget got out before it was officially announced.
I'm so busy that I don't very often get out. (out of the house) Note that the imperative 'Get out', except when it means 'descend' (from a vehicle), is very rude. get out of (tr) = free oneself from an obligation or habit:
I said that I'd help him. Now I don't want to but I can't get out of it.
(free myself from my promise)
He says that he smokes too much but he can't get out of the habit.
Some people live abroad to get out of paying heavy taxes. . get over (tr) = recover from (illness, distress or mental weakness):
He is just getting over a bad heart attack.
I can't get over her leaving her husband like that. (I haven't
recovered from the surprise; I am astonished,)
He used to be afraid of heights but he has got over that now. get it over (the object is usually it which normally represents something unpleasant) = deal with it and be finished with it:
If you have logo to the dentist why not go at once and get it over? (Be careful not to confuse this with get over it, which is quite
different.)
get round a person = coax him into letting you do what you want:
Giris can usually get round their fathers.
get round a difficulty/regulation = find some solution to it/evade it:
If we charge people for admission we will have to pay entertainment tax on our receipts: but we can get round this regulation by saying that we are charging not for admission but for refreshments. Money paid/or refreshments is not taxed.
get through (tr or intr) = finish a piece of work, finish successfully:
He got through his exam all right, (passed it)

get through (intr) = get into telephone communication:
/ am frying to call London but I can't get through; I think all the
lines are engaged. get up (tr) = organize, arrange (usually an amateur entertainment or a charitable enterprise):
They got up a concert in aid of cancer research. (They got it up.)
get up (intr) = rise from bed, rise to one's feet, mount:
I get up at seven o' clock every morning. (For get used to mean enter/leave vehicles, see 93 D.)
give
give something away = give it to someone (who need not be mentioned):

I'll give this old coat away. (give away this old coat away/give it
away) give someone away (object before away) - betray him:
He said that he was not an American but his accent gape him away.
(told us that he was an American) give back (tr) = restore (a thing) to its owner:
/ must call at She library to give back this book. (to give this book
back/to give it back) give in (intr) = yield, cease to resist:
At first he wouldn't let her drive the car but she was so persuasive
that eventually he gave in. give out (tr)
(a) = announce verbally:
They gave out the names of the winners, (gave the names out/gave them out)
(b) = distribute, issue:
The teacher gave out the books, (gave one/some to each pupil) give out (intr) = become exhausted (of supplies etc.):
The champagne gave out long before the end of the reception.
His patience gave out and he slapped the child hard. give up (tr or intr) = abandon an attempt, cease trying to do something:
I tried to climb the wall but after I had failed three times I gave up.
(gave up the attempt/gave the attempt up/gave it up)
A really determined person never gives up/never gives up trying. give up (tr) = abandon or discontinue a habit, sport, study, occupation:
Have you given up drinking whisky before breakfast?
He gave up cigarettes, (gave them up)
He tried to leam Greek but soon got tired of it and gave it up. give oneself up (object before up) = surrender:
He gave himself up to despair.
He was cold and hungry after a week on the run so he gave himself
up to the police.

go ahead (intr) = proceed, continue, lead the way:
While she was away he went ahead with the work and got a tot done.
You go ahead and I"It follow; I'm not quite ready. go away (intr) = leave, leave me, leave this place:
Are you going away for your holiday? ~ No, I'm staying at home.
Please go away; I can't work unless I am alone. go back (intr) = return, retire, retreat;
I'm never going back to that hotel. It is most uncomfortable. go back on (tr) = withdraw or break (a promise):
He went back on his promise to tell nobody about this. (He told
people about it. contrary to his promise.) go down fintr)
(a) = be received with approval (usually of an idea):
I suggested that she should look for a job but this suggestion did not go down at all well.
(b) = become less, be reduced (of wind, sea, weight, prices etc.):
During her illness her weight went down from 50 kilos to 40. The wind went down and the sea became quite calm.
go for (tr) = attack:
The cat went for the dog and chased him out of the hall. go in for (tr) = be especially interested in. practise; enter for (a competition):
This restaurant goes in for vegetarian dishes, (specializes in them)
She plays a lot of golf and goes in for all the competitions. go into (tr) = investigate thoroughly:
'We shall have to go into this very carefully,' said the detective. go off (intr)
(a) = explode (of ammunition or fireworks), be fired (of guns, usually accidentally):
As he was cleaning his gun if went off and killed him.
(b) = be successful (of social occasions):
The party went off very well. (everyone enjoyed it)
(c) = start a journey, leave:
He went off in a great hurry. go on (intr) = continue a journey:
Go on till you come to the crossroads. go on (intr), go on with (tr), go on + gerund = continue any action:
Please go on playing; I like it.
Go on with the treatment. It is doing you good.
go on + infinitive:

He began by describing the route and went on to tell us what the trip would probably cost.
(He continued his speech and told us etc.)
go out (intr)
(a) = leave the house:
She is always indoors; she doesn't go out enough.
(b) = Join in social life, leave one's house for entertainments etc. She is very pretty and goes out a lot.

(c) = disappear, be discontinued (of fashions):
Crinolines went out about the middle of the last century.
(d) = be extinguished (of lights, fires etc.):
The light went out and we were left in the dark. go over (tr) = examine, study or repeat carefully:
He went over the plans again and discovered two very serious
mistakes. go round (intr)
(a) = suffice (for a number of people):
Will there be enough wine to go round?
(b) = go to his/her/your etc. house:
/ said that I 'd go round and see her during the weekend, (go to her
house)
go through (tr) = examine carefully (usually a number of things; go through is like look through but more thorough):
There is a mistake somewhere; we'll have to go through the accounts
and see where it is.
The police went through their files to see if they could find any
fingerprints to match those that they had found on the handle of the
weapon. go through (tr) = suffer, endure:
No one knows what I went through while I was waiting for the
verdict, (how much I suffered)
go through with (tr) = finish, bring to a conclusion (usually in the face of some opposition or difficulty):
He went through with his plan although all his friends advised him to
abandon it. go up (intr)
(a) = rise (of prices):
The price of strawberries went up towards the end of the season.
(b) = burst into flames (and be destroyed), explode (used of whole buildings, ships etc.):
When the fire reached the cargo of chemicals the whole ship went up.
(blew up)
Someone dropped a cigarette end into a can of petrol and the whole
garage went up inflames.
go without (tr) = do without. (But it only applies to things. 'Go without a person' has only a literal meaning: i.e. it means 'start or make a journey without him'.)
grow
grow out of (tr) = abandon, on becoming older, a childish (and often bad) habit:
He used to tell a lot of lies as a young boy but he grew out of that
later on. grow up (intr) = become adult:
'I'm going to be a pop star when I grow up,' said the boy.

hand
hand down (tr) = bequeath or pass on (traditions /information/ possessions):
This legend has been handed down from father to son. hand in (tr) = give by hand (to someone who need not be mentioned because the person spoken to knows already):
/ handed in my resignation, (gave it to my employer)
Someone handed this parcel in yesterday, (handed it in) hand out (tr) = distribute:
He was standing at the door of the theatre handing out leaflets.
(handing leaflets out/handing them out) hand over (tr or intr) = surrender authority or responsibility to another:
The outgoing Minister handed over his department to his
successor, (handed his department over/handed it over) hand round (tr) = give or show to each person present:
The hostess handed round coffee and cakes, (handed them

round)
hang
hang about/around (tr or intr) = loiter or wait (near):
He hung about/around the entrance all day, hoping/or a chance to
speak to the director. hang back (intr) = show unwillingness to act:
Everyone approved of the scheme hut when we asked for volunteers
they all hung back. hang on to (tr) = retain, keep in one's possession (colloquial):
I'd hang on to that old coat if I were you. It might be useful.
hold
hold off (intr) = keep at a distance, stay away (used of rain):
The rain fortunately held off till after the school sports day. hold on (intr) = wait (especially on the telephone):
Yes. Mr Pitt is in. If you hold on for a moment I'll get him for you. { hold on/out (intr) = persist in spite of, endure hardship or danger:
The survivors on the rock signalled that they were short of water but could hold out for another day.
' The strikers held out for six weeks before agreeing to arbitration. hold up (tr)
(a) = stop by threats or violence (often in order to rob):
The terrorists held up the train and kept the passengers as hostages. Masked men held up the cashier and robbed the bank. (held him up)
(b) = stop, delay (especially used in the passive):
The bus was held up because a tree had fallen across the road.

join
join up (intr) = enlist in one of the armed services:
When war was declared he joined up at once.
jump
jump at (tr) -= accept with enthusiasm (an offer or opportunity):
He was offered a place in the Himalayan expedition and jumped at the chance.
keep
keep somebody back (object before back) = restrain, hinder, prevent from advancing:
Frequent illnesses kept him back. (prevented him from making
normal progress) keep down (tr) = repress, control:
IVJia; is the best way to keep down rats? (keep them down)
Try to remember to Sum off the light when you leave the room. I am
trying to keep down expenses, (keep expenses down) keep off (tr or intr) = refrain from walking on, or from coming too close:
'Keep off the grass'. (park notice) keep on = continue:
/ wanted to explain but he kept on talking and didn 't give me a
chance to say anything. keep out (tr) = prevent from entering:
My shoes are very old and don't keep out the wafer, (keep the
water out/keep it out) keep out (intr) = stay outside:
'Private. Keep out.' (notice on door) keep up (tr) = maintain (an effort);
He began walking at four miles an hour but he couldn't keep up that
speed and soon began to walk more slowly, (he couidn 't keep it up)
It is difficult to keep up a conversation with someone who only says
'Yes' and 'No'.
keep up (intr), keep up with (tr) = remain abreast of someone who is advancing; advance at the same pace as:
A runner can't keep up with a cyclist.
The work that the class is doing is too difficult for me. I won't be able
to keep up (with them).
It is impossible to keep up with the news unless you read the
newspapers.
knock
knock off (tr or intr) = stop work for the day (colloquial):
English workmen usually knock offat 5.30 or 6.00 p.m. We knock off work in time for tea.

knock out (tr) = hit someone so hard that he falls unconscious:

In the finals of the boxing championship he knocked out his opponent, who was carried out of the ring. (knocked his opponent out/knocked him out)
lay
lay in (tr) == provide oneself with a sufficient quantity (of stores etc.) to last for some time:
She expected a shortage of dried fruit so she laid in a large supply. lay out (tr) = plan gardens, building sites etc.:
Le Noire laid out the gardens at Versailles, (laid the gardens
out/laid them out) lay up (tr) = store carefully till needed again (used of ships, cars etc.):
Before he went to Brazil for a year, he laid up his car, as he didn'!
want to sell it. (laid it up) be laid up (of a person) = be confined to bed through illness:
She was laid up/or weeks with a slipped disk.
lead
lead up to (tr) = prepare the way for, introduce (figuratively):
He wanted to borrow my binoculars, but he didn't say so at once. He led up to it by talking about birdwatching.
leave
leave off (usually intr) = stop (doing something):
He was playing his 'trumpet but I told him to leave off because the
neighbours were complaining about the noise. leave out (tr) = omit:
We 'II sing our school sang leaving out the last ten verses.
They gave each competitor a number; but they left out No, 13 as no
one wanted to have it. (leftNo. 13 out/left it out)
let
let down (tr) = lower;
When she lets her hair down it reaches her waist, (lets down her
hair/lets it down)
You can let a coat down (lengthen it) by using the hem. . let someone down (object before down) = disappoint him by failing to act as well as expected, or failing to fulfil an agreement:
I promised him thai you would do the work. Why did you let me down
by doing so little?
He said he'd come to help me; but he let me down. He never
turned up. let in (tr) = allow to enter, admit:
They let in the ticket-holders, (let the ticket-holders in/
let them in)
I/you mention my name to the door-keeper he will let you in.

let someone off (object before off) = refrain from punishing:
/ thought that the magistrate was going to fine me but he let me off.
(Compare with get off,) let out (tr)
(a) = make wider (of clothes):
That boy is getting fatter. You'll have to let out his clothes, (lethis clothes out/let them out)
(b) = allow to leave, release:
He opened the door and let out the dog. (let the dog out/let it out)
live
live down a bad reputation = live in such a manner that people will forget it:
He has never quite been able to live down a reputation for drinking
too much which he got when he was a young man. (live it down) live in (intr) = live in one's place of work (chiefly used of domestic servants):
ADVERTISEMENT: Cook wanted. £140 a week. Live in. live on (tr) = use as staple food:
It is said that/or a certain period of his life Byron lived on vinegar
and potatoes in order to keep thin. live up to (tr) = maintain a certain standard -moral, economic or behavioural;
He had high ideals and tried to live up to them. (he tried to act in
accordance with his ideals)
lock
lock up a house (tr or intr; usually intr) = lock all doors:
People usually lock up before they go to bed at night. lock up a person or thing = put in a locked place, i.e. box, safe, prison:
She locked up the papers in her desk. (locked the papers
up/locked them up)

look
look after (tr) = take care of:
Will you look after my parrot when I am away? look ahead (htr) = consider the future so as to make provision for it:
It's lime you looked ahead and made plans for your retirement. look at (tr) = regard:
He looked at the clock and said, 'It is midnight.' look back fintr). look back on (tr) = consider the past:
Looking back, I don't suppose we are any worse now than people
were a hundred years ago.
Perhaps some day it will be pleasant to look back on these things.

look back/round (intr) = look behind (literally):
Don't look round now but the woman behind us is wearing the most extraordinary clothes.
look for (tr) = search for, seek:
/ have lost my watch. Will you help me to look for it? look forward to (tr) = expect with pleasure (often used with gerund)-
/ am looking forward to her arrival/to seeing her. look in (intr) = pay a short (often unannounced) visit (= call in):
I'll look in this evening to see how she is. look into (tr) = investigate:
There is a mystery about his death and the police are looking into it. look on ... as (tr) = consider:
Most people look on a television set as an essential piece of furniture.
These children seem to look on their teachers as their enemies. took on (intr) = be a spectator only, not a participator:
Two men were fighting. The rest were looking on. look on (tr), look out on (tr) (used of windows and houses) = be facing:
His house looks (out) on to the sea. (from his house you can see
the sea.) look out (intr) = be watchful, beware:
(to someone just about to cross the road) 'Look out! There's a lorry
coming!'
look out for (tr) = keep one's eyes open so as to see something (usually fairly conspicuous) if it presents itself:
/ am going to the party too, so look out for me. look over (tr) = inspect critically, read again, revise quickly (look over is similar to go over but less thorough):
Look over what you've written before handing it to the examiner.
I'm going to look over a house that I'm thinking of buying. look through (tr) = examine a number of things, often in order to select some of them; turn over the pages of a book or newspaper, looking for information:
Look through your old clothes and see if you have anything to give
away.
I'd like you So look through these photographs and try to pick out the
man you saw.
He looked through the books and decided that he wouldn't like them. look through someone = look at him without appearing to see him, as a deliberate act of rudeness:
She has to be polite to me in the office but when we meet outside she
always looks through me.

look up an address/a name/word/train time/telephone number etc. = look for it in the appropriate book or paper, i.e. address book/ dictionary/timetable/directory etc.:
If you don't know the meaningofthe word look it up. (look up the
word/look the word up)
I must look up the time of your train, (look for it in the timetable) look somebody up can mean 'visit'. The person visited usually lives at some distance and is not seen very often, look up is therefore different from look in, which implies that the person visited lives quite close:
Any lime you come to London do look me up. (come and see me)
I haven't seen Tom forages. I must find out where he lives and look
him up. (look Tom up/look up Tom) look up (intr) == improve (the subject is usually things/business/world affairs/the weather, i.e. nothing very definite):
Business has been very bad lately but things are beginning to look up
now.
look someone up and down •= look at him contemptuously, letting your eyes wander from his

head to his feet and back again:
The policeman looked the drunk man u? and down very deliberately
before replying to his question. look up to (tr) = respect:
Schoolboys usually look up to great athletes. look down on (tr) = despise:
Small boys often look down on little girls and re/use to play with
them.
She thinks her neighbours look down on her a bit because she's never
been abroad.
make
make for (tr) = travel towards:
The escaped prisoner was making/or the coast. make off (intr) = run away (used of thieves etc.):
The boys made off when they saw the policemen. make out (tr)
(a) = discover the meaning of, understand, see. hear etc. clearly:
/ can't make out the address, he has written it so badly, (make the
address out/make it out)
Can you hear what the man with the loud-hailer is saying? I can't
make it out at all.
I can't make out why he isn 't here yet.
(b) = state (probably falsely or with exaggeration):
He made out that he was a student looking/or a job. We later learn!
that ihis wasn 't true at all.
The English climate isn 'I so bad as some people like to make out.
(c) = write a cheque:
CUSTOMER: Who shall I make it out to? SHOPKEEPER: Make it out to Jones and Company.

make up one's mind = come to a decision:
In the end he made up his mind to go by train.
make up a quarrel/make it up = end it:
Isn't it time you and Ann made up your quarrel, (mode it up)
make up a story/excuse/explanation = invent it:
/ don't believe your story at all. I think you are just making it up.
make up (tr or intr) = use cosmetics:
Most women make up/make up their faces, (make their faces
up/make them up)
Actors have So be made up before they appear on stage.
make up (tr) = put together, compound, compose:
Take this prescription to the chemist's. They will make it up for you there, (make up the presciption/make the prescription up) NOTICE (in tailor's window): Customers' own materials made up. The audience was made up of very young children.
make up for (tr) = compensate for (the object is very often ;'():
You'll have to work very hard today to make u? for the time you wasted yesterday/to make up for being late yesterday. We aren 't allowed to drink when we are in training but we intend to make up for it after the race is over. (to drink more than usual then)
miss
miss out (tr) = leave out ('leave out' is more usual; see page 3351.
mix
mix up (tr) = confuse:
He mixed up the addresses so that no one got the right letters.
(mixed them up)
be/get mixed up with = be involved (usually with some rather disreputable person or business):
/ don't want to get mixed up with any illegal organization.
move
move in (intr) = move self and possessions into new house, flat, rooms etc.
move out (intr) = leave house/flat etc,, with one's possessions, vacate accommodation:
/ have found a new flat. The present tenant is moving out this
weekend and I am moving in on Wednesday. move on or up (intr) = advance, go higher:
Normally in schools pupils move up every year.
order
order somebody about (object before about) = give him a lot of orders (often regardless of his

convenience or feeiings):
He is a retired admiral and still has the habit of ordering
people about.

pay
pay back (tr), pay someone back (tr or intr) = repay:
/ must pay back the money that I borrowed, (pay the money
back/pay it back)
I must pay back Mr Pitt. (pay Mr Pitt back/pay him back)
I must Ray Mr Pitt back the money he lent me. (pay him back the
money/pay it back to him) pay someone back/out = revenge oneself:
I'll pay you back for this. (for the harm you have done me.) pay up (intr) = pay money owed in full (there is often a feeling that the payer is reluctant):
Unless you pay up I shall tell my solicitor to write to you.
pick
pick out (tr) = choose, select, distinguish from a group:
Here are six rings. Pick out the one you like best. (pick it out)
In an identity parade the witness has to try to pick out the criminal
from a group of about eight men. (pick the criminal out/pick him
out)
I know that you are in this photograph but I can't pick you out.
pick up (tr)
(a) = raise or lift a person or thing, usually from the ground or from a table or chair:
He picked up the child and carried him into the house, (picked the
cbi!d up)
She scatters toys all aver the floor and I have to pick them up.
(b) = call for, take with one (in a vehicle):
/ won't have time to come to your house but I could pick you up at the end of your road.
The coach stops at the principal hotels to pick up tourists, but only if they arrange this in advance, (pick tourists up/Rick them up) The crew of the wrecked yacht were picked up by helicopter.
(c) = receive (by chance) wireless signals:
Their SOS was picked up by another ship. which informed the lifeboat headquarters.
(d) = acquire cheaply, learn without effort:
Sometimes you pick up wonderful bargains in these markets. Children usually pick up foreign languages very quickly.
point
point out (tr) = indicate, show:
As we drove through the city the guide pointed out the most important buildings, (pointed the buildings out/pointed them out)
pull
pull down (tr) = demolish (used of buildings):
Everywhere elegant old buildings are being pulled down and
mediocre modem erections are being put up. (pull down houses/pull
them down) pull off (tr) = succeed (the object is normally it):
Much to our surprise he pulled off the deal. (sold the goods/got the
contract) (pulled it off)
pull through (tr or intr) = recover from illness/cause someone to recover:
We thought she was going to die but her own will-power pulled her
through, (tr)
He is very ill but he'll pull through if we look after him carefully.
(intr) pull up (intr) = stop (of vehicles):
A lay-by is a space at the side of a main road, where drivers can pull
up if they want a rest.

put
put aside/by (tr) = save for future use (usually money), put aside often implies that the money is being saved for a certain purpose:
He puts aside £50 a month to pay for his summer holiday, (puts it
aside)
Don't spend all your salary. Try to put something by each month. put away (tr) = put tidily out

of sight (usually in drawers, cupboards etc.):
Put your toys away, children; it's bedtime, (put away the toys/put
them away) put something back = replace it where you found it/where it belongs:
When you 've finished with the book put it back an the shelf. put back a clock/watch = retard the hands: put the clock back is sometimes used figuratively to mean return to the customs of the past:
MOTHER: Your father and I will arrange a marriage for you when the
time comes.
DAUGHTER; You're trying to put the clock back, mother. Parents
don't arrange marriages these days! (put hack the clock/put it back) put down ftr)
(a) = the opposite of pick up:
He picked up the saucepan and put it down at once because the handle was almost red-hot, (put the saucepan down/put it down)
(b) = crush rebellions, movements:
Troops were used to put down the rebellion, (put the rebellion down/put it down)
(c) = write:
Put down his phone number before you forget it. (put the number down/put it down)
CUSTOMER (to shop assistant)*: I'll take that one. Please put it down to me/to my account.* (enter it in my account)
put something **down to** (tr) = attribute it to:
The children wouldn't answer him, but he wasn't annoyed as he put it down to shyness.

She hasn't been well since she came to this country; I put H down to the climate. put forward a suggestion/proposal etc. = offer it for consideration;
The older members a/the committee are inclined to veto any suggestions put forward by the younger ones. (put a suggestion
forward/put it forward)
put forward/on clocks and watches = advance the hands, put forward is the opposite of put back:
In March people in England put their clocks forward/on an hour.
When summer time ends they put them back an hour. put in a claim = make a claim:
He Rut in a claim for compensation because he had lost his luggage
in the train, crash. put in for a job/a post == apply for it:
They are looking/or a lecturer in geography. Why don 't you put in
for it? put off an action = postpone it:
Some people Rut of f making their wills till it is too late.
I'll put off my visit to Scotland till the weather is warmer, (put my
visit off/put it off) put a person off
(a) = tell him to postpone his visit to you:
I had invited some guests to dinner but I had to put them off because a Rower cut prevented me from cooking anything.
(b) = repel, deter him:
I wanted to see the exhibition but the queue put me off.
Many people who want to come to England are put off by the stories
they hear about English weather.
put on clothes/glasses/jewellery = dress oneself etc. The opposite is take off:
He put on a black coat so that he would be inconspicuous, (put a
coat on/put it on)
She put on her glasses and took the letter from my hand. put on an expression = assume it:
He Rut on anair of indifference, which didn't deceive anybody for a
moment. put on a play = produce/perform it:
The students usually put on a play at the end of the year. put on a light/gas or electric fire/radio = switch it on:
Put on the light, (put the light on/put it on) put out any kind of light or fire = extinguish it;
Put out that light, (put the light out/put it out) put someone out (inconvenience him):
He is very selfish. He wouldn't put himself out for anyone. be put out = be annoyed:
She was very put out when I said that her new summer dress did» 'f
suit her.

put up (tr)
(a) = erect (a building, monument, statue etc.):

He put up a shed in the garden, (put a shed up/put it up)
(b) = raise (prices):
When She importation of foreign tomatoes was forbidden, home
growers put up their prices, (put their prices up/put them up) put someone up (object usually before up) = give him temporary hospitality:
If you come to Paris I will put you up. You needn 't look for an hotel. put someone up to something (usually some trick) = give him the idea of doing it/tell him how to do it:
He couldn't have thought of thai trick by himself. Someone must have
put him up to it. put up with (tr) = bear patiently:
We had to Rut up with a lot of noise when the children were at home.
ring
ring up (tr or intr) = telephone:
! rang up the theatre to book seats for tonight, (rang the theatre
up/rang them up)
If you can't come ring up and let me know. ring off (intr) = end a telephone call by putting down the receiver:
He rang off before I could ask his name.
round
round up (tr) = drive or bring together (people or animals):
The sheepdog rounded up the sheep (= collected them into a group) and drove them through the gate.
On the day after the riots the police rounded up all suspects/ rounded them up. (arrested them)
rub
rub out (tr) =s erase pencil or ink marks with an india-rubber:
The child wrote down the wrong word and then rubbed it out.
(rubbed the word out/rubbed out the word) rub up (tr) = revise one's knowledge of a subject:
I am going to France; ! must rub up my French, (rub it up)
run
run after (tr) = pursue (see example below).
run away (intr) = flee, desert (one's home/school etc.), elope:
The thief ran away and the policeman ran after him. He ran away from home and got a job in a garage.
run away with (tr) = become uncontrollable (of emotions), gailop off
out of rider's control (of horses):
Don't let your emotions runaway with you. His horse ran away with him and he had a bad fall.
run away with the idea = accept an idea too hastily:
Don't run away with the idea that lam unsociable; I Just haven't time to go out much.

run down (tr) = disparage, speak ill of:
He is always running down his neighbours, (running his
neighbours down/running them down) run down (intr) == become unwound/discharged (of clocks/batteries etc.):
This torch is useless; the battery has run down. be run down (intr) •= be in poor health after illness, overwork etc.:
He is still run down after his illness and unfit/or work. run into (tr) = collide with (of vehicles):
The car skidded and ran into a lamp-post, (struck the lamp-post) run into/across someone = meet him accidentally:
I ran into my cousin in Harrods recently. (I met him.) run out of (tr) = have none left, having consumed all the supply:
I have run out of milk. Put some lemon in your tea instead. run over (tr) = drive over accidentally (in a vehicle):
The drunk man stepped into the road right in front of the oncoming
car. The driver couldn 't stop in time and ran over him. run over (tr or intr) = overflow:
He turned on both taps full and left the bathroom. When he came
back he found that the water was running over. /running over the
edge of the bath. run over/through (tr) = rehearse, check or revise quickly:
We 've got a few minutes before the train goes, so I'll just run through
your instructions again.
run through (tr) •=- consume extravagantly, waste (used of supplies or money):

He inherited a fortune and ran through it in a year. run up bills = incur them and increase them by continuing to buy things and put them down to one's account:
Her husband said that she must pay for things at once and not run
up bills. run up against difficulties/opposition = encounter them/it:
If he tries to change the rules of the club he will run up against a lot
of opposition.
see
aee about (tr) = make inquiries or arrangements:
Imust see about getting a room ready forhim. see somebody off = accompany an intending traveller to his train/boat/plane etc.:
The station was crowded with boys going back to school and parents
who were seeing them off.
see somebody out = accompany a departing guest to the door of the house:
When guests leave the host usually sees them out.
Don't bother to come So the door with me. I can see myself out.

see over a house/a building = go into every room, examine it often with a view to buying or renting:
I'm definitely interested in the house. I'd like to see over it. see through (tr) = discover a hidden attempt to deceive:
She pretended that she loved him but he saw through her, and
realized thai she was only after his money. (He wasn't taken in by
her/by her pretence. See take in.) see to (tr) = make arrangements, put right, repair:
I/you can provide the wine I'll see to the food.
That electric fire isn't safe. You should have it seen to.
Please see to if that the door is locked.
sell
sell off (tr) = sell cheaply (what is left of a stock):
ASSISTANT: This line is being discontinued so we are selling off the remainder of our stock:
that's why they are so cheap, (selling the rest off/selling it off)
sell out (intr) == sell all that you have of a certain type of article:
When all the seats for a certain performance have been booked, theatres put a notice saying 'Sold out' outside the booking office.
send
be sent down (intr) = be expelled from a university for misconduct:
He behaved so badly in college that he was sent down and never got
his degree. send for (tr) = summon:
One of our water pipes has burst. We must send for the plumber.
The director sent for me and asked for an explanation. send in (tr) = send to someone (who need not be mentioned beCause the person spoken to knows already):
You must send in your application before Friday, (send it to the
authority concerned) (send your application in/send it in) send on (tr) = forward, send after a person:
If any letters come for you after you have gone I will send them on.
(send on yow letters/send your letters on)
set
set in (intr) = begin (a period, usually unpleasant):
Winter has set in early this year. set off (tr) = start (a series of events):
That strike set off a series of strikes throughout the country, (set
them off) set off/out (intr) = start a journey:
They set out/off at six and hoped to arrive before dark. 'for' is used when the destination is mentioned:
They set out/off for Rome.

set out + infinitive (often show/prove/explain or some similar verb) = begin this undertaking, aim:
In this book the author sets out to prove that the inhabitants a/the
islands came from South America. set up (tr) = achieve, establish (a record):
He net up a new record/or the 1.000 metres, (set a new record
up/set it up) set up (intr) = start a new business:

When he married he left his father's shop and set upon his own.
(opened his own shop)
settle
settle down (intr) = become accustomed to. and contented in, a new place, job etc.:
He soon settled down in his new school. settle up (intr) = pay money owed:
Tell me what 1 owe you and I'll settle up.
shout
shout down (tr) = make a loud noise to prevent a speaker from being heard:
Tom tried to make a speech defending himself but the crowd wouldn't
listen to his explanation and shouted him down.
The moderate speakers were shouted down.
show
show off (tr or intr) = display (skill, knowledge etc.) purely in order to win notice or applause:
Although Jules speaks English perfectly, my cousin spoke French to
him all the time just to show off. (to impress us with her knowledge
of French)
He is always picking up very heavy things just to show off his
strength, (show it off)
shut
shut down ftr or intr) = close down (see page 323).
sit
sit back (intr) = relax, take no action, do no more work;
I have worked hard all my life and now I'm going to sit back and
watch other people working.
sit up (intr) == stay out of bed till later than usual (usually reading, working, or waiting for someone):
I was very worried when he didn't come in and ! sat up till 3 a.m.
waiting for him.
She sat up all night with the sick child.
stand
stand by someone (tr) = continue to support and help him:
No matter what happens I'll stand by you, so don't be afraid.

stand for (tr) = represent:
The symbol 'x' usually stands/or the unknown quantity in
mathematics.
stand for Parliament = be a candidate for Parliament, offer yourself for election:
Mr Pitt stood for Parliament five years ago but he wasn't elected. stand up for (tr) = defend verbally:
His father blamed him, but his mother stood up for him and said that
he had acted sensibly.
Why don't you stand up for yourself? stand up to (tr) = resist, defend oneself against (a person or force):
This type of building stands up to the gales very well.
Your boss is a bully. If you don't stand up to him he'll lead you a
dog's life. stand out (intr) = be conspicuous, be easily seen:
She stood out from the crowd because of her height and her/laming
red hair.
stay
stay up (intr) = remain out of bed till later than usual, usually for pleasure:
Children never want to go to bed at the proper time; they always want
to stay up late.
step
step up (tr) = increase rate of, increase speed of (this usually refers to industrial production):
This new machine will step up production, (step it up)
take
be taken aback (intr) = be surprised and disconcerted:
/ was taken aback when I saw the bill. take after (tr) = resemble (one's parents/grandparents etc.):
He takes after his grandmother; she had red hair too.

My father was forgetful and I take after him; I forget everything. take back (tr) = withdraw (remarks, accusations etc.):
/ blamed him bitterly at first but later, when I heard the whole story,
I realized that he had been right and I went to him and took back my
remarks, (took them back) take down (tr) = write, usually from dictation:
He read out the names and his secretary took them down. (took
down the names/took the names down) take for (tr) = attribute wrong identity or qualities to someone:
I look him for his brother. They are extremely alike.
Do you take me for a fool? take in (tr) (a) = deceive:
At first he took us in by his stories and we tried to help him; but later
we learnt that his stories were all lies.

(b) = receive as guests/lodgers:
When our car broke down I knocked on the door of the nearest house. The owner very kindly took us in and gave us a bed/or the night.
People who live by the sea often take in paying guests during the summer, (take paying guests in/take them in)
(c) = understand, receive into the mind:
/ was thinking a/something else while she was speaking and I didn 'I really take in what she was saying-
I couldn't lake in the lecture stall. It was too difficult for me. (couldn 't take it in)
(d) = make less wide (of clothes):
I'm getting much thinner; I'll have to lake in my clothes, (fake my
clothes in/take them in)
take off (tr) = remove (when used of clothing 'take off' is the opposite of 'put on'):
He look off his coat when he entered the house and put it on again
when he went out. (look his coat off/took it off) take off (intr) = leave the ground (of aeroplanes):
There is often a spectators' balcony at airports, where people can
watch the planes taking of/and landing. take on (tr)
(a) = undertake work:
She wants someone to look after her children. I shouldn 't care to take onthejob. They are very spoilt, (take the job on/fake it on)
(b) = engage staff:
They're taking on fifty new workers at the factory.
(c) = accept as an opponent:
/'/; take you on at table tennis. (I'll play against you.)
/ took on Mr Pitt at draughts, (took Mr Pitt on/took him on) take out (tr) = remove, extract:
Petrol will take out that stain, (take the stain out/take it out)
The dentist took out two of her teeth. take somebody out = entertain them (usually at some public place):
Her small boy is at boarding school quite near here. I take him out
every month, (and give him a meal in a restaurant) take over (tr or intr) = assume responsibility for, or control of. in succession to somebody else:
We stop work at ten o 'clock and the night shift takes over until the
following morning.
Miss Smith is leaving to get married and Miss Jones will be taking
over the class/Miss Jones will be taking over from Miss Smith, (see
hand over) take to (tr)
(a) •= begin a habit. There is usually the impression that the speaker thinks this habit bad or foolish, though this is not necessarily always the case. It is often used with the gerund:

He took to drink, (began drinking too much) He took to borrowing money from the petty cash.
(b) = find likeable or agreeable, particularly at first meeting:
/ was introduced to the new headmistress yesterday. I can't say I took
to her.
He went to sea (= became a sailor) and took to the life like a duck to
water.
(c) = seek refuge/safety in:

When they saw that the ship was sinking the crew took to the boats. After the failure of the coup many of the rebels took to the hills and became guerillas.
take up (tr)
(a) = begin a hobby, sport or kind of study (there is no feeling of criticism here):
He took up golf and became very keen on it. (took it up)
(b) = occupy (a position in time or space):
He has a very smalt room and most of the space is taken up by a
grand piano.
A lota/an MP's time is taken up with answering letters from his
constituents.
talk
talk over (tr) = discuss:
Talk it over with your wife and give me your answer tomorrow, (talk over my suggestion/talk my suggestion over)
think ^
think over (tr) = consider:
/ can't decide straight away but I 'II think over your idea and let you know what I decide, (think your idea over/think it over)
throw
throw away/out (tr) = jettison (rubbish etc.):
Throw away those old shoes. Nobody could wear them now. (throw the shoes away/throw them away) throw up (tr) = abandon suddenly (some work or plan):
He suddenly got tired of the job and threw it up. (he threw up the job/threw the job up)
tie
tie someone up = bind his hands and feet so that he cannot move:
The thieves tied up the night watchman before opening the safe. (tied the man up/tied him up)
try
try on (tr) == put on (an article of clothing) to see if it fits:
CUSTOMER IN DRESS SHOP: / like this dress. Could I try it on? (try this dress on/try on this dress)

try out (tr) = test:
We won't know how the plan works till we have tried it out. They are trying out new ways of preventing noise in hospitals, (trying them out)
turn
turn away (tr) = refuse admittance to:
The man at the door turned away anybody who hadn't an
invitation card. (turned them away) turn down (tr) = refuse, reject an offer, application, applicant:
/ applied/or the job but they turned me down/turned down my
application because I dian 't know German.
He was offered £500 for the picture but he turned it down. (turned
down the offer/turned the offer down) turn into (tr) = convert into:
/ am going to turn my garage into a playroom for the children.
She turned the silver candlestick into a reading lamp. turn in (intr) = go to bed (used chiefly by sailors/campers etc.):
The captain turned in, not realizing that the icebergs were so close. turn on (tr) (stress on turn) = attack suddenly (the attacker is normally a friend or a hitherto friendly animal):
The tigress turned on the trainer and struck him to the ground. turn on/off (tr) = switch on/off (lights, gas. fires, radios, taps etc.) turn up/down (tr) = increase/decrease the pressure, force, volume (of gas or oil, lights, fires, or of radios):
Turn up the gas; it is much too low.
I wish the people in the next flat would turn down their radio. You
can hear every word. (turn the sound down/turn it down) turn out (tr)
(a) = produce:
The creamery turns out two hundred tons of butter a week. (turns it out)
(b) = evict, empty:
1 turn a person out == evict him from his house/flat/room:
At one time, if tenants didn't Ray their rent the landlord could turn them out.

2 turn out one's pockets/handbags/drawers etc. = empty them, usually looking for something:
'Turn out your Rockets,' said the detective.
3 turn out a room = (usually) clean it thoroughly, first putting the furniture outside:
I try to turn out one room every month if I have time. turn out (intr)
(a) = assemble, come out into the street (usually in order to welcome somebody):
The whole town turned out to welcome the winning football team
when they came back with the Cup.

(b) = develop:
I've never made Yorkshire pudding before so I am not quite sure how it is going to turn out.
Marriages arranged by marriage bureaux frequently turn out well.
(c) = be revealed. Notice the two possible constructions, i(turned out
that. . . and he turned out to be . . .:
He told her that he was a bachelor but it turned out that he was married with six children.
(She learnt this later.) Our car broke down half way through the journey but the hiker we had picked up turned out to be an expert mechanic and was able to put things right.
Note the difference between turn out and come out. With turn out
the fact revealed is always mentioned and there is no implication that
the facts are discreditable. With come out we are told only that certain
facts (usually discreditable) are revealed; we are not told what these
facts are.
turn over (tr) s= turn something so that the side previously
underneath is exposed:
He turned over the stone, (turned the stone over/fumed it over The initials 'PTO' at the bottom of a page mean 'Please turn over'. 'Turn over a new leaf.' (begin again, meaning to do better)
turn over (intr)
(a) = turn upside down, upset, capsize (used of vehicles or boats):
The car struck the wall and fumed over. The canoe turned over. throwing the boys info the water.
(b) = (of people) change position so as to lie on the other side:
It is difficult to turn over in a hammock.
When his alarm went off he just turned over and went to sleep again. turn up (intr) = arrive, appear (usually from the point of view of someone waiting or searching):
We arranged to meet at the station but she didn 't turn up.
Don't bother to look for my umbrella; it will turn up some day.
walk
walk out (intr) = march out in disgust or indignation:
Some people were so disgusted with the play that they walked out in the middle of the first act.
wait
wait on (tr) = attend, serve fat home or in a restaurant):
He expected his wife to wait on him hand and foot.
The man who was waiting on us seemed very inexperienced, he got
all our orders mixed up.
wash
wash up (tr or intr) = wash the plates etc. after a meal:
When we have dinner very late we don't wash up till the next morning, (wash up the dishes/wash them up)

watch
watch out (intr) = look out. watch out for (tr) = look out for (see page 357).
wear
wear away (intr) = gradually reduce; make smooth or flat: hollow out (used mostly of wood or stone. The subject is usually the weather, or people who walk on or touch the stone etc.):
It is almost impossible to read the inscription on the monument as
most of the Setters have been worn away. (by the weather) wear off (intr) = disappear gradually (can be used literally but is chiefly used for mental or physical feelings):
These glasses may seem uncomfortable at first but that feeling will
soon wear off.
When her first feeling ofShyness had worn off she started to enjoy

herself.
He began to try to sit up, which showed us that the effects of the drug were wearing off. wear out (tr or intr)
(a) (tr) = use till no longer serviceable; (intr) become unserviceable as a result of long use (chiefly of clothes):
Children wear out their shoes very quickly, (wear their shoes out/wear them out)
Cheap clothes wear out quickly.
(b) (tr) = exhaust (used of people; very often in the passive):
He worked all night and wanted to go on working the next day, but we saw that he was completely worn out and persuaded him to stop.
wind
wind up (tr or intr) = bring or come to an end (used of speeches or business proceedings):
The headmaster wound up (the meeting) by thanking the parents.
(wound the meeting up/wound it up)
wipe
wipe out (tr) = destroy completely;
The epidemic wiped out whole families, (wiped whole families out/wiped them out)
work
work out (tr) = find. by calculation or study, the solution to some problem or a method of dealing with it; study and decide on the details of a scheme:
He used his calculator to work out the cost. (work the cost out) Tell me where you want to go and I'll work out a route. This is the outline of the plan. We want the committee to work out the details, (work them out)

39 List of irregular verbs

364 Irregular verbs

The verbs in roman type are verbs which are not very common in modem English but may be found in literature. When a verb has two possible forms and one is less usual than the other, the less usual one will be printed in roman.
Compounds of irregular verbs form their past tenses and past participles in the same way as the original verb:
come came come overcome overcame overcome
set set set upset upset upset
Present and infinitive Simple past Past participle
abide abode abode arise arose arisen awake
awoke/awaked awoken/awaked,
be was been bear bore borne/born* heat
heat beaten become became become befall befell
befallen beget begot begotten begin began begun
behold beheld beheld bend bent bent bereave
bereaved bereaved/bereft* beseech besought besought bet
betted/bet betted/bet bid (= command} bade bidden bid (= offer)
bid bid bind bound bound bite bit bitten
*These past participles are not optional but carry different meanings and should be checked by the student in a reliable dictionary.

Present and infinitive	Simple past	Past participle
bleed	bled	bled
blow	Mew	blown
break	broke	broken
breed	bred	bred
bring	brought	brought
broadcast	broadcast	broadcast
build	built	built
burn	burned/burnt	burned/burnt
burst	burst	burst
buy	bought	bought

can~[	could	be able
cast	cast	cast
catch	caught	caught
chide	chid	chidden
choose	chose	chosen
cleave	clove/cleft	cloven/cleft*
cling	clung	clung
clothe	clothed/clad	clothed/clad
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
creep	crept	crept
crow	crowed/crew	crowed
cut	cut	cut
dare	dared/dwst	dared/durst
deal/di-.V	dealt /delt/	dealt /delt/
dig	dug	dug
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
dream	dreamed/dreamt	dreamed/dreamt
/dri:m/	/dri:md, dremt/	/dri:md, dremt/
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
dwelt	dwelled/dit^	^viewed/dwelt
eat	ate	eaten
fall	felt	fallen
feed	fed	fed
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
flee	fled	fled

*See footnote on page 353. +Present only.

Present and infinitive	Simple past	past participle
fling	flung	flung
fly	flew	flown
forbear	forbore	forborne
forbid	forbade /fa'basd/	forbidden
forget	forgot	forgotten
forgive	forgave	forgiven
forsake	forsook	forsaken
freeze	froze	frozen
get	got	got
gild	gilded/gilt	gilded/gilt
gird	girded/girt	girded/girt
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grind	ground	ground
grow	grew	grown
hang	hanged/hung	hanged/hung*
have	had	had
hear /hi3(r)/	heard /hard/	heard /ha:d/
hew	hewed	hewed/hewn
hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
kneel	knelt	knelt
knit*'	knit	knit
know	knew	known
lay	laid	laid
lead	led	led

lean	leaned/leant	leaned/leant
/H:n/	/li:nd, lent/	/li:nd, lent/
leap	leaped/leapt	leaped/leapt
/li:p/	/li:pt, lept/	/li:pt, lept/
leam	learned/leamt	learned/leamt
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain

'See footnote on page 353.
** = unite/draw together, knit (= make garments from wool) is a regular verb.
fPresent only.

Present and infinitive	Simple past	Past participle
light	lighted/lit	lighted/lit
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
may\	might	—
mean /mi:n/	meant /ment/	meant /ment/
meet	met	met
mow	mowed	mowed/mown
must\	had to	—
fiught\	—	—
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read /ri:d/	read /red/	read /red/
rend	rent	rent
rid	rid	rid
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen /'nzn/
run	ran	run
saw	sawed	sawed/sawn
say /sei/	said /sed/	said /sed/
see	saw	seen
seek	sought	sought
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
set	set	set
sew	sewed	sewed/sewn
shake	shook	shaken
sliall'{	should	—
shear	sheared/shore	sheared/shorn
shed	shed	shed
shine /Jain/	shone /Jun/	shone /Inn/
shoe	shoed/shod	shwd/shod
shoot	shot	shot
show	showed	showed/shown
shrink	shrank	shrunk
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sink	sank	sunk
sit	sat	sat
slay	slew	slain
sleep	slept	slept

fPresent on!y.

Present and infinitive	Simple past	Past participle
slide	slid	slid

sling	slung	slung
slink	slunk	slunk
slit	slit	slit
smell	smelled/smelt	smelted/smelt
smite	smote	smitten
sow	sowed	sowed/sown
speak	spoke	spoken
speed	speeded/sped	speeded/sped
spell	spelled/spelt	spelled/spelt
spend	spent	spent
spill	spilled/spilt	spilled/spilt
spin	spun	spun
spit	spat	spat
split	split	split
spread	spread	spread
spring	sprang	sprung
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
stick	stuck	stuck
sting	stung	stung
stink	stank/stunk	stunk
strew	strewed	strewed/strewn
stride	strode	stridden
strike	struck	struck
siring	strung	strung
strive	strove	striven
swear	sicore	sworn
sweep	swept	swept
swell	swelled	swelled/swollen
swim	swam	swum
swing	swung	swung
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
thrive	thrived/throve	thrived/thriven
throw	threw	thrown
thrust	thrust	thrust
tread	trod	trodden/trod

Present and infinitive	Simple past	Past participle
understand	understood	understood
undertake	undertook	undertaken
wake	waked/woke	waked/woken
wear	more	worn
weave	wove	woven
weep	wept	wept
wet	wetted/wet	wetted/wet
wiil't	would	—
win	won	won
wind	wound	wound
wring	wrung	wrung
write	wrote	written

fPresent only.

Index

a/an (the indefinite article) 1-4
form 1
with abstract nouns 13 D-E, 240 C, 345
omission 3
and one 2 E, 4, 349 B, 350
use 2
ability 136-8
see also can/could for ability
about 99
anxious about 27 C, 96
be about + infinitive 114 C
sorry about 27 B, 96
tell about 316 B
what/how about... ? 289 B
above 95 A, 99
abstract nouns 10 A, 13
it + be + noun + infinitive 240 C
it + be + noun + that-clause 343 C
+ that-clauses 345
omission of the 7 A, 7 C
absurd: + infinitive 26 B
+ that-clause 236 B
accuse + object + of 97, 315 B
across 99
actually 40 A
additions to remarks 112
adjectives 17-27
agreement 17 C
attributive 18 A, 18 D-E
comparative and superlative 20
comparisons 21-2, 341
demonstrative 9
distributive 46, 49 A
+ infinitives 26-7
interrogative 54-9
it + be + adjective + infinitive 26B-E.27D-E
kinds 17
+ ones/ones 24 A
order 19
participle 17 B
position 18
possessive: see possessive
adjectives
predicative 18 B-D
+ prepositions 96
used as pronouns 23, 24 B
of quality 19
quantitative: see all (of), any, both (of), enough, few/a few, little/a little, many/much etc., no, one, some
+ that-clauses 26-7
after the 23
admit: + gerund 261, 315 B
+ that 346 A
adverb clauses 336-42
see also clauses
adverbs 28-45
formed from adjective + ly 29
and adjectives with same form 30 A
comparative and superlative 31
comparisons 22 C, 34. 341
comparisons with like/as 21 H-I
of degree 41
of frequency 38
interrogative 60
followed by inversion 36, 45
kinds 28
of manner 35
order 39
of place 36
position 35-41, 45, 327
relative 75 E
sentence 40
of time 37

adverbs/conjunctions (conjuncts) 337
advice: expressions of 287-8
in indirect speech 320, 321 B
advise: +• gerund/infinitive 267 D
+ object + infinitive 244 A, 287 C-D, 320 A
+ that 235
afraid: + infinitive 27 B, 271 A
+ of 27 B, 271 A
+ so/not 347 B
+ that 27 B, 271 A
after: conjunction 92 B, 342
preposition 92 B
afterwards 37 A, 92 B
agent of passive verbs 302 A, 303 D. 305 A
ago: examples of use 183,188
agree
not used in continuous 168 C
to invitations 286 C
short answers with auxiliaries 108
anxious 27 C, 235
any 50 A, 50 C
anybody 51, 52 A-B
anyone 51, 52 A-B
anything 51 A, 51 C, 52 A
anyway 327 A
anywhere 36 B, 52 A
apologize for 97, 315 B
apostrophe in contractions
see contractions of auxiliary verbs
apostrophe for possessive/genitive; with nouns 14, 15 A
with in definite'pronoun one 62, 68 A
with someone/anyone etc. 51 B
with someone etc. else 52 B
not used with yours, hers, its etc. 62

+ infinitive 241 A, 269 A, 315 A
+ that (... should) 241 E-F. 235, used/not used in continuous 168 F
346 A
+ to + possessive adjective +
gerund 269 A
alike 21 G
all (of) 46 A. 46 C. 48 A-C
compared to every 46 A
allow: + infinitive/gerund 267 D
and may (permission) 127, 130,
131 D
almost 41 C
along 93 F, 99
although; see though/although
always: position 38 A-B
with present continuous 167 B
with present perfect 185 D
with simple present 173
among 95 F
an: see a/an
and 326
with adjectives 18 E
both ... and 326
come/go + and 335
in pairs of infinitives 246 I
another: one another 53 C
one . . . another 53 B
answers
to requests with can/may 131 C
to questions with must/need 151252 C

so as + infinitive 334 B
and when/while 331 B, 332
as if/though 292
ask
+(indirect object+) for 283 A
+ how/wh- + infinitive 242 A,
242 C
+ if/whether + clause 317 E,
318 B
+ (object +) infinitive 243 B,
283 B. 320
= invite 286 B
+ passive infinitive 320 C
+ that 243 B
assume: + infinitive 245 A-B, 306 114 B
+ that 346
assumption 160
at
after adjectives 96
arrive at a destination 93 B
be at a place 94 A
in directions 93 F
shout at 89 B
for time 90 A
for time/place 90 E
attempt (noun) 251
attempt (verb) 241
auxiliary verbs 106-12
form 106-7
in additions to remarks 112
in agreements/disagreements 109
in comment tags 111

appear: + adjective 18 B, 340 A-B
+ continuous infinitive 254 B
+ infinitive 240 A-B, 241 A,
241 D
it appears + that 346 A, 346 C
+ perfect infinitive 255 C, 256 B
aren't I? (= am I not?) 113
arrange
+ (for + object +) continuous
infinitive 254 B3
+ (for + object +) present
infinitive 241 A
+ that 235, 241 F
arrive at/in 93 B
articles 1-8
definite, see the
indefinitive, see a/an
as
adjective + as + subject + be
333 A, 340
as... as. not as/so... as 21 A,
22, 34 A, 341 A-C
meaning because/since 332,
338 A-B
and like 21 H-I
+ pronoun + auxiliary 22,
341 A-B
so + adjective + as + infinitive

bare infinitive 238 B 244 A 246
barely 41 C, 44, HOB
be (auxiliary verb) 113-14
form 107 A, 113
in continuous forms 113 B, 302 C
+ infinitive in indirect speech
321,229 B
+ infinitive for orders plans
114 A
in passive tenses 302-3
in short answers, question tags
etc, 108-12
subjunctive 290
was/were + infinitive for destiny
114 B
was/were + perfect infinitive
114 A2
were with singular subject 225,
228 B, 290 B, 292
be (ordinary verb) 115-17
form 113 A
for age, condition, size, weight,
prices 115 B-E
in continuous forms 115 B
to denote existence 115 A
there is/are 116 A
there is/it is 117
be able for ability
form 136
can/be able, could/was able 137
be about + infinitive 114 C, 241 B
be determined: + infinitive 241 A

in comparisons 22
modals 106, 107 B
in question tags 110
semi-modals 106, 107 C
in short answers 108
see also be, can/could etc., dare, do, have, may, must etc., need. ought, shall, used. will and contractions of auxiliary verbs
avoid + gerund 261
replacing negative purpose clause 336 C
away 36 A, 36 E, 39
back 30 A, 39
bad 18 D, 20 E
bad at/for 96
badly 35 F, 39

believe
(active) + object + infinitive 245
(passive) + infinitive 245, 254-6, 306
so/not 347 A
+ that 240 F, 245 A, 258, 346 A
+ what + subject + verb 346 E
below 95 B, 99
beneath 95 C
beside 95 D-E
besides 95 E, 99, 327 A
best
adjective 20 E, 21 B-C, 24 B, 26 C
adverb 31, 34 C
better (adjective) 20 E, 21 C-D, 26 C
better (adverb) 31, 34 B
had better 120
between 95 D. 95 F
both (of) 47, 48 A-C
both ... and 326
bound + infinitive 27 A
busy + present participle 275 C
but (conjunction) 98 B, 326
but (preposition)
+ bare infinitive 98 B
but for in conditional sentences 226 D
and except 95 H
wh- + should... but... ? 237 B
by (adverb) 99
by (preposition) 99
with agent of passive verb 302 A, 303 D, 305 A
by air/sea etc. 93 D
by myself etc. 70 C, 71
+ time expression 90 B, 216
+ vehicle 93 D

can/could for ability 136-8
form 136
can/be able, could/was able 137
in conditional sentences 221 Bl,

+ that 235
be for/against + gerund 259
be going to; for intention 203-5
for prediction 206
be on the point of 114 C
because
and as/since 332 B-D, 338
and for 330
become 18 B
before: adverb/preposition 90 B, 99
replacing negative purpose clause conjunction 90 B, 195 B, 342 A-B
beg
+ (object +) infinitive 243 A-B, 320 A, 320 C
+ passive infinitive 320 C
+ that 235, 346
begin + infinitive/gerund 267 A
behind 95 D, 99

and may 129
requests for permission 131, 283
can/could for possibility 135
could instead of may/might 134
can't/couldn't for negative deduction 159
can't/couldn't bear + gerund/infinitive 267 B
can't/couldn't help + gerund 261
can't/couldn't stand + gerund 261
cardinal numbers 348-9
care (about) (= feel concerned) 294 D
care for (= look after) 294 D
care (for) and like 294, 295 A-C
catch 274 A
cease + gerund/infinitive 267 A
certain 27 A
certainly 40 A
claim 241 A, 306 A
clauses: comparison 341
concession 329, 340
condition 221-9
noun 343-7
purpose 336-7
reason 330, 338 A
relative 72-85
result/cause 338 B, 339
result (with so/such , ,. that) 339
time 331, 342
cleft sentences 67 D, 76, 117 D
come: + infinitives of purpose 335
+ participles 275 A
command (verb)
+ object + infinitive 244 A
+ that... should 235
commands: direct 281-2
indirect 320-1
commas
with connective relative clauses 82
not used with defining relative clauses 72, 84
with non-defining relative clauses

222 C, 223 Bl
could + perfect infinitive 138,154
in purpose clauses 336 A
can/could for permission 128-31
form 128
could/was allowed to 130

adverbs 31
the + comparative adjective/
pronoun 24 B
see also comparison constructions
comparison constructions
alike and like 21 G
as and like 21 H-I
as... as, not so/as... as 21 A
as/than + gerund/infinitive
341 C-D
as/than + pronoun (+ auxiliary)
22
comparative + than 21 B, 34 B
the + comparative ... the +
comparative 21 D, 34 B
the + comparative/superlative
(pronouns) 24 B
the + superlative + in/of 21 C
the + superlative + that... ever
21 C
see also rather
complain 307, 316 C, 346 A
compound nouns 12 M, 14 E, 16
conditional clauses
but for meaning if it were not for
226 D
even if 226 A
if meaning as/since 221 Bl,
222 Cl
if and in case 227
with if omitted 223 B5, 225 B
if + should 224 E
if + were + infinitive 222 B2,
225 A
if + will for obstinate insistence
224 C
if + will/would for requests
224 A, 284 F, 284 H
if + won't 224 B
if •+• would like/care 224 D
if I were you for advice 225 A2,
287 C
if only 228
inversion of subject and auxiliary,
otherwise/or 226 E
provided (that) 226 G
suppose/supposing meaning what
if 226 H
whether... or 226 B

70 A 84
not used after say, tell etc. in
indirect speech 307
comment tags 111
comparative forms
adjectives 20

conditional sentences 221-9
in indirect speech 229
type 1 221
type 2 222
type 3 223
types 2 and 3 combined 223 B4
conditional tenses 219-20
perfect 220
present 219
congratulations 323 A3
conjunctions 326-33
adverbs/conjunctions (conjuncts)
327
co-ordinating 326
subordinating 328
conjuncts 327
connective relative clauses 82
consider
+ object + infinitive 24S A
(passive) + infinitive/perfect
infinitive 245 B, 306 A
+ that 240 F, 245 A, 258, 346
consonants 354
continue + gerund/infinitive 267 A
contractions of auxiliary verbs
102 B, 103 B, 104 B, 105 A-B
aren't 1113
can't 128
shan't 207
won't 207
see also he'd, he's, it's, it's and its
coolly 29 C
co-ordinating conjunctions 326
copulas (link verbs) 18 B-C, 169
countable nouns 2, 13 C-E
dare (auxiliary verb) 107 C, 161
I daresay 161 C
dare (ordinary verb) 161 E
dates 352
day: one day 4 A2
days of the week 352 A
deal, a great/good 25 B
decide: + infinitive 241 A, 241 F
+ how/wh- + infinitive 242
+ that... (should) 235, 241 E,
346 A-B, 346 E
decision + infinitive 251
deduction 156-9
deep (adjective/adverb) 30 A

deeply 30 B
defining relative clauses 72-7. 84
see also relative clauses
definite article: see the
delighted + infinitive 26 F

elder/eldest 20 H, 24 B
else('B> after someone etc. 52
emphasizing pronouns 71
enable + object + infinitive
244 A-B

demand 235. 346 A, 346 D
demonstrative adjectives/ pronouns 9
deny: + gerund 261, 264
in indirect speech 316 C
+ that 346 A-B
despite 329 C-D
determine/be determined
+ infinitive 241 A, 241 G
+ that 235, 346
determiners: a/an 1-4
either/neither 49
my/your/his/her etc. 62-3
the 6-8
this/that/these/those 9
direct (adjective/adverb) 30 A
direct and indirect speech 307
see aiso indirect speech
direct object: see object
directly 30 B
dislike
not used in continuous 168 B
+ gerund 261 A, 262
distributive adjectives/pronouns
each 46 B, 48 D
either/neither 49
every 46 B
do: form 124
auxiliary verb 125
ordinary verb 126
down 36 E-F, 39, 99
dread: + gerund 261, 262 B
dread to think 261
due 27 A
due to 27 A
during 91 B

each 46 B
each of 48 D
each other 53 C, 70 B
early 18 D, 30 A
either (adjective/pronoun) 49 A, 69
either (conjunction)
in additions to remarks 112 D
either ... or 49 B, 326

failure + infinitive 251
fair
with negative/interrogative verb
+ infinitive 26 B
only fair + infinitive 26 C
only fair that 236 A
fairly 41 A
and rather 42 A-C
fancy (= imagine) 261, 262 B
far: adjective 20 E-G
adverb 32, 41 B
farther/farthest: see far
fast (adjective/adverb) 30 A
feel: + adjective 18 B
used/not used in continuous tenses
168 A. 168 C, 169 A
feel like 97

encourage + object + infinitive
244 A-B, 320 A, 320 C-D
enjoy + gerund 261 A, 261 C,
295 B, 295 E
enough 30 A
adjective/adverb + enough +
infinitive 252 B
adverb of degree 41 A, 41 C
essential
+ (for + object +) infinitive 26 C
+ that 236 A
estimate: in active, + that 245 A
in passive, + infinitive or that
245 B, 306 A
even if/though 226 A, 340
eventually 37 A
ever: with affirmative verb 38 D
with present perfect 185 D
with superlatives 21 C, 185 D
after who, what, where etc. 61
every 46 A-B
every day etc. with simple present
tense 173 B
everybody 46 C, 52 A, 110 C
everyone 46 C, 52 A, 69, 110 C
everything 46 C, 52 A
everywhere 36 A, 52 A
or wherever 85 B
evidently 40 A
except; + bare infinitive 98 B
and but 95 H
exclamations in indirect speech
323 A
excuse 261 A, 262 C
expect
used/not used in continuous
168 C, 171 C
+ (object +) infinitive 243 A,
243 C, 255 C3
should/would have expected 231 C
+ so/not 347 A
+ that 346 A
experience 13 A-C
explain 89 B, 307, 316 C

+ period of time 91 A3, 187 A
after verbs 97
what ever for? 61
what. . . for? 58 B
forbid 244 A-B, 320 A-B
foreign plurals 12 B, 12 L
forget 268
+ how/wh- + infinitive 242 A,
242 C
+ how/wh- + subject + verb
268 C, 346 E
+ infinitive 241 A, 241 D-E
+ that 241 E, 268 C, 346 A
forgive 262 C
+ infinitive/that 27 D
fortunately 40 B
forward 39

+ object + bare infinitive 244 A, 245 A, 246 C, 273
+ object + present participle 273
passive forms + infinitive 306 A
+ that-clause 346
feminine forms of nouns 11 B-C
few/a few 5 A-C
find
(only) to find as connective link 249
+ object + present participle 274 A
passive forms + infinitive 306 A
+ (that) + gerund + (be) + adjective 258
+ that +• subject + verb 346
+ (that) it (be) + adjective + infinitive 67 D, 240 F
fine (and) + adjective 19 C
first 350-1
at first 90 E
the first + infinitive 77 A
foolishly 35 E
for (conjunction) 330
for (preposition) after adjectives/participles 96
ask for 283 A
care for 294, 295 B-C
and during 91 B
+ gerund 334 D
omission before indirect objects 88

shall for determination 208 B, 234 A
will for unpremeditated intention 201, 205. 214
will and want 210 A
won't for negative intention 209 F
future perfect, simple and continuous 216
future simple 207-9
form 207
for announcements of plans 209 E
for assumptions about future 209 A
used in conditional sentences, but not in if-clauses 221 A
in purpose clauses 336
used with, but not in time clauses 342 B
with verbs not used in continuous 209 D
will/shall 208
see also shall and will
future tenses: see future forms

gender
agreement of adjectives 17 C
nouns 11
personal pronouns 65
possessive adjectives 63 A

frankly 40 B
frequency adverbs 38
friendly (adjective, not adverb) 29 B
from 91 A, 93 A
funny f = strange) + infinitive/that 26 B
further/furthest: see far
future continuous tense 211-15
form 211
as ordinary continuous 212
for future without intention 213
compared to will + infinitive 214
future forms 198-216
be going to form 203
be going to for intention 204-5
be going to for prediction 206
examples of various forms 215
future continuous 211-15
future perfect 216 A
future perfect continuous 216 B
future simple (will/shall) 207-10
present continuous 202, 215
simple present 199
not used in time clauses 342 B
will + infinitive tor intention 201, 205
future for intention
be going to for premeditated intention 204-5
be going to and will 205
note on meaning 200
questions about intentions 215 B

verbs + gerund or infinitive 266-71
replacing be in passive 303 B
(= become) + adjective 18 B
get/have + object + past participle 119
have got (obligation) 144 B-C, 149-51
have got (possession) 122
+ in/into, on/onto, ofi, out/out of 93 D-F
+ in/to (= arrive at/in) 93 B
give up + noun/gerund 259 B
go: + infinitives of purpose 335
+ participles 275 A
go on + gerund/infinitive 270 A
going to, be 203-6
good
attributive/predicative 18 D
comparative and superlative 20 E
good at + noun/gerund 96
good for + object + infinitive 26 E
good of + object + infinitive 26 B
+ infinitive 26 C, 26 E
great deal (of)/great many 25 B, 33 B
grow (= become) + adjective 18 B

possessive pronouns 64
reflexive/emphasizing pronouns 70-71
generous + of + object + infinitive 26 B
generously 35 E
gerund 257-65
form and use 257
after mind 263
after no in short prohibitions 258
with nouns to form compound nouns 16
passive 265
perfect 264
after phrasal verbs 259 B
after possessive adjective/pronoun object 262
after prepositions 98, 259 A, 271
as subject of sentence 258
after to (preposition) 260 B
after verbs and expressions 261

hardly ever 38 A, 38 C, 44-5.
HOB
hardly . . . when 45, 342 E
hate
not used in continuous 168 B
+ gerund 295 C
would hate + (object +) infinitive 243 A, 295 A
have (auxiliary verb) 118-21
form 118 A
had better + bare infinitive 120, 287 B, 310 B
have to be for deduction 158
+ object + bare infinitive 119 A
+ object + past participle 119
+ object + present participle 121
used to form perfect tenses 118 B
have to: see obligation
have (ordinary verb) 122-3
form 122 B
have difficulty in + gerund 98
have got 122 B, 122 D. 123 B
meaning 'possess' 122
meaning 'take', 'give' etc. 123
he 22 C, 65
he'd = he had/he would 102 B, 110 C
he's = he is/he has 102 B, 110 C
hear
not used in continuous 168 A, 170 B
•+• object + bare infinitive 244 A, 246 C, 273 B-C
+ object + present participle 273
(only) to hear as connective link 249
in passive + full infinitive 273 D
+ that 346 A-B, 346 E
help
+ full or bare infinitive 246 H
+ (object +) infinitive 243 A

guarantee: + infinitive 241 A
+ that 346
habit expressed by:
simple past 177 C
simple present 173
used 162 B
will/would 230
had better 120, 287 B. 310 B
hair 13 A, 13 C
happen
+ continuous infinitive 241 G, 254 B
+ infinitive 241 A
it happens/happened that 346 C
+ perfect infinitive 255 C
+ that 241 D
hard 26 D, 30 A
hardly 44, 110 B
and barely/scarcely 44
hardly any/at all 44

his 62-3
home 8 A, 39, 93 C
honestly 40 B
hope
+ continuous infinitive 254 B3
hoping replacing who 77 B3
+ infinitive 241 A
+ infinitive represented by to 247
+ perfect infinitive 255 C3
+ that 346 A
hospital, with/without the 8 B
hotly 29 C
how: in exclamations 323 Al
+ infinitive 242 A, 242 C, 244 C
introducing noun clause 346 E
how (interrogative)
+ adjective/adverb 60 D
how are you? 60 D3
how do you do? 60 D3, 126
how much? 25 C, 33 B, 60 D
for measurements 58 E, 115 C-E
in suggestions 389 B
however 85 C
I 22 B, 65
if: ask if/whether 317 E
if you would 224 A, 284 F, 284 H
what if? 226 H
wonder if 318 A
sec also conditional clauses
imagine: + gerund 261 A
+ that 346 A
imperative 281
indirect commands 320-2
implore: + object + infinitive 244
in indirect requests 320
important
+ (for + object +) infinitive 26 C
+ that 236 A
in (adverb) 94 B
get in 93 B, 93 D-E

her: possessive adjective 62-3
object pronoun 22 C, 65-6
here 36 C-D
hers 62, 64 B
herself 70-1
high 30 A
highly 30 B
him 22 C. 65-6
himself 70-1

in case: and if 227
and lest 237 C2, 337 A
in front of 95 D
in order: + clause of purpose 336 B
in order/so as + infinitive 334 B-C
in spite of 329 C
indefinite article: see a/an
indefinite pronouns 68
indirect object: see object
indirect speech 307-25
direct to indirect speech 307
mixed types 324
present participle as connective 272 B5, 324 C
see also next six entries
indirect speech (advice) 320
advise + object + infinitive 287 A, 287 E, 320
•had better' 120, 310 B
'(if I were you) I should/would' 225 A2. 287 C
say/tell (+ that) + subject + should 321 Bl-2
indirect speech (commands) 320-2
'let him/them' 322 B
order/tell etc. + object + infinitive 320
say/tell etc. + subject + be + infinitive 321 A
indirect speech (questions) 317-19
affirmative verb used 317 A
ask with/without indirect object 317 C
ask/wonder etc. + how/wh- 317 D
ask if/whether 317 E
'shall I/we?' 318
'will/would/could you?' 319
indirect speech (requests) 320
ask + (object +) infinitive 243 B
'can/could/may/might I have?' 283 A
'can/could I see/speak to?' 283 -B
'could/would you?' 319, 320 D
requests with if-clauses 229 B
requests with 'shall I?' 318 B
indirect speech (statements) 308-16
conditional sentences 229, 308 C
'could' 312

summary of uses 239
after verb + how 244 C

before adverbs of manner 39
+ verb + noun subject 36 E
in (preposition) 94 A-B
after adjectives/participles 96
in adverb phrases 36 F
arrive in 93 B
in (good) time 90 C
in the beginning/end 90 E
after verbs 97

exclamations 323 A
infinitive and gerund constructions 315
'might,' 'ought to,' 'should,' 'would,' 'used to' 311
'must' and needn't' 325
past tenses unchanged 309
pronouns and possessive adjectives 313 A
say, tell and other introductory verbs 316
'I/we shall/should' 308 C
tense changes necessary 308
'this/these' 313 B
expressions of time and place 314
unreal past tenses 310
'yes' and 'no' 323 B
indirect speech (suggestions) 289 D, 322 A, 322 B3
infinitive 238-56
form 238
after adjectives 26-7
ask/beg + (object +) infinitive 243 B
bare infinitive 246
after be 114
after be about 114 C
as a connective link 249
continuous 254, 306 D
and gerund constructions 266-71
in indirect commands/requests 320-1
introductory/final 253
with introductory it 240 B
after know/think etc. 245
after nouns 250-1
after only 249 A
passive 250 B2, 302 D-E
after passive verbs 245 B-E, 306
perfect continuous 256
perfect infinitive with auxiliaries and other verbs 255, 306
to express purpose 334-5
replacing relative clause 250
split infinitives 248
as subject 240
after suppose/be supposed 306 B
represented by to 238 D, 247
without to (= bare infinitive) 246
after too/enough/so ... as 252

with so/neither/nor in additions to remarks 112

after verb + how/wh- 242
after verb + object 244
after verb or verb + object 243
after verbs and phrases 241
after verbs of the senses 273 B-D
verb + that or infinitive 241 D-F
after verb + whether 242 B
after was/were 114 B
insist
+ on + (possessive adjective or
object pronoun +) gemnd 262 A
+ that 346 A
intention: note on meaning 200
see also future for intention
intelligent + (of + object +)
infinitive 26 B
intend + gerund or (object +)
infinitive 243 A, 267 C
interested in 96 A
interesting + infinitive or that
26 E
interrogative of verbs
form and contractions 104 A-B
after certain adverbs 45
in comment tags 111
not used in indirect questions 317
in invitations 286
not used after certain phrases
104 C3, 104 D, 283 C
in question tags 110
in questions 56-61. 104 C
not used in questions without
identity of subject 55, 303 D
in requests 104 D, 131, 283-4
in suggestions 289 A-B
see also auxiliary verbs and tenses
interrogatives
adjectives/pronouns 54-9
adverbs 60
into 93 D-F, 94 B
intransitive verbs 362
inversion of subject and verb
after certain adverbs/adverb
phrases 36 C, 36 E-F
with had/should/were in
conditional sentences 224 E, 225
with say/reply etc. after direct
speech 316
inversion using interrogative form
of verb 45
invitations 286, 296 B
answers to invitations 286 C
in indirect speech 286 B
invite + object + infinitive 244 A.
286 B
irregular comparisons
adjectives 20 E
adverbs 31 B
irregular plurals of nouns 12
irregular verbs 364
it (impersonal pronoun)
representing clause/phrase 67 E
in cleft sentences 67 DI, 76
in expressions of distance,
temperature, time etc. 67 C
for identity 117 C
subject of impersonal verbs
(appear/happen/look/seem) 67 F
introductory it 67 D, 240 B
it is + period of time + since 188
it is/there is 117
it is time + subject + unreal past
287 F, 293
subject of occur/turn out 241 D.
346 C
it (personal pronoun) 62, 65 A, 66,
67 A-B
it'd = it had/it would 102 B, 110 C
it's = it is/it has 102 B, HOC
it's and its 62
it's no use/good + gerund 261 A,
261 C
its 62, 63 A
itself 70, 71
just (adjective) = fair/right
+ negative/interrogative verb +
infinitive 26 B
only just + infinitive 26 C
only just + that 236 A
Just (adverb) 41 C, 41 E
have/had + just + past participle
183, 194 B
if you would just 284 F
just about + infinitive 114 C
justly = fairly/rightly 30 B

keep; + adjective 18 B
meaning continue, not used in
continuous 168 F
+ (on +) gerund 259 B, 261
kind + of + object + infinitive
26 B
kindly: adjective/adverb 29 B, 30 A
adverb 35 E
know
not used in continuous tenses
168 C
+ how/wh- + infinitive 242 A
in passive + infinitive 245, 256,
306 A, 306 D
likely; no adverb form 29 B
+ infinitive or that 27 E
replacing may? 132 E
link verbs (copulas) 18 B-C. 169
liquid measure 353 C
listen 168 A
little = small (adjective) 19 A-B
little/a little
adjectives/pronouns 5 A-C
adverbs 5 D, 41 C
little, less, least
adjectives/pronouns 20 E
adverbs 31 B
long (adjective/adverb) 30 A, 30 C

+ that 346
knowledge 13 A, 13 D
late: adjective 18 D
adjective/adverb 30 A
adverb 37 B
lately 30 B, 37 A, 185 C
learn
+ how/wh- + infinitive 242 A, 242 C
+ infinitive 241 A, 241 E
(only) to learn as connective 249 B
+ that 346 A
least: see little, less, least
length, measures of 353 B
less: see little, less, least
lest 237 C, 337 B
let: + bare infinitive 246 D
in indirect speech 322
let him/her/it/them 281 C
let us for commands 281 B
let us for suggestions 289 A, 322
+ object + bare infinitive 244 A
light (adjective) 18 D
like (adjective/preposition) 306 C
in comparisons 21 G-I
feel like 97
rather like 42 B
like (verb)
and care (for) 294 A, 295 C
not used in continuous 168 B
+ gerund 262 B, 295 C
+ infinitive 295 C-D
and prefer 297 A3, 298 A-B
= think wise/right 295 D
see also would like

may/might as well
may/might I? requests 131, 283
may/might well 35 F
for permission 127, 129-31, 283
for possibility 132-4. 157
in purpose clauses 336 B
you might requests 285 A-B
may/might + perfect infinitive
might in type 3 conditionals 223 B
might in reproaches 255 B6
in speculations about past 133, 134 B
me 22 B-C, 65
me/my with gerund 262
mean (= intend)
+ (object +) infinitive 243 A, 269 B
mean (= involve)
+ gerund 261-2, 269 B
measures 348-53
might: see may/might
mind (= object) 283
not used in continuous 168 B
do you mind? requests 263 C
don't mind and don't care 294 D
+ gerund 261 A, 262 B 263

long (verb)
+ for + noun/pronoun 97
+ infinitive 241 A
look 18 B-C
used/not used in continuous 168 A,169 B
look forward to 259 B
lots (oil/a lot (of| 25 B, 33 B
love (verb)
not used in continuous 168 B
+ gerund 295 C
would love + (object +) infinitive 243 A
would love + to 247
lovely (adjective)
+ (and +) adjective 19 C
+ infinitive 26 E
lucky + infinitive or that 27 D
luckily 40 B
make: + object + adjective 18 B
+ object + bare infinitive 244 A, 246 E
(passive) + full infinitive 246 E,
manage + infinitive 241 A, 241 C
many/much, more, most (adjectives/pronouns) 20 E
many and a lot of 25
masculine forms of nouns 11 B-C
mass nouns 13
may/might + infinitive
form 127, 132 A, 132 E
in concession clauses 340
in conditional sentences 221 BI, 222 CI

naturally 40 B
near: adjective 20 G
adverb 30 C
preposition 30 C2
nearly 30 B, 41
necessary
+ (for + object +) infinitive 26 C
+ that... (should) 236 A
need: see obligation
need (= require) 155
negative interrogative: form 105
in question tags 110 A
in requests 105 B, 131 B
negatives of tenses 103
neglect + infinitive 241 A
neither (adjective/pronoun) 49 A, 69
with question tag 110 B
neither (conjunction)
in additions to remarks 112 D
neither ... nor 49 B, 326
neither/nor + inversion 45
never: with comparatives 21 C
and ever 38 D
with inversion 45

mine (possessive pronoun) 62, 64
misrelated participles 280
miss 4- gerund 2fil
modal verbs 106, 107 B-C
months 352 A
more: see many etc,, much etc.
moreover 327 A
most: see many etc., much etc.
mostly 30 B
much, more, most (adverbs) 31,
33, 41 C
more, most in comparisons 20 A,
31
most + adjective, to mean very
21 C, 33 E
much/a lot/a great deal 33 B
must for advice
and ought in indirect speech
287 A
compared to ought/should 141
must for deduction: form 156
compared to may/might 157
. must/have to: see obligation
my 62-4

notice (verb) 273
noun clauses 343-7
after abstract nouns 345
after adjectives/participles 344
as subject 343
after verbs 346
beginning with wh-words 346 E
nouns 10-16
collective 12 H
compound 12 M, 14 E, 16
countable nouns 2, 13 C~E
function 10 B
gender 11
kinds 10 A
with of for possession 15
plural forms 12
possessive/genitive case 14-15
proper nouns 6 E-G
uncountable/mass 13
see also abstract nouns
now 37 A
nowhere 36 B, 45, 52 A
numerals 348-51

object
direct/indirect becoming subject
of passive verb 302, 303 C
omission of relative pronoun
object 74 B-C, 75 B-C
order of direct/indirect objects
66, 88
order of object and adverb in
phrasal verbs 362-3
verb + object + infinitive 89 A,
243-4
verb + to + object 89 B
object to 262 B

position in sentence 38 A, 38 C
with present perfect 185 D, 186
nevertheless 327 F, 329 A
nice: + (and +) adjective 19 C
(= kind) + of + object +
infinitive 26 B
<= pleasant) + (for + object •+-)
infinitive 26 E
no: adjective 50 B, 110 B
and yes in indirect speech 323 B
no one 51, 52 A-B, 110 B
nobody 51, 52 A-B, 110 B
non-defining relative clauses
78-81, 84
none 50 B, HOB
nor: see neither (conjunction)
not: contracted to n't 103
not only/till + inversion 45
not/so representing noun clauses
231, 347
not as/so ... as 21 A, 22 B, 34 A,
341
not only . . . but also 326
nothing 51 A, 51 C, 52 A

needn't + perfect infinitive
152-4
needn't/could + perfect infinitive
154 A
needn't/shouldn't + perfect
infinitive 154 B
needn't have done/didn't have to
do 153
ought: form 139
ought/should compared to
must/have to 141
ought/should + continuous
infinitive 142
ought/should + perfect infinitive
143, 154 B
should; form 140
oblige + object + infinitive 244 A
obviously 40 A
occasionally 38 A-B
occur to: + infinitive 241 B, 241 D
+ that 346 A, 346 C
odd (= strange)
+ infinitive 26 B2
+ that 236 B
of: after adjectives/participles 96
all/both/each + of 48
all/both/few etc. + oi +
whom/which 80, 82
both of 47
a few/little of 5 A-B
good/kind etc, of sb + infinitive
26 B
neither/either of 49 B
+ noun (possessive/genitive) 15 B
of all 34 C
after words of quantity 16 BI
some/any/none of 50
after verbs 97

obligation 139-55
have to compared to must 145
have to/have got to 144 C
have to/must: forms 144
have to?/must?/need? 151
have to/need: negative forms 149
must/needn't in indirect speech 325
must not/need not 146-7
need: forms 148
need not compared to other forms 150

on (adverb) 94 C, 99
in directions 93 F
before adverbs of manner 39
transport 93 D
on (preposition) 94 C. 99
in adverb phrases 36 F
with day/date 90 A
in directions 93 F
on arrival/arriving 90 D
on time 90 C
transport 93 D
after verbs 97
once 38 A-B
one (adjective/pronoun) and a/an 2 E, 4. 349 B, 350
after adjectives 24
one another 53 C
one ..., another/otherfs)... 53 B
this/that one 9 C
one (indefinite pronoun) 62, 68 A
one's (possessive adjective) 62, 68 A
one's own 63 C
oneself 70-1
only: adverb 41 D
+ hy/when etc, with inversion 45, 104 F
if only 228, 301 E
+ infinitive as connective 249 A
not only ... but also 326
the only + noun/one + infinitive 250 A
onto 94 C
opposite 95 D
or 326
either ... or 49 B
or (else)/otherwise 226 E-F
whether ... or 226 B
order
+ object + infinitive 244 A, 320
+ that 235, 321 B3
ordinal numbers 350-1
ordinary verbs 101-5
other/others 53 A-B
Otherwise 226 E-F, 327 C
ought: form 106, 107 B, 139
for advice 141 B2, 287 A, 311 C
for assumption 160 D, 311 B
with continuous infinitive 142
which of 56 B, 59 B
off (adverb) 93 D, 99
before adverbs of manner 39
+ verb + noun subject 36 E
off (preposition) 93 D, 99
offer (verb)
+ direct/indirect object 88 A
in indirect speech 286 A, 318 C
+ infinitive 241 A
officially 40 B
often 38 A-B
old 19 B

in indirect speech 311 B
compared to must/have to 141
for obligation 141-3
with perfect infinitive 143
our 62, 64 A
ours 62, 64 A
ourselves 70-1
out 36 E, 39, 93 D-E
out of 93 D-E
over 95 A, 99
owing to 27 A
own (adjective/pronoun) 63 C
pardon (verb) 262 C
participles: misrelated 280
see past participle, perfect participle, present participle
passive 302-6
form of tenses 302
active and passive equivalents 303
get replacing be 303 B
infinitives after passive verbs 245 B-F, 306
prepositions with passive verbs 305
questions in the passive 303 D
that... should + passive
infinitive 235, 302 E-F
uses 304
past continuous tense: form 178
alternative to simple past 181
combined with simple past 179 D-E
past equivalent of present continuous 180 A-B
usually unchanged in indirect speech 309 B-C
past participle: form 182 A, 279 A
use as adjective 17 B, 26 F, 279 Bl
with have + object 119
in passive tenses 302
replacing subject + passive verb 279 B3
past perfect continuous tense 197
past perfect tense: form 194 A
in conditional sentences 223
in indirect speech 196, 308 B, 309

for actions viewed in retrospect 194 B
in time clauses 195
see also subjunctive
past simple tense
see simple past tense
past subjunctive: form 290 B
after as if/though 292
after if 222-9
after if only 228 B
after it is time + subject 293
unreal pasts in indirect speech 310
after wish + subject 300
after would rather/sooner + subject 297 B, 298 D
perfect infinitive 255, 306 A-B
perfect infinitive continuous 256, 306 D
perfect participle: active 278
passive 279 C
perhaps 40 A
permission 127-31
see also can/could for permission
permit (verb) 244 A, 267 D
personal pronouns 65-9
form and use 65
indefinite pronouns (you, one, they) 68
uses of it 67 A-B
position of pronoun objects 66.88
pronoun objects of phrasal verbs 66 B,. 362
they used with someone etc. 69
persuade + object + infinitive 244 A-B
phrasal verbs 362-3
plan (verb)
+ continuous infinitive 254 B3
+ infinitive 241 A
plurals of nouns 12
point
there's no point in/what's the point of? 98 A
poor: the poor 23 A
various meanings 18 D
possessive adjectives: form 62
agreement 63 A
for clothes and parts of body 63 B
with gerund 262

with have + object 121, 272 B3
in indirect speech 272 Bo, 324 C
replacing main clause 276
replacing clause of reason 277
replacing relative clause 77 B, 272 B4
after spend/waste + object 275 B
summary of uses 272 B
after verbs of sensation 273
present perfect continuous tense 190-3
with someone, anyone etc. 69
or the 7 A6
possessive case of nouns 14-15
possessive pronouns 62, 64
possibility 132-5
possible
+ (for + object +) infinitive 26 D
+ that 27 E
possibly 40 A
postpone + gerund 261 A
prefer/would prefer 295 A-C, 297-8
prefer + gerund + to + gerund 295 C, 297 Al
prefer + noun + to + noun 297 Al
would prefer + infinitive 295 A, 298 C
would prefer + object + infinitive 297 B, 298 D
preference 295, 297-8
prepared/be prepared: + for 97
+ infinitive 241 A, 241 C
prepositions 86-99
after adjectives/participles 96
or adverbs 99
in end position 87
+ gerund 86, 98, 259
before nouns/pronouns 86-7
omission/use before indirect objects 88, 89 B
of position 93 F, 94-5
of time and date 90-2
of travel and movement 93
after verbs 97, 362-3
present continuous tense 164-71
form and spelling 164-5
with always 167 B
for future plans 166 C
for present actions 166 A-B
verbs used/not used in 168-71
present participle 272-7
form and spelling 165, 272 A
as adjective 17 B, 26 E
after catch/find/have + object 274
after come, go, be busy 275
to form continuous infinitives 254, 256

negative imperative 258, 281
no + gerund 258
promise
+ continuous infinitive 254 B3
+ infinitive 241 A, 241 D
+ indirect object 88 C
+ that 346 A
pronouns: see interrogatives, personal pronouns, possessive pronouns, relative pronouns etc.
propose (= intend) + infinitive

present perfect tense 182-9
form 182 A
with ever 185 D
with for and since 187
with it is ... since 188
with just 183
and simple past 184-9
with (that). .. ever in
comparisons 21 C
present simple tense
see simple present tense
present subjunctive: form 290 A
I/he/she/it were 222 B, 225, 287 C
use 291
presently (= soon) 29 C
presume: in active, + that 245 A
in passive, + infinitive or that
245 B, 306 A
presumably 40 A
pretend
+ continuous infinitive 241 G,
254 B2
+ infinitive 241 A, 241 D
+ perfect infinitive 241 H,
255 Cl, 256 B
+ that 346 A
pretty: + adjective 19 D
adjective/adverb 30 A
prettily 30 B
prevent + gerund 261 A
probable + that 27 E
probably
adverb equivalent of likely 29 B
sentence adverb 40 A
progressive tenses
see past/present etc. continuousquestion tags 110
tenses
prohibition: forbid 244 A-B, 320 B
must not 146

with affirmative verb after
introductory phrases 104 C3
beginning with auxiliaries 108
comment tags 111
with how/wh- 54-61
in indirect speech 317-19
interrogative verb forms 104-5,
107 A-B
question tags 110
short answers to questions 108
see also invitations, obligation,
permission, requests
quite 41 C, 43

rarely 38 A. 38 C
rather 41 C, 42
and fairly 42 A-C
rather than ... I would 298 C
would rather 297-8 C
really 41 C
reason, clauses of 338 A
as/because 332 B-C

269 C
propose (= suggest)
+ gerund 261 A-B, 262 B,
269 C, 289 C
+ that 289 C, 346 A
prove: + infinitive 241 A
+ that 346 A
provided (that) 226 G
purpose 334-7
avoid/prevent + gerund 336 C
clauses of purpose 336
for + gerund 334 D
go/come + infinitive/imperative
335
in case/lest 337
in order/so as + infinitive
334 B-C
in order that/so that/that 336
infinitive + noun + preposition
334 D
infinitive of purpose 334 A
negative purpose clauses 336 C
put off + gerund 259 B

quantifiers
a lot (oft/lots (of)/a great deal (of)
25 B. 33 B
all (of) 46 A. 46 C, 48 A-C
both (of) 47, 48 A-C
enough 252 B
(a) few/(a> little 5
many/much 25
cardinal numbers 348-9
some/any/no/none 50

questions
with affirmative verb 65 B2,
303 D

phrasal verbs in 81 D
preposition in end position 74 C,
75 C
preposition + whom/which 74 C,
81 C
what and which 83
whoever, whichever etc. 85
relative pronouns 72-85
forms 73, 78
remember
not used in continuous 168 C
with how/wh- + clause 268 C
with how/wh- + infinitive 242
with infinitive or gerund
268 A-B
with possessive adjective/pronoun
+ gerund 262 B
remind
+ object + infinitive 244 A
+ object + that 244 D
remind somebody of something
97
reminding + clause in indirect

because and for 330
replaced by participle phrase 277
recently 37 A
with present perfect 185 C
reciprocal pronouns 53 C, 70 B
recommend
+ gerund or object + infinitive 267 D, 320 A
with that 235
reflexive pronouns 70
refuse: and agree/accept 269 A
in indirect speech 315 A
+ infinitive 241 A, 241 C
regret
+ gerund/infinitive 268 A-B
+ noun/pronoun or that 268 C
relative adverbs 75 E
relative clauses 72-85
all, both etc. + of + whom/which 80
cleft sentences 67 D, 76, 117
commas in 84
connective 82
defining 72-7, 84
non-defining 78-81, 84
object pronoun omitted in 74 B-C, 75 B-C

require
it requires + gerund/passive infinitive 267 E
resent + gerund 261 A
resolve: + infinitive 241 A, 241 F
+ that 241 F, 346 A, 346 D
result, clauses of 338 B, 339
right: (adjective) 26 B-C, 30 A
(adverb) 30 A
rightly 30 B
risk + gerund 261 A
round: (adverb) position 39
adverb/preposition 99
followed by verb + subject 36 E-F

's (contraction of is/has) 102 B
's/s' (possessive case) 14
say
without comma in indirect speech 307
in indirect commands/advice 321
in passive + infinitive 306 A
and tell 316 A-B
scarcely 44, 110 B
scarcely ever/scarcely ... when 45
sea: at sea/at the sea 8 C
see
used/not used in continuous 168 A, 170 A
+ how/wh- + infinitive 242 A
+ object + bare infinitive 246 C, 273 B
+ object + present participle
speech 324 C
reply with direct/indirect speech 316 C
report (passive): + infinitive 306 A
+ perfect infinitive 255 C2, 256 B
reported speech
see indirect speech
request
+ object + infinitive 244 A
+ that 244 E
requests 283-5
can/could/may/might I 131, 283
could/couldn't you 284 A
I should/would be grateful if you would 224 A, 284 H
I wish you would 284 J, 301 D
I wonder(ed)/was wondering if 284 K
if you would 224 A, 284 F
perhaps you would 284 E
would you be good enough/so good as 252 C, 284 I
would you like to 284 G
would you mind 263 C, 284 D
you might 285
you will... won't you 284 C

senses, verbs of
not used in continuous 168 A
169-70
with present participle or bare infinitive 273
sentence adverbs 40
sequence of tenses 217-18
shall: in commands 234 B, 282 A
for determination 208 li
in future forms 207-8, 211 A
in indirect speech 308 C, 318
for intention 234 A
let's ..., shall we? 110 A
shall I/we? 233, 318
shall you? 234 C
and will 208
she 22 C, 65
short (adjective/adverb) 30 A
shortly 30 B
should
after command/order 237 F, 321 B3
after if 224 E, 237 E
after in case/lest 237 C. 337
in purpose clauses (formal) 237 C-D, 336 B-C
+ subject 224 E, 225 B
that... should after adjectives 236
that... should for indirect commands 237 F, 321 B3
that... should after verbs 235. 302 E-F
who/what/where etc. + should ... but 237 B

273 A
(only) to see as connective 249
in passive + full infinitive 246 C
+ that 346 A-B
seeing that: (= as) 338 A
(= when) 333 C
seem: + adjective 18 B
not used in continuous 168 F
+ continuous infinitive 241 G,
254
+ infinitive 240 A-B, 241
+ perfect infinitive 255 CI,
256 B
+ that 346 A-C
seldom 38 A-C, 45, 110 B

should/would for first person:
in conditional 219-20, 222-3
conditional forms in indirect
speech 308 C
if I were you I should/would
225 A2. 287 C
+ think 231
show
+ indirect object 88 C
+ object + how/wh- + infinitive
242 A, 244 C
+ that 244 D
simple past tense 175-7
form and spelling 175
in indirect speech 196, 308-9
irregular verbs 176, 364
and past continuous 179 D-E,
181
for past events and habits 177
and past perfect 194-6
and present perfect 184-9
unreal pasts: see subjunctive
simple present tense 172-4
form and spelling 172
in conditional clauses 221
for dramatic narrative 174 C
for planned future actions 174 D,
199
for habitual actions 173
in newspaper headlines 174 B
to introduce quotations etc. 174 A
in time clauses 174 G, 342 BI
with verbs not used in continuous
174 E
since (adverb) 37 A, 37 C, 91 A
since (conjunction) 91 A, 188,
342 C
= as/because 332. 338 A
since (preposition) 91 A, 185 D,
187B
small 18 D
and little 19 B
smell (verb): + adjective 18 B
not used in continuous 168 A,
169 C
+ object + present participle
273 A
after why, querying justice of
assumption 237 A
should for advice, assumption.
obligation
form 106, 107 B, 140
for. advice 141 B2, 287 A, 287 C
for advice in indirect speech
311 C-D, 318 B, 321 B
for assumption 160 B-C
for obligation 141-2
for obligation in indirect speech
311 B-C, 322 B
for unfulfilled obligation 143
shouldn't/needn't have done
154 B

+ adjective/adverb with inversion
45, 339 C
+ adjective/adverb + that
339 B-C
+ as + infinitive of purpose
334 B
+ auxiliary + subject 112 A
conjunction meaning therefore
327 D-E
not so/as + adjective/adverb +
as 21 A, 34 A
pronoun + auxiliary 109 A
+ that to introduce clause of
purpose 336
after think etc, to represent that-
clause 231 A, 347
some
= a certain amount/number of
50 A, 50 C
some day 4 A2
some or other 50 C
some ... other/others 53 B
somebody 51-2, 110 C
somehow 35 G
someone 51-2, 110 C
something 51 A, 51 C, 52 A
sometimes 38 A-B, 173 B
somewhere 36 A-B, 52 A
soon 37 A
sooner
no sooner . .. than 45, 342 E
the sooner ... the sooner 342 E
would sooner 297, 298 A
sorry about/for 27 B, 271 B
sound (verb): + adjective 18 B
not used in continuous 168 F
spelling rules 354-61
adding s/es/ies 12 A-C, 172 C
doubling final consonant 168 B,
175 B, 355
dropping final e 165 A, 356
endings in ce and ge 357
endings in y 165 C, 175 B. 359
hyphens 361
ie and ei 360
the suffix ful 358
spend + object + present

so
+ adjective + as + infinitive 267 A
252 C

still: adjective/adverb 30 A
adverb of time 37 D
conjunction 327 F
stop (= cease/halt) 270 B
stupid 26 B
stupidly 35 E
subject: gerund 258
infinitive 240
introductory it 67 D
that-clause 343
subjunctive 290-3
see also past subjunctive
present subjunctive
subordinate clauses 217
see also clauses
such 339
suggest
+ gerund 261 A, 262 B, 289 C-D
in indirect speech 289 D, 322
suggestions 289
in indirect speech 289 D, 318 D,
322 A
superlative forms
adjectives 20
adverbs 31
the + superlative adjective/
pronoun 24 B
see also comparison constructions
suppose
in passive, + infinitive 245 C-E,
306 B
suppose I/we? for suggestions
289 B
suppose/supposing? = what if?
226 H
+ that 346 A
sure 27 A
surely 40 A
take the trouble 241 B-C
take to 259 B
taste: + adjective 18 B-C
used/not used in continuous
168 A, 169 D
teach 244 A, 244 C-D
tell: + direct/indirect object 88
+ how/wh- 346 E
+ object + how + infinitive 77 A
244 C
+ object + infinitive 244 A

them 22 C, 65-6
themselves
emphasizing pronoun 71
reflexive pronoun 70
then 37 A
there (adverb) 36 C
there (pronoun)
there is/are 116

participle 275 B
start + gerund/infinitive 267 A
(only) to be told as connective
link 249 B
and say 316 A-B
+ that 244 D, 346 A
tenses? continuous
verbs not used in 168-71
see future forms, past continuous
tense, present continuous tense
etc.
tenses, sequence of 217-18
than
am! with comparatives 21 B, 22,
34 B, 341
+ gerund or infinitive 341 D
+ pronoun (+ auxiliary) 22
that (relative pronoun) 72-6
as object, often omitted 74 B-C,
75 B-C
or which 75 A-C
or who/whom 74 A-C
that + adjective 341 A
that/those 9
that- and that... should clauses:
introduced by it 67 D, 346 C
with it + be + adjective 26-7,
236, 343 A
after nouns 343 C
so that/in order that/that 336 B
so/such ... that 339
with statements in indirect
speech 307
with subject + be + adjective
27 B-F, 344
after verbs 302 E, 346
the (the definite article) 6-8
+ adjective, to represent class
6 D, 23
+ adjective + one/ones 24 D
+ comparative 24 B
+ comparative (the .. . the ...)
21 D, 34 B
+ first/second/only 6 B5
+ noun, to represent class 6 C
omission 7-8
with proper nouns 6 E-G
+ superlative 6 B5, 24 B
+ superlative etc. + infinitive
their (possessive adjective) 62
theirs (possessive pronoun) 62

expressions with possessive case
15 A3
prepositions of time 90-2
time clauses 195, 309 C, 342
conjunctions with 331
future forms not used in 342 B
in indirect speech 309 C
to (infinitive particle) 238

there is/it is 117
therefore 327 E
they
with either/neither etc. 69
as indefinite pronoun 68 B
subject pronoun 22 C, 65
thine 62
think
use with continuous tenses 168 C, 171 A
+ it + adjective + infinitive 240 F
in passive + infinitive 245, 306 A, 306 D
should/would think 231 A-B
+ so/not 231 A, 347 A
+ that 346 A
+ wh'/how + clause 346 E
+ wh-/how + infinitive 242 A
this/these 9
this week etc. with present perfect or simple past tense 185 B
thou, thee 65 A
though meaning 'but/yet' 327 G
though/although 327 G, 329 B, 329 D, 333 A-C, 340
compared to in spite of 329
through (adverb/preposition) 99
thy 62
till 92 A, 342 A-B
time
in (good) time, on time 90 C
it's time 293
time
adverbs of frequency 38
adverbs of time 37
as, when, while 331
expressions in indirect speech 3[14]
expressions followed by inversion 4[5]. 3[42 E]

us 22 B-C, 65
used (adjective) 163
used (auxiliary verb) 107 C, 162
usually 38 A-B, 173 B

verbs
active to passive 302
active tenses, table of 102 A
auxiliaries and modal auxiliaries 106-12
classes of verbs 100
not used in continuous tenses 168-71
imperative 281
interrogative 104-5
interrogative not used after certain phrases 104 C
introduction 100
irregular 364
negative forms 103

bare infinitive (without to) 246
particle or preposition? 260
representing its infinitive 247
to (preposition)
with adjectives/participles 96, 260 B
omitted with indirect + direct object 88
and till/until for time 92 A
for travel and movement 93 A-C
after verbs 97, 260 B
with verbs of communication 89
too (adverb) 41 A-B, 252 A
too = also 112 A
town; with/without the 8 E
transitive verbs 362
turn + adjective/adverb 18 B-C

uncountable nouns 13
under 95 B-C, 99
understand
not used in continuous 168 C
+ gerund 261
+ his/him etc. + gerund 262 B
+ how/wh- + infinitive 242 A
+ how/wh- + noun clause 346 A, 346 E
in passive + infinitive 245, 255 C, 306 A
undertake
+ continuous infinitive 254 B3
+ infinitive/that 241 A, 241 D
unless 226 C
unreal pasts: see past subjunctive
until 92 A, 342 A-B
up 36 E-F, 39, 99
upset (adjective) 18 D
urge
in indirect speech 320 A, 320 C, 322 A2, 322 C
+ object + infinitive 244 A
+ that... should 235, 302 E

were instead of was 225, 228 B, 290 B, 292
after as if/though 292
in conditional constructions 225
if I were you 287 C
after U only 228 B
what! in exclamations 26 B2, 323 Al
what (interrogative) 54-9, 61
and how for measurements 58 E
+ noun clause 346 E
object of preposition 57 B
subject/object of verb 56 C
for things 54, 56 C, 58
what about? for suggestions 289 B
what ever (for)? 61
what... for? 58 B
what is he? 58 D
what... like? 58 C

negative interrogative forms 105
only one negative per sentence 103 C
ordinary verbs 101-5
passive forms 302-6
phrasal verbs 362-3
principal parts of active verb 101
of the senses 168-70, 273
subjunctive 290-3
see also auxiliary verbs, conditional tenses, future forms, present perfect tense, simple past tense etc.
very 41
vowels 354

warmly 29 C
warn + object + infinitive in indirect speech 320
was: see be
watch
+ object + bare infinitive 244 A
+ object + present participle 273 A-C
we 22 B-C, 65
weights 353 A
well (adverb) 31 B, 35, 39
may as well 288
may well 35 F
position 35 F

which (relative) 73, 77-8, 80-4
all, both etc. + of which 80
in connective clauses 82-3
in defining clauses 73, 75 A-C, 75 E
+ infinitive 242 A
in non-defining clauses 78, 80-1
and what 83
whichever 85 A, 85 C
while 331 B, 333 B
who (interrogative) 54-7, 59, 61
object of preposition 57 A
subject/object of verb 56 A
subject of affirmative verb 55
compared with which 59 B
who ever 61, 85 D
who (relative) 73, 78 B, 82
in cleft sentences 76
object of verb 74 B, 79 B
subject of verb 74 A, 79 A
who ever? 61, 85 D
whoever 85 A, 85 C
whom (interrogative pronoun) 54
object of preposition 57 A
object of verb 56 A
whom (relative pronoun) 73
all/both etc. of whom 80, 82
object of preposition 74 C. 79 C
object of verb 74 B, 79 B, 82
whose.
interrogative adjective/pronoun 54-5, 56 A

compared with which 59 A, 59 C
what (relative pronoun) 83
+ infinitive 242 A
whatever 85 B-D
when
and as/while 331, 333 C, 342 A-B
+ infinitive 242 A
interrogative adverb 60 B
+ noun clause 346 E
relative adverb 75 E
when ever? 61
whenever 85 B-C, 173 B
where
+ infinitive 242 A, 242 C
interrogative adverb 60 C
+ noun clause 346 E
relative adverb 75 E
where ever? 61
wherever 85 B-D
whether
in indirect questions 317 E
+ infinitive 242 B
+ noun clause 346 E
which (adjective/pronoun) + infinitive 242 A
which (interrogative) 54-7, 59
object of preposition 57 B
subject/object of verb 56 B
compared with who/what 59

for requests 284 B-C
and shall 208
and want/wish/would like 210
wish
not used in continuous 168 B
+ for + noun/pronoun 299 B
in greetings 299 B
+ (object +) infinitive 299 A
+ subject + unreal past 300, 310 A
+ (that +) subject + would 284 J, 301
and want/would like 299
who wish(ed) replaced by wishing 77 B3
with 75 D. 95 G
wonder
+ how/wh- + clause 346 E
+ how/wh- + infinitive 242 A-B
+ if/whether in indirect questions 317 B-C, 318 A
+ that + clause 346 A
work(a) (noun) 8 D, 13 A, 13 C
worse/worst 20 E
worth + gerund 261 A, 261 C
would
for advice 287 C-D
for characteristic action 230 C
in conditional sentences 219-20, 222-6,228-9
in indirect speech 308 B-C
for obstinate insistence 230 B

relative pronoun 73, 74 D, 75 D, 79 D
why: interrogative 60 A
relative 75 E
why don't you/why not? 287 E, 289 B
why ever/why ever not? 61
will
for assumption 160 A, 160 C
and be going to 205
for commands 282 B
for future 207-9
and future continuous 214
for habits 230 A
for obstinate insistence 224 C, 330 B
for intention 201, 205, 214
for invitations 210 B, 286 A-B
for invitations 286
for past intention 232
for past routine 230 A
in purpose clauses 336
for requests 284
would/should think 231
see also would like, would rather/sooner
would like
+ gerund 295 B
+ (object +) infinitive 243 A
if you (would) like 224 D
and want 296, 299
and wish 299, 301 C
and would care 294 B-C
would you like? invitations 286
would you like? requests 284 G
would rather/sooner 297-8

wrong: adjective/adverb 30 A
+ (of + object +) infinitive 26 Bl
wrongly 30 B
yes and no in indirect speech 323 B
yet 37 D, 327
you: indefinite pronoun 68 A
personal pronoun 65
, young: position 19 B
your/yours 62-4
yourself: emphasizing pronoun 71
reflexive pronoun 70